

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00017925118

REVISED LATIN GRAMMAR.

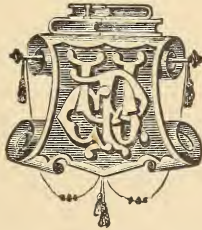
A

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE, Ph.D. (Göttingen), LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
NEW YORK AND BALTIMORE.

1872.

11.

PA 2087
G5
1872

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1872, by the
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

10-23586

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.



IN this new edition of my Latin Grammar, I have not made any essential change in the Inflections, as I am thoroughly in accord with the wise self-restraint of the German authors, Professors LATTMANN and MÜLLER, who have presented simply the results and not the processes of Comparative Grammar. A few sections and a few notes have been added, and here and there I have allowed myself to vary from the original, but in the main I have kept to the translation, as made by Professor THOMAS R. PRICE, of Randolph Macon College, a scholar whose attainments need no testimonial from me, a man whose friendship I count among my most valued possessions.

To the revision of the Syntax, which was originally based on KRITZ, and largely indebted for its practical features to LATTMANN and MÜLLER, especial attention has been given; and, whilst I have not deviated from the general arrangement, which was dictated by the design of writing a parallel Greek Grammar, the variations in detail are so numerous that this part of the book may be considered a new work.

The orthography has been brought nearer to recent results, but I have not aimed at a painful consistency.

In the treatment of the metres I have had regard to the system of HEINRICH SCHMIDT.

It would be pedantry to enumerate all the grammars that I have consulted, worse than pedantry to acknowledge my obligations to the great

masters of the department, without whose aid no tolerable Latin grammar can be written, and unworthy of the aims of my life to advertise my own efforts or to call attention to the supposed excellences of my own methods.

To all who have encouraged me by their sympathy, or aided me by corrections and suggestions, I am truly grateful. To none do I owe more, both for encouragement and for aid, than to my tried friend and esteemed colleague, Professor PETERS, whose acute criticism and practical experience have been of great service to me in the prosecution of my Latin studies.

B. L. GILDERSLEEVE.

SEPTEMBER, 1872.

CONTENTS.

—◆—

The references are to the paragraphs.

<p>INFLECTIONS 1—191</p> <p>Alphabet 1</p> <p>Vowels 2</p> <p>Consonants 6</p> <p>Syllables 8</p> <p>Quantity 10</p> <p>Accentuation 14</p> <p>Parts of Speech 15</p> <p>Inflection 16</p> <p>Substantive 17</p> <p>Gender 18</p> <p>Cases 21</p> <p>Declensions 25</p> <p>First 27</p> <p>Second 29</p> <p>Third 36</p> <p>Fourth 67</p> <p>Fifth 69</p> <p>Greek Nouns 71</p> <p>Irregular Nouns 74</p> <p>Adjectives 81</p> <p>Comparison 86</p> <p>Adverbs 90</p> <p>Numerals 92</p> <p>Pronouns 97</p> <p>Verb 109</p> <p>Conjugation of Sum 112</p> <p>Systems of Conjugation 116</p> <p>First Conjugation 119</p> <p>Second Conjugation 123</p> <p>Third Conjugation 131</p> <p>Fourth Conjugation 135</p> <p>Appendix to Third Conj. 139</p> <p>Deponents of First Conj. 141</p> <p>Deponents of Second Conj. 143</p> <p>Deponents of Third Conj. 145</p> <p>Deponents of Fourth Conj. 147</p> <p>Periphrastic Conjugation 149</p> <p>Abbreviations 151</p> <p>Present Stem 152</p> <p>Perfect " 153</p> <p>Supine " 154</p> <p>Euphonic Laws 155</p> <p>Change of Conjugation 156</p>	<p>Stems in a P-mute 157</p> <p>Stems in a K-mute 159</p> <p>Aspirate Stems in H and V 163</p> <p>Stems in a T-mute 164</p> <p>Liquid Stems 169</p> <p>Stems in S 172</p> <p>Stems in U 173</p> <p>Deponents 175</p> <p>Change of Conjugation 176</p> <p>Inchoative Verbs 181</p> <p>Irregular Verbs 183</p> <p>Obsolete forms of the Verb 191</p> <p>SYNTAX 192—697</p> <p><i>Syntax of Simple Sentence</i> 192</p> <p>Nominative and Vocative 193</p> <p>Concord 201</p> <p>Voices 203</p> <p>Tenses 213</p> <p>Present Tense 218</p> <p>Imperfect 222</p> <p>Perfect 226</p> <p>Pluperfect 233</p> <p>Future 234</p> <p>Future Perfect 236</p> <p>Periphrastic Tenses 238</p> <p>Tenses in Letters 244</p> <p>Moods 245</p> <p>Indicative 246</p> <p>Subjunctive 247</p> <p>Imperative 259</p> <p>Tenses of Moods and Verbal Nouns 270</p> <p><i>Simple Sentence Expanded</i> 280</p> <p>Multiplication of Subject 281</p> <p>Qualification of Subject 284</p> <p>Attribute 285</p> <p>Demonstrative Pronouns 290</p> <p>Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns 293</p> <p>Possessive Pronouns 299</p> <p>Indefinite Pronouns 300</p> <p>Numerals 307</p> <p>Comparatives and Superla- tives 311</p>
--	---

Apposition.....	318	Object Sentences with Parti-	
Predicative Attribution, and		ciple.....	536
Apposition.....	324	Causal Sentences.....	538
Multiplication of Predicate....	325	Sentences of Design and Ten-	
Qualification of Predicate.....	326	dency	543
Accusative.....	327	Final Sentences	544
Dative.....	343	Consecutive Sentences.....	553
Genitive	357	Temporal Sentences.....	561
Ablative.....	383	Antecedent Action	563
Names of Towns and Islands..	410	Contemporaneous Action..	570
Prepositions	414	Prior Action.....	576
With Accusative	417	Cum (Quum).....	580
With Ablative	418	Conditional Sentences	590
With Acc. and Abl.	419	Logical.....	597
Infinitive as a Substantive	420	Ideal	598
Gerund and Gerundive	426	Unreal	599
Supine	435	Incomplete	600
Adverb	440	Of Comparison.....	604
Negatives.....	442	Concessive Sentences.....	605
<i>Incomplete Sentence</i>	451	Relative Sentences	612
Interrogative Sentences.....	452	Comparative Sentences.....	641
<i>Syntax of Compound Sentence</i> ..	474	Correlative	645
Coördination.....	475	With atque.....	646
Copulative Sentences	476	With quam	647
Adversative Sentences.....	485	<i>Abridged Sentence</i>	648
Disjunctive Sentences	494	Infinitive	649
Causal and Illative Sentences.	500	Ōrātio Oblīqua.....	651
Subordination.....	505	Participle.....	669
Sequence of Tenses.....	510	<i>Arrangement of Words</i>	671
Reflexive	520	<i>Arrangement of Clauses</i>	682
Object Sentences	523	<i>Figures of Syntax</i>	685
With Quod	524	PROSODY	698
With Acc. and Inf.	526	Versification.....	723

INFLECTIONS

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE,

ON THE BASIS OF LATTMANN AND MÜLLER.

ALPHABET.

1. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

REMARK.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—*K.* (*Caeso*), *Kal.* (*Ca-lendae*). Y and Z occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U. In the olden time U did not come after V: *servos* (*servus*) *equos* or *ecus* (*equus*), *quom* (*cum*).

VOWELS.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:

1. According to their *quality*, into


open, a, e, o.
close, i, u.

2. According to their *quantity*, into

long, —
short,)
common, *i. e.*, sometimes *short*, and sometimes *long*,)

The following distinction is made:

common: by preference *short*, —
common: by preference *long*, =

 In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked. But see 700 R. 2.

3. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

ā	=	a	in	father.	ō	=	o	in	bone.
ē	=	e	in	prey.	ū	=	oo	in	moon.
ī	=	i	in	caprice.	ȳ	=	u	in	sûr (French).

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

DIPHTHONGS.

4. There are but few *diphthongs* or *double sounds* in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; hence frequent variations in spelling: so *glæba* and *glēba, sod*; *oboedire* and *obēdire, obey*; *faenum* (*foenum*) and *fēnum, hay*.

ae	and	oe	=	ae	in	Graeme.
au	=	ou	in	our.		
ei	=	ei	in	feint	(drawled).	
eu	=	eu	in	Spanish	<i>deuda</i> .	
ui	=	oui	in	French	<i>oui</i> .	

DIAERESIS.

5. The sign $\ddot{\cdot}$ (*Diaeresis*—Greek = *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: *āēr, air*; *Oe-no-māus, aloë*.

CONSONANTS.

6. Consonants are divided:

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

<i>Labials</i>	(lip-sounds):	b, p,	(ph), f, v, m.
<i>Dentals</i>	(tooth-sounds):	d, t,	(th), l, n, r, s.
<i>Gutturals</i>	(throat-sounds):	g, c, k, qu, (ch), h.	

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels*: of which

l, m, n, r, are *liquids*, (m and n being *nasals*).
 h, j, and v, are *breathings*, and
 s is a *sibilant*.

B. *Mutes*: to which belong

P-mutes,	p,	b, (ph), f,	<i>labials</i> .
T-mutes,	t,	d, (th),	<i>dentals</i> .
K-mutes,	k, c, qu, g,	(ch),	<i>gutturals</i> .

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

Mutes are further divided into

Tenuēs	(thin):	p, t, k, c, qu,	<i>hard</i> (surd).
Mediae	(middle):	b, d, g,	<i>soft</i> (sonant).
[Aspirātae	(aspirate):	ph, th, ch,]	<i>aspirate</i> .

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.

Those on the same line are said to be of *the same order*.

3. *Double consonants* are: **z = dz** in *adze*; **x = cs** (**ks**); **j** between two vowels is a double sound, half vowel, half consonant, and always lengthens the preceding vowel; **jējūnus**, *hungry*.

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

C is hard throughout = **k** (commonly assibilated before **e** (*ae, oe*) and **i**).

Ch is not a genuine Latin sound. In Latin words it is a **k**; in Greek words a **kh**; commonly pronounced as **ch** in German.

G is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

J has the sound of a broad **y**; much fuller than **y** in *your*.

N has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in *anchor, anguish*.

Qu = **kw** (nearly); before **u**, **qu** = **c**; **quum** = *cum*; **equus** = *ecus*.

Quum is a late spelling, retained for convenience' sake.

R must be trilled.

S and **X** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

T is hard throughout.

V was nearer our **w** than our **v**; still nearer the French *ou* in *oui*.

SYLLABLES.

8. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: *am-o, I love*.

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: *as-per, rough*; *fau-stus, lucky*; *li-bri, books*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Liquids, **l, m, n, r**, join the preceding vowel: *al-mus, fostering*; *am-bo, both*; *an-guis, snake*; *ar-bor, tree*; **mn** follows the general rule: *a-mnis, river*.

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first, the

second to the second syllable: *cas-sis*, *helmet*; *al-lium*, *garlic*; *map-pa* *napkin*; *an-nus*, *year*; *mit-to*, *I send*.

3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: *ab-igo*, *I drive off*; *rēs-pūblica*, *commonwealth*.

9. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

10. QUANTITY.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: *ars*, *art*; *collum*, *neck*; *abrumpo*, *I break off*; *per mare*, *through the sea*; *nex*, *murder*.

REMARK.—*Nf*, *ns*, and *j* make a preceding vowel sound long, not merely the syllable.

EXCEPTION.—*J* in the compounds of *jugum*, *yoke*; *bī-jugus*, *two-horse*.

11. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, is *common* (*anceps*): *tenēbrae*, *darkness*.

12. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, *cruel*; *conclūdo*, *I shut up* (from *claudo*, *I shut*); *cōgo* (from *co-igo*), *I drive together*.

13. One simple vowel before another vowel-sound makes a short syllable: *dēus*, *God*; *puer*, *boy*.

REMARKS.—1. *h* does not count: *nīhil*, *nothing*.

2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

3. On the quantity of final syllables see Prosody.

14. ACCENTUATION.—1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult: *équus*, *horse*.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common: *mandāre*, *to commit*; *mándēre*, *to chew*; *íntēgrum*, *entire*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que*, *ve*, *ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: *lūmináque*, *and lights*; *flūmináve*, *or rivers*; *vōmeréne*, *from a ploughshare*?

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. The parts of speech are:

I. The *Noun*, embracing:

1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name: *vir*, a man; *Cocles*, *Cocles*; *dōnum*, a gift.

2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive.

II. The *Pronoun*, which points out.

III. The *Verb*, which says.

IV. The *Particles*, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace:

1. The *Adverb*, which shows *circumstances*.

2. The *Preposition*, which shows *local relation*.

3. The *Conjunction*, which shows *connection*.

REMARKS.—1. Pronoun and noun have essentially the same inflection; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of the greater antiquity of the pronominal forms. The pronominal element is the formative element of language.

2. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: *āh!* *ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

INFLECTION.

16. *Inflection* is that *bending* or *change*, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

SUBSTANTIVE.

17. The substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: **Horātius**, *Horace*; **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

Common nouns are *common* to a whole class: **dominus**, *a lord*; **urbs**, *a city*; **arnis**, *a river*.

GENDER.

18. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine; Females, feminine. Masculine: **Rōmulus**; **Jūpiter**; **vir**, *man*; **equus**, *horse*. Feminine: **Cornēlia**; **Jūno**; **fēmina**, *woman*; **equa**, *mare*.

19. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. Names of *months* (**mensēs**, *masc.*), *winds* (**ventī**, *masc.*), *rivers* (**fluvīi**, *masc.*), and *mountains* (**montēs**, *masc.*), are *masculine*: **Aprīlis**, *the opening month, April*; **Aquilo**, *the north wind*; **Albis**, *the River Elbe*; **Athōs**, *Mount Athos*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Feminine are the rivers **Allia**; **Albula**; **Matrōna**, *the Marne*; **Styx**; **Lēthē**.

2. Of the mountains, the Alps, **Alpēs**, are *feminine*, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. *ae*), **ē** (Gen. *ēs*): **Aetna**, **Cyllēnē**; **Sōracte**, and **Pēlion** are *neuter*, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. *ōrum*): **Maenala**, **Maenalōrum**.

II. Names of *countries* (**terrae**, *fem.*), *islands* (**insulae**, *fem.*), *cities* (**urbēs**, *fem.*), *plants* (**plantae**, *fem.*), and *trees* (**arborēs**, *fem.*), are *feminine*: **Aegyptus**, *Egypt*; **Rhodus**, *Rhodes*; **pirus**, *a pear-tree*; **abiēs**, *a fir-tree*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination, instead of the signification.

III. All indeclinable nouns, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable nouns, are *neuter*: **fās**, *right*; **ā longum**, *a long*; **scīre tuum**, *thy knowing*; **triste valē**, *a sad "farewell."*

20. 1. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender: **cīvis**, *citizen* (male or female); **comes**, *companion*; **jūdex**, *judge*.

2. **Substantiva mōbilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: **magister**, *master, teacher*; **magistra**, *mistress*; **servus**, **serva**, *slave* (m. and f.); **victor**, **victrix**, *conqueror* (m. and f.)

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, **mās**, *male*, and **fēmina**, *female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact: **pāvo mās** (**masculus**), *peacock*, **pāvo fēmina**, *peahen*. These nouns are called *epicene*.

CASES.

21. The Latin noun has six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers : *who? what?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

Answers : *whose? whereof?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers : *For or To whom?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers : *whom? what?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers : *where? whence? wherewith?*

22. According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into **Cāsūs Rectī**, or Independent Cases, and **Cāsūs Obliquī**, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsūs Rectī**, the rest **Cāsūs Obliquī**.

23. According to their *form*, the cases are divided into *strong* and *weak* : The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

REMARKS.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative, which is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions, is lost in the Genitive of the 2d Declension, and often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in syntax. The Instrumental, which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. The case-forms arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

REMARKS.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, the ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm *mensa*, the stem is not *mens*, but *mensa*, the final *a* having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural *mensis*. So *-d*, the characteristic of the Ablative Singular, has disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (*ē, eī, ī, ē*). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root must be a monosyllable. In *penna* the stem is *penna-*; in *pennula*, *pennula-*; in *pennātulus*, *pennātulo-*; the root is *PET* (*petna, pesna, penna*), and is found in *pet-ere*, *to fall upon, to fly at*; Greek, *πέτ-ομαι, πτερόν*; English, *feather*.

DECLENSIONS.

25. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:

	Stem characteristic.
The stems of the First Declension end in	ă
The stems of the Second Declension end in	ō
The stems of the Third Declension end in or the close vowels	a consonant, i and u
The stems of the Fourth Declension end in	ŭ
The stems of the Fifth Declension end in	e

26. 1. The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, *i* and *u* being semi-consonants.

2. General Rules of Declension.

I. For the strong cases:

Neuter nouns have Nominative and Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in *ă*.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Second Declension, when the Nom. ends in *-us*.

II. For the weak cases:

Dative and Ablative Plural have a common form.

REMARKS.—In declining neuter nouns, follow the order of strong cases and weak cases. It saves time, and shows connection.

FIRST DECLENSION.

27. The stem ends in *ă*, which disappears in the ending *-is* of the Dative and Ablative plural.

FEMININE.

SING.—N.	mensa,	the, or a, table.
G.	mensae,	of the, or a, table.
D.	mensae,	to, for the, or a, table.
Ac.	mensa-m,	the, or a, table.
V.	mensa,	O table! or table!
Abl.	mensā,	from, with, by, the, or a, table.
PLUR.—N.	mensae,	the tables, or tables.
G.	mensārum,	of the tables, or tables.
D.	mensīs,	to, for the tables, or tables.
Ac.	mensās,	the tables, or tables.
V.	mensae,	O tables!
Abl.	mensīs,	from, with, by, the tables, or tables.

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. -āī is found in poetry. The Gen. in -ās occurs in the word **familia**, *family*, when combined with **pater**, *father*, **māter**, *mother*, **filius**, *son*, **filia**, *daughter*, viz. : **paterfamiliās**, **māterfamiliās**, **filiusfamiliās**, **filiafamiliās**.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum, chiefly in the Greek words **amphora** (*amphora, measure of tonnage*), and **drachma**, *franc—(Greek coin)*. The poets make frequent use of this form in patronymics and compounds of -cola (from **colo**, *I inhabit*) and -gena (from **gen**, *beget*).

2. The Locative Dative case singular is like the Genitive **Rōmae**, *at Rome*.

3. **Dea**, *goddess*, **filia**, *daughter*, **ambae**, *both*, and **duae**, *two*, have the form -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz. : **deābus**, **filiābus**, **ambābus**, **duābus**.

28. *Rule of Gender*.—The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

Hadria, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in -ō, which appears in the older forms of the Nom. and Acc. singular, **servo-s**, **servo-m**. In the ordinary forms it is changed into ū, ē, lengthened into ō, or disappears wholly.

MASCULINE.

SING.—N.	hortus,	<i>garden.</i>	PLUR.—	hortī,	<i>gardens.</i>
G.	hortī,			hortōrum.	
D.	hortō,			hortīs.	
Ac.	hortum,			hortōs.	
V.	horte,			hortī.	
Abl.	hortō,			hortīs.	

NEUTER.

SING.—N. Ac. V.	bellum, <i>war</i> ,	PLUR.—bella, <i>wars</i> .
G.	bellī,	bellōrum.
D. Abl.	bellō,	bellīs.

REMARKS.—1. In the Genitive Singular, **ii** is often contracted into **i**, the accent remaining unchanged: **ingeniī**, of *genius*, into **ingénī**.

2. In the Vocative Singular, **ie** (**je**) is commonly contracted into **ī** in proper names in **-ius**, **-ēius** (**ējus**), **-āius** (**ājus**), the accent remaining unchanged; as, **Antōnī**, **Tullī**, **Gāī**, **Vergīlī**. **Filius**, *son*, **genius**, *genius*, and **meus**, *my*, form their Vocatives in like manner: **fili**, **genī**, **mī**.

3. In the Genitive Plural, **-um** for **-ōrum** is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, **nummum** (*of moneys*) = **sēstertium**, *of sestercies*; **modium**, *of measures*. **Faber**, *workman*, has both **fabrum** and **fabrōrum**; **liberī**, *children*, both **liberum** and **liberōrum**; and **vir**, *man*, in compounds has **triumvirum**, *of the triumvirs*, and the like.

4. The Locative Singular, which has a restricted use, ends in **ī** (Apparent Genitive), as **Rhodī**, *at Rhodes*, **Tarentī**, *at Tarentum*.

5. **Deus**, *God*, is irregular. Singular Vocative, **deus**. Plural Nominative (**dei**), **diī**, **dī**; Genitive, **deōrum**, **deum**; Accusative, **deōs**; Dative and Ablative (**deīs**), **diīs**, **dīs**.

30. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns in **-us** are masculine; in **-um**, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus**, **Samus**. 2d. Most trees, as, **fāgus**, *beech*; **pirus**, *pear-tree*. 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus**, *atom*; **paragraphus**, *paragraph*; **methodus**, *method*; **periodus**, *period*; **dialectus**, *dialect*. 4th. **Alvus**, *belly*; **colus**, *distaff*; **humus**, *ground*; **vannus**, *wheat-fan*.

Neuters are: **vīrus**, *venom*; **pelagus**, *sea*; **vulgus**, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

31. Most masculines in **r** drop **-us** in the Nominative and **e** in the Vocative Singular:

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	puer, <i>boy</i> .	puerī.	ager, <i>field</i> .	agrī.
G.	puerī,	puerōrum.	agrī,	agrōrum.
D.	puerō,	puerīs.	agrō,	agrīs.
Ac.	puerum,	puerōs.	agrū,	agrōs.
V.	puer,	puerī.	ager,	agrī.
Abl.	puerō,	puerīs.	agrō,	agrīs.

32. The *e* belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in *adulter*, *adulterer*; *alter*, *the other*; *asper*, *rough*; *dexter*, *on the right* (which has either *dextrī* or *dexterī*); *exter*, *outside*; *gener*, *son-in-law*; *gibber*, *hump-backed*; *lacer*, *torn*; *liber*, *free*; *Liber*, *god of wine*; *miser*, *wretched*; *prosper*, *lucky*; *puer*, *boy*; *socer*, *father-in-law*; *tener*, *soft*; *vesper*, *evening*; and in words ending in *-fer* and *-ger*, from *fero*, *I bear*, and *gero*, *I carry*, as, *signifer*, *standard-bearer*, *armiger*, *armor-bearer*.

Ibēr and *Celtibēr* (names of nations) have in the Plural *Ibērī* and *Celtibērī*.

In other words, the *e* is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

33. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN *-us*, *-a*, *-um*.

Bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, *good*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
SING.—N.	<i>bonus</i> ,	<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .	PLUR.—	<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
G.	<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bonī</i> .		<i>bonōrum</i> ,	<i>bonārum</i> ,	<i>bonōrum</i> .
D.	<i>bonō</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bonō</i> .		<i>bonīs</i> ,	<i>bonīs</i> ,	<i>bonīs</i> .
Ac.	<i>bonum</i> ,	<i>bonam</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .		<i>bonōs</i> ,	<i>bonās</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
V.	<i>bone</i> ,	<i>bona</i> ,	<i>bonum</i> .		<i>bonī</i> ,	<i>bonae</i> ,	<i>bona</i> .
Abl.	<i>bonō</i> ,	<i>bonā</i> ,	<i>bonō</i> .		<i>bonīs</i> ,	<i>bonīs</i> ,	<i>bonīs</i> .

34. *Miser*, *misera*, *miserum*, *wretched*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>misera</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>misera</i> .
G.	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>miserī</i> .	<i>miserōrum</i> ,	<i>miserārum</i> ,	<i>miserōrum</i> .
D.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> .	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> .
Ac.	<i>miserum</i> ,	<i>miseram</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .	<i>miserōs</i> ,	<i>miserās</i> ,	<i>misera</i> .
V.	<i>miser</i> ,	<i>misera</i> ,	<i>miserum</i> .	<i>miserī</i> ,	<i>miserae</i> ,	<i>misera</i> ,
Abl.	<i>miserō</i> ,	<i>miserā</i> ,	<i>miserō</i> .	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> ,	<i>miserīs</i> .

Piger, *pigra*, *pigrum*, *slow*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
SING.—N.	<i>piger</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .	PLUR.—	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
G.	<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigrī</i> .		<i>pigrōrum</i> ,	<i>pigrārum</i> ,	<i>pigrōrum</i> .
D.	<i>pigrō</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigrō</i> .		<i>pigrīs</i> ,	<i>pigrīs</i> ,	<i>pigrīs</i> .
Ac.	<i>pigrum</i> ,	<i>pigram</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .		<i>pigrōs</i> ,	<i>pigrās</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
V.	<i>piger</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> ,	<i>pigrum</i> .		<i>pigrī</i> ,	<i>pigrae</i> ,	<i>pigra</i> .
Abl.	<i>pigrō</i> ,	<i>pigrā</i> ,	<i>pigrō</i> .		<i>pigrīs</i> ,	<i>pigrīs</i> ,	<i>pigrīs</i> .

35. The following have Genitive Singular in *-ius*, and Dative Singular in *i*:

<i>ūnus</i> ,	<i>ullus</i> ,	<i>nullus</i> ,	<i>one</i> ,	<i>any</i> ,	<i>none</i> .
<i>sōlus</i> ,	<i>tōtus</i> ,	<i>alius</i> ,	<i>sole</i> ,	<i>whole</i> ,	<i>other</i> .
<i>uter</i> ,	<i>alter</i> ,	<i>neuter</i> ,	<i>which of the two</i> ,	<i>one of the two</i> ,	<i>neither</i> .

REMARK.—In poetry, the *i* of the Genitive ending *-ius* is often shortened, except in *alius* (rare), *sōlius*, *utrius*, *neutrius*.

SING.—N.	nullus, nulla, nullum, <i>none.</i>	alius, alia, aliud, <i>other.</i>
G.	nullius, nullius, nullius.	alius, alius, alius.
D.	nullī, nullī, nullī.	aliī, aliī, aliī.
Ac.	nullum, nullam, nullum.	alium, aliam, aliud.
Abl.	nullō, nullā, nullō.	aliō, aliā, aliō.

The Plural is regular.

THIRD DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels *i* and *u*.

37. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in **l, m, n, r.**

B. Sibilant stems, ending in **s.**

C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, **b, p.** (Compare the Fourth
2. Ending in a K-mute, **c, g.** Declension.)
3. Ending in a T-mute, **d, t.**

II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in **i.**

2. Ending in **u.**

38. The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s.**

The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

39. Neuters always form { the Nominative without the case-
ending **s.**
the Accusative and Vocative case
in both numbers like the
Nominative.
the Nominative Plural in **ä.**

REMARK.—Originally coincident with the Dative, the Locative of the Third Declension was finally blended with Ablative, both in form and in syntax. In the names of nouns the old form is frequently retained: **Karthāginī, at Carthage, Sulmōnī, at Sulmo.** According to some, **rūrī, in the country,** is an Ablative.

I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

A.—LIQUID STEMS.

1. *Liquid stems in l.*

40. Nominative without **s**, as, **consul, the consul.**

ING.—N.	consul, <i>consul.</i>	PLUR.—N.	consul-ēs, <i>the consuls.</i>
G.	consul-is,	G.	consul-um.
D.	consul-i,	D.	consul-ibus.
Ac.	consul-em,	Ac.	consul-ēs.
V.	consul,	V.	consul-ēs.
Abl.	consul-e,	Abl.	consul-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—Stems in l are masculine: *sōl, the sun, sōlis; āl, salt, sālis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Neuters are: *mel, honey, mellis; fel, gall, fellis.*

2. *Liquid stems in m.*

41. Nominative with s. One example only: *hiem(p)s, winter; Genitive, hiem-is (fem.).*

3. *Liquid stems in n.*

42. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems formed without s, drops the n of the stem, and ends in ō.

The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, -ōnis; in others, īnis.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the n, and terminates in -ēn.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in -īnis.

43.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
SING.—N.	leō, <i>lion.</i>	imāgō, <i>likeness.</i>	nōmen, <i>name.</i>
G.	leōn-is,	imāgin-is,	nōmin-is,
D.	leōn-i,	imāgin-i,	nōmin-i,
Ac.	leōn-em,	imāgin-em,	nōmen,
V.	leō,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	leōn-e,	imāginē,	nōmin-e,

PLUR.—N.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
G.	leōn-um,	imāgin-um,	nōmin-um,
D.	leōn-ibus,	imāgin-ibus,	nōmin-ibus,
Ac.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
V.	leōn-ēs,	imāgin-ēs,	nōmin-a,
Abl.	leōn-ibus.	imāgin-ibus.	nōmin-ibus.

REMARKS.—1. Nouns in -do and -go have in the Genitive -īnis, whilst the rest in -o have -ōnis; as, *grando, hail, grandinis; virgo, maid, virginis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Praedo, robber; harpago, grappling-hook; ligo, mattock, have ōnis homo, man; turbo, whirlwind, have īnis.*

2. To the stems in **n** belong *sanguis, blood, sanguin-is*; *pollis, flour, pollin-is* (both masc.). In these, **n** of the stem is dropped before **s** of the Nom.

3. Masculines in **-en**, Genitive *inīs*, are: *pecten, comb*, and the personal designations: *tībicen, fluter*; *tubicen, trumpeter*; *cornicen, horn-blower*; and *flāmen, priest*.

Masculines in **-ēn, -ēnis**, are only: *splēn and liēn, spleen*, and the Plural *rēnēs, kidneys*.

44. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Masculine are nouns in **-o**, save those in **-do, -go, and -io**, with *caro, flesh*: but *ordo, cardo*, are masculine, with *ligo, margo*; add *harpago*; and in **-io**, all concrete nouns like *pūgio*.

ordo, rank; *cardo, hinge*; *ligo, mattock*; *margo, border*; *harpago, grappling hook*; *pūgio, dagger*; *vesperilio, bat*; *titio, firebrand*.

2. Nouns in **-en (men)** are neuter. See exceptions 43, 3.

4. *Liquid stems in r.*

45. Nominative without **s**.

REMARK.—In several words in **-ōr** and **-ūr**, the **r** has arisen from **s**. Hence, *labōs*, as well as *labōr, toil*; *rōbus* and *rōbūr, oak*; *vōmis* and *vōmer, ploughshare*.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
<i>e. passer, sparrow.</i>	<i>pater, father.</i>	<i>cadāver, dead body.</i>	
<i>passer-is.</i>	<i>patr-is.</i>	<i>cadāver-is.</i>	
<i>o. labor, toil.</i>	<i>ōrātor, speaker.</i>	<i>rōbur, oak.</i>	
<i>labōr-is.</i>	<i>ōrātōr-is.</i>	<i>rōbor-is.</i>	
<i>u. fūr, thief.</i>	<i>vultur, vulture.</i>	<i>fulgur, lightning.</i>	
<i>fūr-is.</i>	<i>vultur-is.</i>	<i>fulgur-is.</i>	

46. Words in **-ter**, syncopate, *i. e.*, leave out the **e**, except *later, bric later-is*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	<i>labor, toil.</i>	<i>labōr-ēs.</i>	<i>pater, father.</i>		<i>patr-ēs.</i>
G.	<i>labōr-is,</i>	<i>labōr-um.</i>	<i>patr-is,</i>		<i>patr-um.</i>
D.	<i>labōr-ī,</i>	<i>labōr-ibus.</i>	<i>patr-ī,</i>		<i>patr-ibus.</i>
Ac.	<i>labōr-em,</i>	<i>labōr-ēs.</i>	<i>patr-em,</i>		<i>patr-ēs.</i>
V.	<i>labor,</i>	<i>labōr-ēs.</i>	<i>pater,</i>		<i>patr-ēs.</i>
Abl.	<i>labōr-e,</i>	<i>labōr-ibus.</i>	<i>patr-e,</i>		<i>patr-ibus</i>

47. *Rules of Gender*.—Words in **-er** and **-or** are masculine those in **-ur**, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—The only feminine is *arbor*.

Neuters are : *fār, nectar, marmor,*

Aequor, iter, acer, piper,

Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,

Ador, tūber, and papāver.

cer, maple; ador, spelt; aequor, sea; arbor, tree; cadāver, dead body; fār, spelt; marmor, marble; nectar, nectar; piper, pepper; papāver, poppy; tūber, tumor; ver, teat; vēr, spring.

Furfur, bran, is masculine.

B.—SIBILANT STEMS.

48. The Nominative has no additional *s*.

In the other cases, the *s* of the stem passes over, between two vowels, into *r*.

Instead of the final stem-vowel *e*, the Nominative of Masculines has *i*.

Instead of the final stem-vowels *e* and *o*, the Nominative of neuters has *u*.

REMARK.—*S* is retained throughout in the neuter : *vās, dish, vāsis.*

SS occurs in *ās, a copper, genitive assis* (masc.), and *os, bone, ossis* (neut.).

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
49. N.	<i>genus, kind.</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus, body.</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
G.	<i>gener-is,</i>	<i>gener-um.</i>	<i>corpor-is,</i>	<i>corpor-um.</i>
D.	<i>gener-ī,</i>	<i>gener-ibus.</i>	<i>corpor-ī,</i>	<i>corpor-ibus.</i>
Ac.	<i>genus,</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus,</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
V.	<i>genus,</i>	<i>gener-a.</i>	<i>corpus,</i>	<i>corpor-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>gener-e,</i>	<i>gener-ibus.</i>	<i>corpor-e,</i>	<i>corpor-ibus.</i>

50. *Rule of Gender.*—Masculine are nouns in *-is* (*-eris*), and *-ōs, -ōris* : except *ōs, mouth; genitive ōris*, neuter.

Neuter are nouns in *-us*, genitive *-eris, -oris*, and in *-ūs, -ūris*; except *tellūs, earth, tellūris*, which is feminine; and the masculines, *lepus, hare, leporis; mūs, mouse, mūris*.

C.—MUTE STEMS.

51. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the Nominative.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel *i* into *e* in the Nominative.

A **K**-mute, combining with **s**, becomes **x**, as, **pāc-s** = **pāx**, *peace*; **rēg-s** = **rēx**, *king*.

A **T**-mute before **s** is dropped, as, **aetāt-s** = **aetās**, *age*; **ped-s** = **pēs**, *foot*.

52.

Stems in a P-mute.

A	E	I	O	U	
trab-s, <i>beam</i> .	plēb-s, <i>commons</i> .	stip-s, <i>dole</i> .	princep-s, <i>chief</i> .	(op-s), <i>power</i> .	—
trab-is (fem.)	plēb-is (fem.)	stip-is (fem.)	princīp-is,	op-is (fem.)	—

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic :

Urb-s, *city*, **urb-is** (fem.); **stirp-s**, *stock*, **stirp-is** (fem.).

53.

Stems in a K-mute.

pāx, <i>peace</i> .	rēx, <i>king</i> .	rādīx, <i>root</i> .	vōx, <i>voice</i> .	lūx, <i>light</i> .
pāc-is (fem.)	rēg-is (mas.)	rādīc-is (fem.)	vōc-is (fem.)	lūc-is (fem.)
fax, <i>torch</i> .	grex, <i>herd</i> .	salix, <i>willow</i> .	jūdex, <i>judge</i> .	dux, <i>leader</i> .
fac-is (fem.)	grēg-is (mas.)	salīc-is (fem.)	jūdic-is.	duc-is.

54. With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic :

Arc, *citadel*, **arc-is** (fem.); **falx**, *sickle*, **falc-is** (fem.).

SING.—N.	princep-s,	<i>chief</i> .	PLUR.—	princīp-ēs,
G.	princīp-is,			princīp-um,
D.	princīp-ī,			princīp-ibus,
Ac.	princīp-em,			princīp-ēs,
V.	princep-s,			princīp-ēs,
Abl.	princīp-e,			princīp-ibus.
SING.—N.	rēx,	<i>king</i> .	PLUR.—	rēg-ēs,
G.	rēg-is,			rēg-um,
D.	rēg-ī,			rēg-ibus,
Ac.	rēg-em,			rēg-ēs,
V.	rēx,			rēg-ēs,
Abl.	rēg-e,			rēg-ibus.

REMARK.—All monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in **-ium**, as, **urbium**, *of cities*; **arcium**, *of citadels*; **montium**, *of mountains*; **partium**, *of parts*; **noctium**, *of the nights*. The polysyllabic stems also in **-nt** and **-rt** have more frequently **-ium**, as, **clientium**, *of clients*; **cohortium**, *of companies*. Stems in **-āt** have sometimes both **-um** and **-ium**, as, **civitatūm** and **civitiātium**. See 59, R. 3.

Stems in a T-mute.

55. A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel.

	T.		D.
z. aetās,	<i>age.</i>	anas,	<i>duck.</i>
aetāt-is,	(fem.)	anāt-is,	(fem.)
2. quiēs,	<i>rest.</i>	pariēs,	<i>wall.</i>
quiēt-is,	(fem.)	pariēt-is,	(masc.)
3. līs,	<i>suit.</i>	hērēs,	<i>heir.</i>
lit-is,	(fem.)	hērēd-is,	(masc.)
	G. P. ium.	pēd-is,	(masc.)
		lapis,	<i>stone.</i>
		lapīd-is,	(masc.)
		miles,	<i>soldier.</i>
		milīt-is.	
o. sacerdōs,	<i>priest.</i>	custōs,	<i>keeper.</i>
sacerdōt-is.		custōd-is.	
u. virtūs,	<i>manliness.</i>	palūs,	<i>bog.</i>
virtūt-is,	(fem.)	palūd-is,	(fem.)
		laus,	<i>praise.</i>
		laudis,	(fem.)
		pēcus,	<i>sheep.</i>
		pecūd-is,	(fem.)

56. B. Characteristic preceded by a consonant.

frons,	<i>brow.</i>	nd. frons,	<i>leafy branch.</i>
front-is,	(fem.)	frond-is,	(fem.)
pars,	<i>part.</i>	rd. cor,	<i>heart.</i>
part-is,	(fem.)	cord-is,	(neut.)
nox,	<i>night.</i>		
noct-is,	(fem.)	lac,	<i>milk.</i>
		lact-is,	(neut.)

NG.—N.	aetās, <i>age.</i>	PLUR.—aetāt-ēs,	SING.—pēs, <i>foot.</i>	PLUR.—ped-ēs,
G.	aetāt-is,	aetāt-um,	ped-is,	ped-um,
D.	aetāt-i,	aetāt-ibus,	ped-i,	ped-ibus.
Ac.	aetāt-em,	aetāt-ēs,	ped-em,	ped-ēs,
V.	aetās,	aetāt-ēs,	pēs,	ped-ēs,
Abl.	aetāt-e,	aetāt-ibus.	ped-e,	ped-ibus.

57. *Rule of Gender.*—All mute stems, with Nominative in s, are feminine.

Exceptions in a K-mute.

Masculines are -unx and -ex,
 Saving forfex, forpex, nex,
 Lēx, vībēx, faex, and forms of prex.

faex,	<i>dregs.</i>	lēx,	<i>law.</i>
forfex,	<i>shears.</i>	nex,	<i>slaughter.</i>
forpex,	<i>tongs.</i>	prece,	<i>with prayer.</i>
deunx,	$\frac{1}{2}$ as.	vībēx,	<i>weal</i> (better vībīx.)

Calix, *cup*, and fornix, *arch*, are masculine. Calx, *heel*, and calx, *chalk*, are

Exceptions in a T-mute.—Nouns in *-ēs, -ītis*, are masculine, as, *cēspes, turf, cēspitis*; as are also *pēs, foot*, and its compounds; *pariēs, wall*; and, of the nouns in *-is, lapis, stone*. *Merges, -itis, sheaf*, is feminine.

Masculines in *-ns* are: *mons, mountain*; *pons, bridge*; *fons, spring*, *dens, tooth*; *torrens, torrent*; *rudens, rope*.

Neuters are only: *cor, heart*, and *lac, milk*, which drop the characteristic; and *caput, head, capitis*.

II.—VOWEL STEMS.

1.—VOWEL STEMS IN I.

58. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in *s*.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*. This *e* is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after *l* and *r*.

All stems in *i* have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

All neuter stems in *i* have the Ablative Singular in *ī*, and Nominative Plural in *-ia*.

REMARKS.—The stems of Nominatives in *-is* and *-es* are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in *-is* and *-es* increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in *i* do not increase in the Genitive, as:

Consonant: *lapis, stone*; Genitive, *lapid-is. miles, soldier*; Genitive, *milit-is.*
Vowel: *cīvis, citizen. cīvis. nūbēs, cloud. nūbis.*

59.

	M.	F.	F.	N.	
SING.—N.	<i>colli-s, hill.</i>	<i>turri-s, tower.</i>	<i>vulpēs, fox.</i>	<i>mare, sea. animal, living being</i>	
G.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>vulpis,</i>	<i>maris,</i>	<i>animālis,</i>
D.	<i>collī,</i>	<i>turrī,</i>	<i>vulpī,</i>	<i>marī,</i>	<i>animālī,</i>
Ac.	<i>collem,</i>	<i>turrem (turri-m),</i>	<i>vulpem,</i>	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>
V.	<i>collis.</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>
Abl.	<i>colle,</i>	<i>turre (turrī),</i>	<i>vulpe,</i>	<i>marī,</i>	<i>animālī,</i>
PLUR.—N.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>mari-a,</i>	<i>animālī-a,</i>
G.	<i>colli-um,</i>	<i>turri-um,</i>	<i>vulpi-um,</i>	<i>mari-um,</i>	<i>animālī-um,</i>
D.	<i>colli-bus,</i>	<i>turri-bus,</i>	<i>vulpi-bus,</i>	<i>mari-bus,</i>	<i>animālī-bus,</i>
Ac.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs.</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>mari-a,</i>	<i>animālī-a,</i>
V.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>mari-a.</i>	<i>animālī-a,</i>
Abl.	<i>colli-bus.</i>	<i>turri-bus.</i>	<i>vulpi-bus.</i>	<i>mari-bus.</i>	<i>animālī-bus.</i>

REMARKS.—1. In Genitive Plural, *-um* instead of *-ium*.

Always in: *juvenis, young*; *senex, old*; *canis, dog*; *vātēs, bard*, *struēs, heap*; *pānis, bread*.

Usually in: *apis, bee*; *sēdēs, seat*; *volucris, bird*.

2. The Genitive Plural in **-ium** occurs in the apparently consonant stems: **imber**, *rain-storm*; **ūter**, *bottle*; **venter**, *belly*; **linter**, *skiff*; which form the Nominative without **s**, dropping the **i**, and inserting **e**. Genitive, **imbris**, **ūtris**, **ventris**, **lintris**. All are masculine, except **linter**, which is feminine.

3. Under the vowel stems in **-i** are sometimes classed those mute stems which take **-ium** in the Gen. Plural; **urbi-um**, **monti-um**. See 54, R.

60. OBSERVATIONS.—Several stems in **i**, with Nominative in **-is**, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in **-īm**, **i**, **is**, respectively:

1. The Accusative Plural in **-is** occurs, side by side with **-ēs**:

In all vowel stems in **i**, which have Nominative Singular in **-is**;
In mute stems, which have Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

2. The Accusative Singular in **-īm** is used:

a. *Always* in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as, **Neāpolis**, Accusative, **Neāpolim**; **Tiberis**, Accusative, **Tiberim**; and in **vis**, *force*; **sitis**, *thirst*; **tussis**, *cough*.

b. *Usually* in **secūris**, *axe*; **febris**, *fever*; **puppis**, *poop*; **turris**, *tower*.

3. The Ablative Singular in **i** is used:

a. In all nouns which have Accusative Singular invariably in **-īm**, and in **ignis**, *fire*, in the phrases, **ferrō ignique**, **aquā et ignī interdīcere**. Nouns which have Accusative in **-īm** or **-ēm** have Ablative in **i** or **ē**.

b. In the neuter vowel stems, which have Nominative in **ē**, **āl**, **ār**. Names of cities in **-ē** have Ablative also in **-e**, as, **Praeneste**, Genitive, **Praenestis**.

c. In the adjective vowel stems of the Third Declension, as, **facilis**, *easy*; Ablative, **facili**; **ācer**, *sharp*; Ablative, **acri**.

REMARK.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipsis: **annālis** (sc. **liber**, *book*), *chronicle*; **nātālis** (sc. **diēs**, *day*), *birthday*; **Aprilis** (sc. **mensis**, *month*), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Ablative, **annāli**, **nātāli**, **Aprilī**, **Septembrī**, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Juvenis**, *young man*; and **aedilis**, *aedile*; Ablative, **juvene**, **aedile**. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in **-e**, as, **Juvenālis**; Ablative, **Juvenāle**.

61. *Rule of Gender*.—1. Of stems in **i**, Nominative in **-is**, some are masculine, some feminine.

Masculine are:

Amnis, **axis**, **callis**, **crīnis**,
Cassis, **caulis**, **fascis**, **fīnis**,
Fūnis, **fustis**, **ignis**, **ensis**,
Orbis, **pānis**, **piscis**, **mensis**,

Postis, **scrobis**, **būris**, **collis**,
Sentis, **torquis**, **atque follis**,
Torris, **unguis et annālis**,
Vectis, **vermis et canālis**.

amnis, <i>river.</i>	collis, <i>hill.</i>	fustis, <i>cudgel.</i>	sentis, <i>bramble.</i>
axis, <i>axle.</i>	crinis, <i>hair.</i>	ignis, <i>fire.</i>	scrobis, <i>ditch.</i>
būris, <i>plough-tail.</i>	ensis, <i>glaiue.</i>	mensis, <i>month.</i>	torquis, <i>necklace.</i>
callis, <i>footpath.</i>	fascis, <i>fagot.</i>	orbis, <i>circle.</i>	torris, <i>fire-brand.</i>
canālis, <i>canal.</i>	finis, <i>end.</i>	pānis, <i>bread.</i>	unguis, <i>nail.</i>
cassēs, (<i>pl.</i>) <i>toils.</i>	follis, <i>bellows.</i>	piscis, <i>fish.</i>	vectis, <i>lever.</i>
caulis, <i>stalk.</i>	fūnis, <i>rope.</i>	postis, <i>door-post.</i>	vermis, <i>worm.</i>

Callis, finis, scrobis, torquis, are used also as feminines.

Other nouns in *-is*, and all in *-ēs*, are feminine. *Veprēs*, *bramble*, is usually masculine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, are neuter.

REMARK.—Of the names of animals in *-is*, some are masculine ; *tigris*, *tiger* ; *canis*, *dog* ; *piscis*, *fish* ; others feminine : *apis*, *bee* ; *avis*, *bird* ; *ovis*, *sheep* ; *fēlis*, *cat* (usually *fēlēs*).

2. VOWEL STEMS IN U.

62. Of stems in *u*, only the *monosyllabic* belong to the Third Declension.

grūs, *crane* (fem.).

SING.—N.	<i>grūs</i>	PLUR.—	<i>gru-ēs</i>
G.	<i>gruis</i>		<i>gru-um</i>
D.	<i>gruī</i>		<i>gru-ibus</i>
Ac.	<i>gru-em</i>		<i>gru-ēs</i>
V.	<i>grūs</i>		<i>gru-ēs</i>
Abl.	<i>gru-e</i>		<i>gru-ibus.</i>

Sūs, *swine*, commonly fem., usually subus, in D. and Abl. Plural.

TABLE OF NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A * before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

63. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID.

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.		
-al	-ālis	animal, <i>animal.</i>	-ār	*-arris	fār,	<i>spelt.</i>
	-ālis	Hannibal, <i>proper name.</i>	-ēr	-eris	anser,	<i>goose.</i>
-āl	*-ālis	sāl,		-ris	pater,	<i>father.</i>
-el	-elllis	mel, <i>honey.</i>		*-ineris	iter,	<i>journey.</i>
-il	-illis	pugil, <i>boxer.</i>	-ēr	*-ēris	vēr,	<i>spring.</i>
	-illis	Tanaquil, <i>proper name.</i>	-ōr	-ōris	color,	<i>color.</i>
-ōl	*-ōlis	sōl,		-oris	aequor,	<i>expanse.</i>
-ul	-ulis	consul, <i>consul.</i>		*-ordis	cor,	<i>heart.</i>
-ēn	-ēnis	rēn,	-ūr	-uris	fulgur,	<i>lightning.</i>
-en	-inis	nōmen, <i>name.</i>		-oris	rōbur,	<i>oak.</i>
-ar	-āris	calcar, <i>spur.</i>	-ūr	-ūris	fūr,	<i>thief.</i>
	-aris	nectar, <i>nectar.</i>				

64. B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH S, OR A COMPOUND OF S (GS, CS), X :

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.	
-ās	-ātis	aetās, <i>age.</i>	-aus	-audis	fraus, <i>cheatery.</i> Gen. Pl. fraudium.
	*-āsis	vās, <i>dish.</i>			
-ās	*-aris	mās, <i>male.</i>	-ls	*-ltis	puls, <i>porridge.</i>
	*-assis	ās, <i>a copper.</i>	-m(p)s	*-mis	hiems, <i>winter.</i>
	*-adis	vas, <i>surety.</i>	-ns	-ndis	frons, <i>leafy branch.</i>
	*-atis	anas, <i>duck.</i>		-ntis	frons, <i>forehead.</i>
aes	*-aedis	praes, <i>surety.</i>	-rs	-rdis	concors, <i>concordant.</i>
	*-aeris	aes, <i>brass.</i>		-rtis	pars, <i>part.</i>
-ēs	-is	nūbēs, <i>cloud.</i>	-bs	-bis	urbs, <i>city.</i>
	*-eris	Cerēs, <i>Ceres.</i>	-ps	-pis	stirps, <i>stalk.</i>
	-edis	pēs, <i>foot.</i>		-ipis	princeps, <i>chief.</i>
	-etis	abiēs, <i>fir.</i>		*-upis	auceps, <i>fowler.</i>
	-ētis	quiēs, <i>rest.</i>	-āx	-ācis	pāx, <i>peace.</i>
-ēs	-etis	seges, <i>crop.</i>	-ax	*-acis	fax, <i>torch.</i>
	-idis	obses, <i>hostage.</i>	-ex	-icis	jūdex, <i>judge.</i>
	-itis	miles, <i>soldier.</i>		-ecis	nex, <i>death.</i>
-īs	-is	amnis, <i>river.</i>		-egis	grex, <i>flock.</i>
	-idis	lapis, <i>stone.</i>		*-igis	rēmex, <i>rower.</i>
	-eris	cinis, <i>ashes.</i>	-ēx	*-ēcis	ālēx, <i>pickle.</i>
	-inis	sanguis, <i>blood.</i>		*-icis	vībēx(Ix), <i>weal (fem.)</i>
-īs	*-itis	līs, <i>suit at law.</i> Gen. Pl. litium.		-ēgis	rēx, <i>king.</i>
	*-iris	glīs, <i>dormouse.</i> Gen. Pl. glirium.	-ix	-icis	cervix, <i>neck.</i>
			-ix	-icis	calix, <i>cup.</i>
				*-igis	strix, <i>screech-owl.</i>
-ōs	*-ōdis	custōs, <i>keeper.</i>		*-ivis	nix, <i>snow.</i> Gen. Pl. nivium.
	-ōtis	cōs, <i>whetstone.</i>			
	-ōris	flōs, <i>flower.</i>	-ōx	-ōcis	vōx, <i>voice.</i>
	*-ovis	bōs, <i>ox.</i>	-ox	*-ocis	praecox, <i>early-ripe.</i>
-ōs	-otis	compos, <i>possessed of.</i>		*-ogis	Allobrox.
	*-ossis	os, <i>bone.</i>		*-ocis	nox, <i>night.</i>
-ūs	*-udis	pecus, <i>cattle, sheep.</i>	-ux	-ucis	crux, <i>cross.</i>
	*-utis	intercus, <i>under the skin.</i>		-ugis	conjux, <i>spouse.</i>
	*-uris	Ligus, <i>a Ligurian.</i>	-ūx	-ūcis	lūx, <i>light.</i>
	-oris	corpus, <i>body.</i>		-ūgis	(frūx.) <i>fruit.</i>
	-eris	scelus, <i>crime.</i>	-aex	-aecis	faex, <i>dregs.</i>
-ūs	-uis	sūs, <i>swine.</i>	-aux	-aucis	faux, <i>throat.</i> Gen. Pl. faucium.
	-ūris	jūs, <i>right.</i>	-lx	-lcis	falx, <i>sickle.</i>
	-ūdis	incūs, <i>anvil.</i>	-nx	-ncis	lanx, <i>dish.</i>
	-ūtis	salūs, <i>weal.</i>	-rx	-rcis	arx, <i>citadel.</i>

65. C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-ac	*-actis	lac, <i>milk.</i>
-ēc	*-ēcis	ālēc, <i>pickle.</i>
-ut	*-itis	caput, <i>head.</i>

66. D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-e	-is	mare, <i>sea</i> .
-ō	-ōnis	pāvo, <i>peacock</i> .
	-onis	Saxo, <i>Saxon</i> .
	-inis	homo, <i>man</i> .
	*-nis	caro, <i>flesh</i> .

FOURTH DECLENSION.

67. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in *u*.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the *u* of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, as *fructu-is* becomes *fructūs*, *of fruit*; *fructu-e* becomes *fructū*, *from fruit*; *fructu-ēs* becomes *fructūs*, *fruits*. This *u*, on the contrary, is lost before the ending *-ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending *m*, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in *-im* of the stems in *i*), hence *u-m*.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.	
SING.—N.	fructu-s, <i>fruit</i> .	Pl. fructūs,	cornū, <i>horn</i> .	Pl. cornu-a,
G.	fructūs,	fructu-um,	cornūs,	cornu-um,
D.	fructu-ī (fructū),	fructibus,	cornū,	cornibus,
Ac.	fructu-m,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
V.	fructus,	fructūs,	cornū,	cornu-a,
Abl.	fructū,	fructibus,	cornū,	cornibus.

REMARKS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plurals in *-ubus* occur in nouns in *-cus*, and in *tribus*, *tribe*; *artus*, *joint*; *partus*, *childbirth*; *portus*, *harbor*; *vinus*, *fold*.

2. *Domus*, *house*, Ablative Singular, *domō*; Genitive Plural, *domuum* and *domōrum*; Accusative Plural, *domūs* and *domōs*. *Domī* (a locative form) means, *at home*.

68. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns in *-us* are masculine; those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are *idūs*, pl., *the 15th day of the month*, *tribu* *tribe*, *porticus*, *piazza*, *acus*, *needle*, *manus*, *hand*, *domus*, *house*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

69. The stem ends in **e**. Nominative in **s**.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
SING.—N.	diē-s, <i>day</i> . PL. diē-s,	SING. rē-s, <i>thing</i> . PL. rē-s.	
G.	diē-ī, diē-rum,	re-ī, rē-rum,	
D.	diē-ī, diē-bus,	re-ī, rē-bus,	
Ac.	diē-m, diē-s,	re-m, rē-s,	
V.	diē-s, diē-s,	rē-s, rē-s,	
Abl.	diē, diē-bus.	rē, rē-bus.	

REMARKS.—1. The Plural is used throughout in three words only: *rēs*, *thing*; *diēs*, *day*; and in later Latin, *speciēs*, *appearance*. In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

2. The stem-characteristic **e**, in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is *long* after a vowel and *short* after a consonant, as *speciēs*, Genitive *speciēī*; *rēs*, *thing*, Genitive *reī*; *fidēs*, *faith*, Genitive *fideī*.

3. Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form, which follows the First Declension, as *mollitiēs*, *softness*, and *mollitia*. Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

70. *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *diēs* (which in the Singular is of the common gender, and in the Plural masculine), and the masculine *merīdiēs*, *mid-day*.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

71. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

72. SINGULAR FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

I.			II.		
N.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidās,	Anchīsēs,	Dēlos (us),	Īlion (um).
G.	Pēnelopēs,	Leōnidāe,	Anchīsae,	Dēli,	Īlii.
D.	Pēnelopae,	Leōnidāe,	Anchīsae,	Dēlō,	Īliō.
Ac.	Pēnelopēn,	Leōnidam (ān),	Anchīsēn (am),	Dēlon (um).	Īlion (um).
V.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidā,	Anchīsē, ā, ā,	Dēle,	Īlion (um).
Abl.	Pēnelopā.	Leōnidā.	Anchīsā.	Dēlō.	Īliō.

II.			II. III.	III.
N. Panthūs,	Androgeōs (us),	Athōs,	Orphēus.	Solōn, Solo,
G. Panthī.	Androgeī,	Athō, ōnis,	Orphei (ēi),	Solōnis.
D. Panthō.	Androgeō.	Athō,	Orpheō,	Solōnī.
Ac. Panthūn,	Androgeōn,	Athō, ōn, ōnem,	Orpheum (ea),	Solōna (em),
	ō, ōna,			
V. Panthū,	Androgeōs,	Athōs,	Orphēū,	Solōn.
Abl. Panthō.	Androgeō.	Athōne.	Orpheō.	Solōne.
N. Āēr, air.	Xenophōn,	Atlās,	Thalēs,	Paris.
G. Āeris,	Xenophōntis,	Atlantis,	Thalētis, is,	Paridis, os.
D. Āerī,	Xenophōntī,	Atlantī,	Thalētī, ī,	Paridī, ī.
Ac. Āera (em),	Xenophōnta	Atlanta,	Thalēta, ēn, em,	Parīda, im, in
	(em),			
V. Āēr,	Xenophōn,	Atlā,	Thalē,	Pari, Paris.
Abl. Āere.	Xenophōnte.	Atlante.	Thalē.	Paride.
N. Oedipūs,	Achillēs, eus,	Sōcratēs,	Dīdō,	hērōs.
G. Oedipodis, ī,	Achillis, eī, ī,	Sōcratis, ī,	Dīdūs, ōnis,	hērōis.
	eōs,			
D. Oedipodī,	Achillī,	Sōcratī,	Dīdō, ōnī,	hērōī.
Ac. Oedipum (oda),	Achillem, ea,	Sōcratēn, em,	Dīdō, ōnem,	hērōa, em.
	ēn,			
V. Oedipe,	Achillēs, ē, eū,	Sōcratē (es),	Dīdō,	hērōs.
Abl. Oedipode. ō.	Achille.	Sōcrate.	Dīdō, ōne.	hērōe.

REMARKS.—1. Many other forms are found, for which the dictionaries must be consulted. So *poēsis*, G. *poēsis*, eōs, D. *poēsī*, Acc. *poēsin*, *poesy*. Many of them are transliterations of Greek words, quoted as Greek.

2. In transferring Greek nouns into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem.

So *κρατήρ*, Acc. *κρατήρα*, (*punch*) *bowl*.

crātēr, *crātēris* (masc.), and *crātēra* (*crētēra*) *crātērae* (fem.)

Σαλαμίς, Acc. *Σαλαμίνα*, *Salamis*.

Salamīs, *Salamīnis*, and *Salamīna*, ae.

73. PLURAL FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

N. PL. -oe : *canēphoroe*, *basket-bearers*.

-ē : *epē*, *epic poetry*.

-ēs : *Arcadēs*, *Arcadians*. How often in prose we cannot tell.

G. PL. -ōn : *Geōrgicōn*, *of the Georgics*.

-eōn : *Metamorphōseōn*, *of the Metamorphoses*.

D. PL. -sī : *Lēmniāsī* (rare), *to the Lemnian women*.

ACC. PL. -ās : *Macedonas*. Common even in words that are not Greek: *Allobrogas*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

74.

I. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

ABUNDANTIA.

A. Different genders in the same declension :

baculus, baculum,	<i>staff.</i>
balteus, balteum,	<i>sword-belt.</i>
clipeus, clipeum,	<i>shield.</i>
calamister, calamistrum,	<i>curling-iron.</i>

B. Change of declension :

1. 1st and 2d.	essedā, ae,	essedum, ī,	<i>war-chariot, gig.</i>
	vespera, ae,	vesper, ī,	<i>evening.</i>
2. 1st and 5th.	dūritia, ae,	dūritiēs,	<i>hardness.</i>
	māteria, ae,	māteriēs,	<i>stuff.</i>
3. 2d and 5th.	diluvium, ī,	diluviēs,	<i>flood.</i>
4. 2d and 4th.	ēventum, ī,	ēventus, ūs,	<i>issue.</i>
5. 3d and 4th.	plēbs, is,	plēbēs, eī,	<i>commons.</i>
	tribūnus plēbī,	<i>tribune of the people.</i>	
6. 3d and 2d.	imbēcillis,	imbēcillus,	<i>weak.</i>

And a few others (adjectives).

75.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

A. Nouns used in Singular only : **Singulāria tantum.**

Most abstract nouns, and names of materials :

jūstitia,	<i>justice,</i>	aurum,	<i>gold.</i>
-----------	-----------------	--------	--------------

B. Nouns used in Plural only : **Plūrālia tantum.**

angustiae,	<i>straits</i>	liberī,	<i>children.</i>
arma, ōrum,	<i>arms,</i>	mānēs,	<i>shades of the dead.</i>
bīgae, quadrigae,	<i>two-horse, four-horse chariot,</i>	minae,	<i>threats.</i>
cassēs, ium,	<i>toils (snare),</i>	moenia, ium, N.	<i>town-wall.</i>
cervicēs, um.	<i>neck (preferred to cervix),</i>	nuptiae,	<i>wedding.</i>
dīvitiae,	<i>riches,</i>	scālae,	<i>stairway.</i>
epulae (epulum),	<i>banquet,</i>	tenebrae,	<i>darkness.</i>
forēs, um, f.	<i>door,</i>	valvae,	<i>folding-doors.</i>
habēnae,	<i>reins,</i>	viscera,	<i>entrails.</i>
indūtiae,	<i>truce.</i>		

Kalendae, Nōnae, Idūs, *Calends, Nones, Ides.*ambāgēs, -um, *round about,*faucēs -ium, f., *gullet.*compedēs -ium, *fetters,*precēs -um, f., *prayer.*

These four have the Ablative Singular in -e: ambāge, compede, fauce, prece.

Akin to **Plūrālia tantum** are :C. Nouns used in Plural with a special sense : **Heterologa.**

aedēs, is,	<i>temple,</i>	aedēs, ium,	<i>house, palace.</i>
auxilium,	<i>help,</i>	auxilia,	<i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
castrum,	<i>fort,</i>	castra,	<i>camp.</i>

cōpia,	abundance,	cōpiae,	forces, troops.
fīnis,	end, limit,	fīnēs,	territory, borders.
lītera,	letter (of the alphabet).	līterae,	epistle, literature.
opera,	work,	operae,	workmen.

76. 2. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

A. Used only in Nominative and Accusative Singular : *fās*, *right*, *nefās*, *wrong*, and Greek Neuters in *-os*.

B. In Ablative Singular : *sponte*, *of free will*, and many verbals in *ū* : *promptū*, *in readiness* ; *jussū*, *by order* ; *monitū*, *by advice*.

C. In the oblique cases the forms from :

(daps), f., <i>feast</i> , S. and Pl.	(ops), f., <i>help</i> (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
(dicio), f., <i>sway</i> , S.	(vix), f., <i>change</i> (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
(frūx), f., <i>fruit</i> , S. and Pl.	

D. The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic words does not occur :

cōs, <i>whetstone</i> ,	lūx, <i>light</i> ,	ōs, <i>mouth</i> .
-------------------------	---------------------	--------------------

vīs, *force* : G. and D. are wanting ; Ac. *vim* ; Abl. *vī*. Pl. *vīrēs*, *virium*, *viribus*.

nēmo, *nobody* : G. *nullius hominis* ; D. *nēmīnī* ; Ac. *nēmīnem* ; Abl. *nullō homine*.

77. III. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A. HETEROCLITES : Different stems with the same Nominative.

domus (*domu-* and *domo-*) ; Abl. *domō* ; Pl. G. *domuum*, *domōrum* ; Acc. *domūs* and *domōs*.

pecus (*pecud-* and *pecor-*), *pecudis*, *sheep* ; *pecoris*, *cattle*.

ficus, *fig-tree* ; *laurus*, *bay-tree* ; *pīnus*, *pine-tree* ; are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

senātus, *senate* ; G. *senātūs* or *senātī* (rare).

requiēs, *-ētis*, f. : Ac. *requiētem* and *requiem*, *rest*.

famēs, *-is* ; Abl. *famē* and *famē*, *hunger*.

satrapēs, G. *satrapae* and *satrapis* ; D. *satrapae*, &c., *Persian governor*.

78. B. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS have the same stem with different gender in Singular and Plural :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>frēnum</i> , <i>bridle</i> .	<i>frēnī</i> , and <i>frēna</i> .
<i>jocus</i> , <i>jest</i> .	<i>jocī</i> , and <i>joca</i> .
<i>locus</i> , <i>place</i> .	{ <i>loca</i> , <i>localities</i> .
	{ <i>locī</i> , <i>passages in books, topics</i> .
<i>rāstrum</i> , <i>mattock</i> .	<i>rāstrī</i> , and <i>rāstra</i> .

79. C. METAPLASTS are nouns which have isolated cases from another than the Nominative stem :

vās, vāsīs, n., *vessel*. Pl. vāsa, vāsōrum. vāsīs (as if from vāso-).
 poēma, poēmatis, n., *poem*. Pl. poēmata, poēmatum. ībus.
 G. poēmatōrum, D. poēmatīs (as if from poēmato-).

So all Greek nouns in -a, -atis.

Bacchānālia, -ium (-iōrum), -ibus, *feast of Bacchus*.

So several other names of feasts in -ia.

80.

IV. PECULIARITIES.

Anio, G. Aniēnis, *the (river) Anio*.

ās, assis, m., *a copper*.

auceps, aucupis, *fowler*.

bōs (bovs), bovis, c., *ox, cow*.

G. Pl. boum.

D. Abl. būbus. bōbus.

caput, capitīs, n., *head*.

So anceps, ancipitis, *two-headed*.

praeceps, -cipitis, *headlong*.

caro, carnis (for carinis), f., *flesh*.

G. Pl. carniūm.

Cerēs, Cereris, *Ceres*.

fār, farris, n., *spelt*.

fel, fellis, n., *gall*.

femur, femoris, n., *thigh*.

feminis.

iter, itineris, n., *way, route*.

jecur, jecoris, n., *liver*.

jecinoris.

Jūpiter (for Jov(ī)piter), Jovis.

mel, mellis, n., *honey*.

nix=(s) nig(v)s, nivis, f., *snow*.

os, ossis, n., *bone*.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth*.

pollis, pollinis, m., *flour*.

sanguis, sanguinis, m., *blood*.

senex, senis, *old man*.

supellex, supellectilis, f., *furniture*.

Venus, Veneris, *Venus*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

81. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in *i*. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in *s*; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. (Compare *mare, sea*.)

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

82. Several stems in *i*, preceded by *r* (*cr, tr, br*), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting *e* short before the *r*, as, stem *acri, sharp*, Nom. Masc. ācer, Nom. Fem. ācris. (Compare 60, 3 c.)

The *e* belongs to the stem only in *celer, celeris, celere, swift*.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
SING.—N.	facili-s, <i>easy</i> .	facile,	ācer,	ācri-s,	ācre.
G.	facilis,		ācris,		
D.	facilī,		ācrī,		
Ac.	facilem,	facile,	ācrem,		ācre.
V.	facilis,	facile,	ācer,	ācris,	ācre.
Abl.	facilī.		ācrī.		
PLUR.—N.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,		ācri-a.
G.	facili-um,		ācri-um,		
D.	facili-bus,		ācri-bus,		
Ac.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,		ācri-a.
V.	facilēs,	facili-a,	ācrēs,		ācri-a.
Abl.	facili-bus.		ācri-bus.		

83. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
SING.—N.	fēlix, <i>lucky</i> ,	fēlix,	prūdēns, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēns,	vetus, <i>old</i> ,	vetus.
G.	fēlic-is,		prūdēt-is,		veter-is,	
D.	fēlic-ī,		prūdēt-ī,		veter-ī,	
Ac.	fēlic-em,	fēlix,	prūdēt-em,	prūdēns,	veter-em,	vetus.
V.	fēlix,		prūdēns.		vetus,	
Abl.	fēlicī (and -e),		prūdētī (and e),		veter-e (or ī).	
PLUR.—N.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēntia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a.
G.	fēlic-ium,		prūdēt-ium,		veter-um,	
D.	fēlic-ibus,		prūdēt-ibus,		veter-ibus,	
Ac.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēntia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a.
V.	fēlic-ēs,	fēlicia,	prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēntia,	veter-ēs,	veter-a.
Abl.	fēlic-ibus,		prūdēt-ibus,		veter-ibus.	

ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

84. Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a p, k, or t mute.

vigil, <i>alert</i> ,	memor, <i>mindful</i> ,	pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	cicur, <i>tame</i> ,	pūbēs, <i>adult</i> ,	vetus, <i>old</i> .
vigil-is,	memor-is,	pauper-is,	cicur-is,	pūber-is,	veter-is.
	Abl. ī (e).	Abl. e.	Abl. e.	Abl. e.	
participēs, <i>sharing</i> ,		caeleb-s, <i>unmarried</i> ,		inop-s, <i>poor</i> .	
particip-is,	Abl. e.	caelib-is,	Abl. e.	inop-is,	Abl. ī (e).
audāx, <i>bold</i> ,	fēlix, <i>lucky</i> ,	duplex, <i>double</i> ,	ferōx, <i>fierce</i> ,	trux, <i>savage</i> .	
audāc-is.	fēlic-is.	duplic-is.	ferōc-is.	truc-is.	

<i>dives, rich,</i>	<i>dēses, slothful,</i>	<i>compos, possessed of,</i>	<i>prūdens, wise,</i>	<i>concors, harmonious.</i>
<i>divit is.</i>	<i>dēsīd-is.</i>	<i>compot-is,</i>	<i>prūdent-is,</i>	<i>concord-is,</i>
Abl. e.	Abl. e.	Abl. e.		Abl. e.

85. OBSERVATIONS.—The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems :

1. In the neuter Plural they have *-ia*; only *vetus, old*, has *vetera*. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have *ī* and *e*—when used as adjectives commonly *ī*; when used as substantives commonly *e*.

The participles, as such, have *e*; but used as nouns or adjectives, either *e* or *ī*, with tendency to *ī*.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have: *-ium*, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; *-um*, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, as:

<i>audāx, bold,</i>	<i>prūdens, wise.</i>	<i>Samnītēs, Samnites.</i>
<i>audācium,</i>	<i>prūdentium,</i>	<i>Samnitium.</i>
<i>supplex, suppliant,</i>	<i>dives, rich.</i>	
<i>supplicum,</i>	<i>divitum or ditum.</i>	
<i>caelebs, unmarried,</i>	<i>compos, possessed of,</i>	<i>memor, mindful.</i>
<i>caelibum,</i>	<i>compotum,</i>	<i>memorum.</i>

Exceptions occur, as :

multiplex, manifold, multiplicium. Phoenicēs, Phoenicians, Phoenicum.

The participles have *-ium*; as, *amans, loving, amantium.*

Used as nouns, they have sometimes *-um*, as:

sapiens, a sage, sapientum. parens, a parent, parentum.

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, as :

<i>concors, harmonious,</i>	<i>anceps, double,</i>	<i>quadrupēs, four-footed,</i>
<i>concordum,</i>	<i>ancipitum,</i>	<i>quadrupedum.</i>

Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in *-ia*, as, *ancipitia, quadrupedia.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> ,	alt-ior, <i>higher</i> ,	alt-ius,	alt-issimus, a, um, <i>highest</i> .
fortis, -e, <i>brave</i> .	fort-ior,	fort-ius,	fort-issimus.
ūtilis, -e, <i>useful</i> ,	ūtil-ior.	ūtil-ius,	ūtil-issimus.
audāx, <i>bold</i> ,	audāc-ior,	audāc-ius,	audāc-issimus.
prūdēns, <i>wise</i> ,	prūdēt-ior,	prūdēt-ius,	prūdēt-issimus.

		M. and F.	N.
87.	SING.—N.	altior,	altius.
	G.	altiōris,	altiōris.
	D.	altiōrī,	altiōrī.
	Ac.	altiōrem,	altius.
	V.	altior,	altius.
	Abl.	altiōre and -ī.	altiōre and -ī.
PLUR.—N.	altiōrēs,	altiōra.	
	G.	altiōrum,	altiōrum.
	D.	altiōribus,	altiōribus.
	Ac.	altiōrēs,	altiōra.
	V.	altiōrēs,	altiōra.
	Abl.	altiōribus,	altiōribus.

PECULIARITIES.

88. 1. Adjectives in **-er** add the Superlative ending **-rimus** directly to the Nominative Masculine (**-rimus** for **-simus** by assimilation).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
miser, -a, -um, <i>wretched</i> ,	miser-ior, miser-ius,	miser-rimus.
celer, -is, -e, <i>swift</i> ,	celer-ior, celer-ius,	celer-rimus.
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp</i> ,	ācer-ior, ācer-ius,	ācer-rimus.
vetus, <i>old</i> ,	veterior, vetustior,	veter-rimus.
	mātūrus, <i>ripe</i> , sometimes māturrimus.	

2. Six adjectives in **-ilis** add **-limus** to the stem, after dropping **-i**, to form the Superlative: perhaps by assimilation.

facilis, *easy*; difficilis, *hard*; similis, *like*; dissimilis, *unlike*; gracilis, *slender*; and humilis, *low*.

facilis,	Comp. facil-ior,	Sup. facil-limus (for facil-simūş),
----------	------------------	-------------------------------------

3. The adjectives in *dicus, ficus, volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in *-dicens, -ficens, and -volens*.

<i>benevolus, benevolent,</i>	Comp. <i>benevolentior,</i>	Sup. <i>benevolentissimus.</i>
<i>maledicus, scurrilous.</i>	<i>maledicentior,</i>	<i>maledicentissimus.</i>

In like manner:

<i>egēnus, needy,</i>	<i>egentior,</i>	<i>egentissimus.</i>
<i>prōvidus, far-sighted,</i>	<i>prōvidentior,</i>	<i>prōvidentissimus.</i>

4. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *maximē*, *more* and *most*:

<i>idōneus, fit,</i>	Comp. <i>magis idōneus,</i>	Sup. <i>maximē idōneus.</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

REMARK.—Adjectives in *-quus* are not included under this last rule.

<i>antīquus, old,</i>	Comp. <i>antīquior,</i>	Sup. <i>antīquissimus.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------------

89.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>bonus, good,</i>	<i>melior,</i>	<i>melius,</i>	<i>optimus.</i>
<i>malus, bad,</i>	<i>pējor,</i>	<i>pējus,</i>	<i>pessimus.</i>
<i>magnus, great,</i>	<i>mājor,</i>	<i>mājus,</i>	<i>maximus.</i>
<i>parvus, small,</i>	<i>minor,</i>	<i>minus,</i>	<i>minimus.</i>
<i>multus, much,</i>	S. —	<i>plūs</i> (no Dat. nor Abl.),	<i>plūrimus.</i>
	Pl. <i>plūrēs,</i>	<i>plūra, G. Pl. plūrium.</i>	
	<i>complūrēs,</i>	<i>complūra and -ia.</i>	
<i>nēquam, worthless,</i>	<i>nēquior,</i>	<i>nēquius,</i>	<i>nēquissimus.</i>
<i>frūgi</i> (indecl.) <i>frugal,</i>	<i>frūgālior,</i>		<i>frūgālistissimus.</i>

REMARKS.—1. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

dēterior, worse, dēterrimus.

ōcior, swifter, ōcissimus.

potior, better, potissimus.

exterior, outer, extrēmus, extimus, from exterus, on the outside, and prep. extrā, without.

superior, upper, suprēmus, or summus, from superus, on the top, and prep. suprā, above.

inferior, lower, infimus, from inferus, below, prep. infrā, below.

posterior, hinder, later, postrēmus and postumus, from posterus, coming after, and prep. post, after.

2. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb: as, *ante, before*; *anterior, that is before*; *prope, near*; *propior, proximus*; *citerior, on this side*; *citimus, from citrā*; *ulterior, further*; *ultimus, from ultrā, beyond*; *interior, inner*; *intimus, from intus, within*; *prior, former*; *prīmus, first, from prae, before.*

3. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison.

Diversus, different, novus, new, falsus, untrue, meritus, deserved, have no Comparative.

Longinquus, afar, propinquus, near, salūtāris, healthful, juvenis, young (Comparative *jūnior*), and *senex, old* (Comparative *senior*), have no superlative.

"*Youngest*" and "*oldest*" are expressed by *minimus, maximus* (*nātū*).

ADVERBS.

90. Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in **-us** and **-er** form the adverb in **ē** (mutilated Ablative).

altus, *lofty*, **altē**. **pulcher**, *beautiful*, **pulchrē**. **miser**, *wretched*, **miserē**.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding **-ter** to the stem; stems in **-nt** dropping the **t**, and stems in a **K**-mute inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending.

fortis, *brave*, **fortiter**. **ferōx**, *wild*, **ferōciter**. **prūdēns**, *foreseeing*, **prūdentē**.

Exceptions:

audāx, *bold*, **audāc-ter** (seldom **audāciter**). **difficilis**, *hard to do*, **difficulter** and **difficiliter**.

But instead of these, generally, **nōn facile**, **vix**, **aegrē**.

3. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:

tūtus, *safe*, **tūtō**; **falsō**, *falsely*; **perpetuō**, *ceaselessly*; **continuō**, *forthwith*; **imprōvisō**, *unexpectedly*; **prīmō**, *at first*.

consultē and **consultō**, *purposely*; **certē**, *at least*, and **certō**, *certainly*.

rārē, *thinly*, and **rārō**, *seldom*; **vērē**, *in truth*, and **vērō**, *true but*.

rectē, *correctly*, and **rectā**, *straightway*; **dexterā** or **dextrā**, *to the right*, and **dexterē**, *skillfully*.

sinistrā and **laevā**, *to the left hand*.

4. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

Multum, *much*; **paulum**, *a little*; **nimum**, *too much*; **cōterum**, *for the rest*; **primum**, *first*; **postrēmum**, *finally*; **potissimum**, *chiefly*; **facile** *easily*; **dulce**, *sweetly*; **triste**, *sadly*; **impūne**, *scot-free*.

91.

Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
altē ,	<i>loftily</i> ,	altius ,		altissimē .
pulchrē ,	<i>beautifully</i> ,	pulchrius ,		pulcherrimē .
miserē ,	<i>poorly</i> ,	miserius ,		miserrimē .
fortiter ,	<i>bravely</i> ,	fortius ,		fortissimē .
audācter ,	<i>boldly</i> ,	audācius ,		audācissimē .
tūtō ,	<i>safely</i> ,	tūtius ,		tūtissimē .
facile ,	<i>easily</i> ,	facilius ,		facillimē .
bene ,	<i>well</i> ,	melius ,		optimē .
male ,	<i>ill</i> ,	pējus ,		pessimē .
[parvus],	<i>small</i> ,	minus ,	<i>less</i> ,	minimē , <i>least</i> .
[magnus],	<i>great</i> ,	magis ,	<i>more</i> ,	maximē , <i>most</i> .
multum ,	<i>much</i> ,	plūs ,	<i>more</i> ,	plūrium .
cito ,	<i>quickly</i> ,	citius ,		citissimē .
diū ,	<i>long</i> ,	diūtius ,		diūtissimē .
saepe ,	<i>often</i> ,	saepius ,		saepissimē .
nūper ,	<i>recently</i> ,	—,		nūperrimē .
satis ,	<i>enough</i> ,	satius ,	<i>better</i> .	

NUMERALS.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus*, *ne*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*, and the plural *milia*, *thousands*, which forms *milium* and *milibus*.

a.	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>two</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
b.	<i>duōrum</i> ,		<i>duārum</i> ,	<i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>trium</i> .	
c.	<i>duōbus</i> ,		<i>duābus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> .	
d.	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i> ,		<i>duās</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>tria</i> .
e.	<i>duōbus</i> ,		<i>duābus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> .	

Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, *-ae*, *-o*, *both*.

93. 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS. 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1	I	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>ūna</i> , <i>ūnum</i>	<i>prīmus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> (prior).
2	II	<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i> (alter).
3	III	<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i>	<i>tertius</i>
4	IV	<i>quattuor</i>	<i>quartus</i>
5	V	<i>quinque</i>	<i>quintus</i>
6	VI	<i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>
7	VII	<i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>
8	VIII	<i>octo</i>	<i>octāvus</i>
9	IX	<i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>
10	X	<i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>
11	XI	<i>undecim</i>	<i>undecimus</i>
12	XII	<i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>
13	XIII	<i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>
14	XIV	<i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quartus decimus</i>
15	XV	<i>quindecim</i>	<i>quintus decimus</i>
16	XVI	<i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>
17	XVII	<i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>
18	XVIII	<i>duodēvigintī</i>	<i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>
19	XIX	<i>undēvigintī</i>	<i>undēvicēsīmus</i>
20	XX	<i>vigintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmus</i>
21	XXI	<i>vigintī ūnus</i>	<i>vicēsīmus prīmus</i>
22	XXII	<i>vigintī duo</i>	<i>vicēsīmus secundus</i>
23	XXIII	<i>vigintī trēs</i>	<i>vicēsīmus tertius</i>
24	XXIV	<i>vigintī quattuor</i>	<i>vicēsīmus quartus</i>
25	XXV	<i>vigintī quinque</i>	<i>vicēsīmus quintus</i>
26	XXVI	<i>vigintī sex</i>	<i>vicēsīmus sextus</i>

	1. CARDINAL NUMERALS.	2. ORDINAL NUMERALS.
27	XXVII vigintī septem	vicēsimum septimum
28	XXVIII duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimum
29	XXIX undētrīgintā	undētricēsimum
30	XXX trīgintā	tricēsimum
40	XL quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum
50	L quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimum
60	LX sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum
70	LXX septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum
80	LXXX octōgintā	octōgēsimum
90	XC nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum
100	C centum	centēsimum
101	CI centum et ūnus	centēsimum prīmus [mus
115	CXV centum et quindecim	centēsimum et quintus deci
120	CXX centum et vigintī	centēsimum vicēsimum [mus
121	CXXI centum et vigintī ūnus	centēsimum vicēsimum prī-
200	CC ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimum
300	CCC trecentī	trecentēsimum
400	CCCC quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsimum
500	D (I ₀) quīngentī	quīngentēsimum
600	DC sexcentī	sexcentēsimum
700	DCC septīngentī	septīngentēsimum
800	DCCC octīngentī	octīngentēsimum
900	DCCCC nongentī	nongentēsimum
1000	M (CI ₀) mille	millēsimum
1001	MI mille et ūnus	millēsimum prīmus
1101	MCI mille centum ūnus	millēsimum centēsimum prī-
		mus
1120	MCXX mille centum vigintī	millēsimum centēsimum vī-
	[ūnus	cēsimum [cēsimum prīmu
1121	MCXXI mille centum vigintī	millēsimum centēsimum vī-
1200	MCC mille ducentī	millēsimum ducentēsimum
2000	MM duo mīlia (millia)	bis millēsimum
	bīna mīlia	
2222	duo mīlia ducentī vī-	bis millēsimum ducentē-
	gintī duo	mus vicēsimum secund
5000	I ₀₀ quinque mīlia	quīnquīēs millēsimum
	quīna mīlia	
10,000	CCI ₀₀ decem mīlia	deciēs millēsimum
	dēna mīlia	
21,000	ūnum et vigintī mīlia	semel et viciēs millēsimum
100,000	centum mīlia	centiēs millēsimum
	centēna mīlia	
1,000,000	deciēs centēna mīlia	deciēs centiēs millēsimum

REMARK.—D is short for IO, M for CIO. Adding O on the right of I multiplies by 10 : O = 5000 ; IOOO = 50,000. Putting C before as often as O stands after multiplies by 2 : O = 1000 ; CCIIO = 10,000 ; CCCIOOO = 100,000.

94.

COMPOUND NUMERALS.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: *decem et trēs*.
2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., are commonly expressed by subtraction ; occasionally, as in English.
3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as in English : *twenty-one*, *vīgintī ūnus* ; or *one and twenty*, *ūnus et vīgintī*.
As *21 years old* : *annōs ūnum et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnum), ūnum et vīgintī annos nātus*.
4. From 100 on, *et* is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether : *mille et centum ūnus*, or *mille centum ūnus* = 1101.

CARDINALS.

21-27	<i>vīgintī ūnus</i>	or	<i>ūnus et vīgintī</i>
101	<i>centum et ūnus</i>		<i>centum ūnus</i>
120	<i>centum et vīgintī</i>		<i>centum vīgintī</i>
121	<i>centum et vīgintī ūnus</i>		<i>centum vīgintī ūnus</i>
1001	<i>mille et ūnus</i>		<i>mille ūnus</i>
1101	<i>mille et centum ūnus</i>		<i>mille centum ūnus</i>
1125	<i>mille et centum vīgintī quinque</i>		<i>mille centum vīgintī quinque</i>
2222	<i>duo milia et ducentī vīgintī duo</i>		<i>duo milia ducentī vīgintī duo</i>

ORDINALS.

13-17	<i>tertius decimus</i>	or	<i>decimus et tertius</i>
18	<i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>		<i>octāvus decimus</i>
19	<i>undēvicēsīmus</i>		<i>nōnus decimus</i>
21	<i>vicēsīmus primus</i>		<i>ūnus et vicēsīmus</i>
22	<i>vicēsīmus secundus</i>		<i>alter et vicēsīmus</i>
23	<i>vicēsīmus tertius</i>		<i>tertius et vicēsīmus</i>

95.

3. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

1	<i>singulī, -ae, -a, one each.</i>	14	<i>quaternī dēnī</i>
2	<i>bīnī, -ae, -a, two each.</i>	15	<i>quīnī dēnī</i>
3	<i>ternī</i>	16	<i>sēnī dēnī</i>
4	<i>quaternī</i>	17	<i>septēnī dēnī</i>
5	<i>quīnī</i>	18	<i>octōnī dēnī, duodēvicēnī</i>
6	<i>sēnī</i>	19	<i>novēnī dēnī, undēvicēnī</i>
7	<i>septēnī</i>	20	<i>vicēnī</i>
8	<i>octōnī</i>	21	<i>vicēnī singulī</i>
9	<i>novēnī</i>	22	<i>vicēnī bīnī, bīnī et vicēnī</i>
10	<i>dēnī</i>	28	<i>duodētricēnī</i>
11	<i>undēnī</i>	29	<i>undētricēnī</i>
12	<i>duodēnī</i>	30	<i>tricēnī</i>
13	<i>ternī dēnī</i>	40	<i>quadrāgēnī</i>

50	quinquāgēnī	600	sexcēnī
60	sexāgēnī	700	septingēnī
70	septuāgēnī	800	octingēnī
80	octōgēnī	900	nongēnī
90	nōnāgēnī	1000	singula mīlia
100	cētēnī	2000	bīna mīlia
200	ducēnī	3000	trīna mīlia
300	trecēnī	10,000	dēna mīlia
400	quadringēnī	100,000	centēna mīlia
500	quingēnī		

REMARKS.—1. The distributives are used with an exactness, which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when *singuli* is expressed, the cardinal may be used.

2. The distributives are used with *Plūrālia tantum*: *bīnae literae*, *two epistles*. But with these *ūnī* is used for *one*, *trīnī* for *three*: *ūnae literae*, *trīnae literae*.

3. The poets occasionally use the distributives for cardinals.

4. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

1	simplex,	<i>single,</i>	5	quincuplex.
2	duplex,	<i>double,</i>	7	septemplex.
3	triplex,	<i>triple,</i>	10	decemplex.
4	quadruplex,		100	centuplex.

These answer the question, *how many fold?*

5. PROPORTIONAL NUMERALS.

1	simpplus, -a, -um,	<i>single,</i>	4	quadruplus.
2	duplus,	<i>double,</i>	7	septuplus.
3	triplus,		8	octuplus.

These answer the question, *how many times as great?*

REMARK.—Only a few forms can be proved.

96.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1	semel, <i>once,</i>	12	duodeciēs
2	bis, <i>twice,</i>	13	ter deciēs, tredecīēs
3	ter	14	quater deciēs, quattuordecīēs
4	quater	15	quīnquiēs deciēs, quindecīēs
5	quīnquiēs, quīnquiens	16	sexiēs deciēs, sēdecīēs
6	sexiēs	17	septiēs deciēs
7	septiēs	18	duodēviciēs, octiēs deciēs
8	octiēs	19	undēviciēs, noviēs deciēs
9	noviēs	20	viciēs
10	deciēs	21	semel et viciēs, viciēs et semel, viciēs semel,*
11	undeciēs		

* Not *semel viciēs*, *bis viciēs*, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = times; twice twenty times = 40 times.

2 bis et viciēs, viciēs et bis, viciēs bis *	400	quadringentiēs
0 trīciēs	500	quingentiēs
0 quadrāgiēs	600	sexcentiēs
0 quinquāgiēs	700	septingentiēs
0 sexāgiēs	800	octingentiēs
0 septuāgiēs	900	nongentiēs
0 octōgiēs	1,000	milliēs
0 nōnāgiēs	2,000	bis milliēs
0 centiēs	100,000	centiēs milliēs
0 ducentiēs	1,000,000	milliēs milliēs, deciēs cen- tiēs milliēs.
0 trecentiēs		

PRONOUNS.

97. Pronouns designate without describing.

REMARK.—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as *ego, I, thou*; it cannot express local appurtenance, as *hic, this (here), ille, that (there)*.

98. A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

SUBSTANTIVE.

POSSESSIVE.

SING.—N.	ego,	<i>I,</i>	
G.	meī,	<i>of me,</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>mine or my.</i>
D.	mihī,	<i>to, for me,</i>	Voc. (masc.), mī.
Ac.	mē,	<i>me,</i>	
Abl.	mē,	<i>from, with, by me.</i>	

PLUR.—N.	nōs,	<i>we,</i>	
G.	nōstri,	<i>of us,</i>	nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, <i>our or ours.</i>
	nōstrum,		
D.	nōbīs,	<i>to, for us,</i>	
Ac.	nōs,	<i>us,</i>	
Abl.	nōbīs,	<i>from, with, by us.</i>	

99. II. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

SUBSTANTIVE.

POSSESSIVE.

SING.—N.	tū,	<i>thou,</i>	
G.	tuī,	<i>of thee,</i>	
D.	tibī,	<i>to, for thee,</i>	tuus, a, um, <i>thy or thine.</i>
Ac.	tē,	<i>thee,</i>	
Abl.	tē,	<i>from, with, by thee.</i>	

* Not *semel viciēs, bis viciēs*, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
PLUR.—N.	vōs, <i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	vestrī, <i>of you,</i> vestrum,	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your or yours.</i>
D.	vōbīs, <i>to, for you,</i>	
Ac.	vōs, <i>you,</i>	
Abl.	vōbīs, <i>from, with, by you.</i>	

REMARKS.—1. The forms of the Genitive Plural, **nōstrum** and **vestrum**, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.

2. From **nōster** and **vester** and also from **cūjus**, *whose?* (104) are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: **nōstrās**, of *our country*; **vestrās**, of *your country*; **cūjās**, of *whose country?* Gen. **nōstrātis**, **vestrātis**, **cūjātis**.

III. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

100. The personal pronoun of the third person is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

DETERMINATIVE.

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
SING.—N.	[is, ea, id], <i>he, she, it,</i>	(supplied by the genitive.)
G.	ējus, <i>of him, etc.,</i>	ējus, <i>his, hers, its.</i>
D.	eī, <i>to, for him,</i>	
Ac.	eum, eam, id, <i>him, her, it,</i>	
Abl.	eō, eā, eō, <i>from, with, by him, etc.</i>	
PLUR.—N.	[eī, or iī, eae, ea], <i>they,</i>	
G.	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>of them,</i>	eōrum. eārum, eōrum, <i>their,</i>
D.	eīs, or iīs, <i>to, for them,</i>	or <i>theirs.</i>
Ac.	eōs, eās, ea, <i>them,</i>	
Abl.	eīs, or iīs, <i>from, with, by them.</i>	

REFLEXIVE.

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
SING.—N.	—	
G.	suī, <i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her(s), its</i>
D.	sibī, <i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	(<i>own</i>).
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>him(self), her(self),</i>	
Abl.	sē (sēsē), <i>from, with, by him(self).</i>	
PLUR.—N.	—	
G.	suī, <i>of them(selves),</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>their (own),</i>
D.	sibī, <i>to, for them(selves),</i>	<i>theirs.</i>
Ac.	sē (sēsē), <i>them(selves),</i>	
Abl.	sē (sēsē) <i>from, with, by them(selves).</i>	

REMARKS.—1. The enclitic **-met** may be added to all the forms of **ego** (except **nōstrum**), to all the forms of **tū** (except **tū** and **vestrum**), to **sibi**, **sē**, and the forms of **suus**; **egomet**, *I myself*.

2. The enclitic **-pte** is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessives; it is especially common with **suō**; **suōpte ingeniō**, *by his own genius*.

3. From **tū** are formed **tūte** and **tūtemet**.

101.

B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *is, he, that, etc.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	is,	ea,	id,	eī, or iī,	eae,	ea,
G.	ējus,			eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	eī,			eīs, or iīs,		
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eīs, or iīs.		

2. *idem, the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	idem,	eadem,	idem,	eīdem, or iīdem,	eaedem,	eadem,
G.	ējusdem,			eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D.	eīdem,			eīsdem, or iīsdem,		
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Abl.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	eīsdem, or iīsdem.		

3. *ipse, he, self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
G.	ipsius,			ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
D.	ipsī,			ipsīs,		
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs.		

102.

C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE FIRST PERSON.

hīc, this.

SING. N.	<i>hīc,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	PL. N.	<i>hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>naec, these,</i>
G.	<i>hūjus,</i>				<i>hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>
D.	<i>huīc,</i>				<i>hīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>		<i>hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec,</i>
Abl.	<i>hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>		<i>hīs.</i>		

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE SECOND PERSON.

iste, that.

SING. N.	<i>iste,</i>	<i>ista,</i>	<i>istud,</i>	PL. N.	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istae,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
G.	<i>istius,</i>				<i>istōrum,</i>	<i>istārum,</i>	<i>istōrum,</i>
D.	<i>istī,</i>				<i>istīs,</i>		
Ac.	<i>istum,</i>	<i>istam,</i>	<i>istud,</i>		<i>istōs,</i>	<i>istās,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
Abl.	<i>istō,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istō.</i>		<i>istīs.</i>		

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE THIRD PERSON.

SING. N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	PL. N.	illī,	illae,	illa,
G.	illius,				illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illī,				illis,		
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud,		illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.		illis.		

REMARKS.—1. *Hīc*: the forms in -c arise from the enclitic -ce. So *hīce*, *hūnce*, are found in older Latin; and -ci in the interrogative form with *nē*, *hīcine*? This -ce is sometimes appended to the other forms: *hūjuse*, *hōsce*.

2. *Iste* and *Ille* have, like *hīc*, forms in -c, but only in Nom. Acc. Abl.

istic,	istaec,	istōc	or istūc,
istunc,	istanc,	istōc	or istūc.
istōc,	istāc,	istōc,	So illīc, illōc, etc.

103.

D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

quī, *who*.

SING. N.	quī,	quae,	quod,	PL. N.	quī,	quae,	quae,
G.	cūjus,				quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D.	cūi,				quibus,		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,		quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.		quibus.		

REMARKS.—1. *Quis*, *quīs*, is also found as a Plural Dat. Abl. The form *quī* is used as the Abl. Sing. *quō*, *quā*, *quō*, chiefly with -cum; *quīcum* for *quōcum*, *with whom*. *Quī*, interrogative, means *how*;

General Relatives are :

<i>Substantive</i> .	<i>quisquis</i> ,	<i>whoever</i> ,	<i>quidquid</i> ,	<i>whatever</i> .
<i>Adjective</i> .	<i>quīquī</i> ,	<i>quaequae</i> ,	<i>quodquod</i> ,	<i>whosoever</i> .
	<i>quīcunque</i> ,	<i>quaecunque</i> ,	<i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>whichever</i> .

104.

E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Substantive</i> .	<i>quis?</i>	<i>who?</i>	<i>quid?</i>	<i>what?</i>			
<i>Adjective</i> .	<i>quī?</i>		<i>quae?</i>	<i>quod?</i>	<i>which?</i>		
<i>Subst. and Adj.</i>	<i>uter?</i>		<i>utra?</i>	<i>utrum?</i>	<i>who, which of two?</i>		
SING. N.	<i>quis?</i>	<i>quid?</i>	<i>who? what?</i>	POSSESSIVE.			
G.	<i>cūjus?</i>	—	<i>whose?</i>	<i>cūjus</i> ,	<i>cūja</i> ,	<i>cūjum</i> ,	<i>whose?</i>
D.	<i>cūi?</i>	—	<i>to, for whom?</i>				(rare).
Ac.	<i>quem?</i>	—	<i>whom? what?</i>				
Abl.	<i>quō?</i>		<i>from, with, by whom or what?</i>				

REMARK.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *which*.

STRENGTHENED INTERROGATIVES.

<i>Substantive</i> .	<i>quisnam?</i>	<i>who pray?</i>	<i>quidnam?</i>	<i>what pray?</i>	
<i>Adjective</i> .	<i>quīnam?</i>		<i>quāenam?</i>	<i>quodnam?</i>	<i>which pray?</i>

105. F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Substantive.* aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } somebody, some one or
 quis, qua, quid, } other.
Adjective. aliquī, aliquae (or aliqua*), aliquod, } some, any.
 quī, quae (or qua*), quod, }
2. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), a certain, certain one.
 3. quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), some one, some.
 4. quisquam, ———, quidquam, any one (at all). No plural.
 5. quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (and quodvis), } any one you please,
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (and quodlibet), } you like.
 6. quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque, each one.
 ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque, ūnumquidque and ūnumquodque, each one severally.

The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed rigorously only in the neuter.

REMARK.—*Quisquam* is used only as a substantive, except with designations of persons; *scriptor quisquam*, any writer (at all), *Gallus quisquam*, any Gaul (at all). The corresponding adjective is *ullus*.

ullus, -a, -um, any; *nullus, -a, -um*, no one, not one. The corresponding substantives are *nēmo* (76), and *nihil*, which forms *nihili* and *nihilō* (Abl.) only in certain combinations.

nonnullus, -a, -um, some, many a.

alius, -a, -ud, another; *alter, -era, -erum*, the other, one (of two); neuter, *neutra, neutrum*, neither of two.

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two. Gen. *alterutrius*.

(or *alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum*. Gen. *alterius utrius*.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. *ambo, -ae, -o*, both.

utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs, }
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, } whichever you please of the two.

CORRELATIVES.

106. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERROGATIVES.	DEMONSTRATIVES.	RELATIVES.
quis? who?	is, that,	quī, who.
quālis? of what kind?	tālis, such (of that kind),	quālis, as (of which kind).
quantus? how much?	tantus, so much,	quantus, as much,
quot? how many?	tot, so many.	quot, as many.

* In neuter plural, *aliquae* or *aliqua*, *quae* or *qua*.

107. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

ubi? <i>where?</i>	ibi,	there,	ubi,	where.
quā? <i>where? which way?</i>	hic, hāc,	here, this way,	quā,	where, which way
	istic, istāc,	there, that way,		
	illic, illāc,	there, yonder way.		
unde? <i>whence?</i>	inde,	thence,	unde,	whence.
	hinc,	hence.		
	istinc,	thence.		
	illinc,	thence, from yonder.		
quō? <i>whither?</i>	eō,	thither.	quō,	whither.
	hūc,	hither.		
	istūc,	thither.		
	illūc,	thither, yonder.		

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

quandō? <i>when?</i>	tum,	then,	quandō,	
	tunc,	at that time,	quum.	
	nunc,	now.		
quotiēs? <i>how often?</i>	totiēs,	so often.	quotiēs,	as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

quōmodo? quī? <i>how?</i>	ita, sic,	so, thus,	ut, utī,	as.
quam? <i>how much?</i>	tam,	so much,	quam,	as.

108. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing *ali-*:
aliquantus, somewhat great; *aliquot*, several, some; *alicubi*, somewhere
alicunde, from somewhere; *aliquandō*, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing *-cunque* (*cunque*):

quantuscunque, however great; *quālescunque*, of whatever kind; *quotuscunque*, however many; *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quandōcunque*, whenever
quotiēscunque, however often; *utut*, in whatever way; *utcunque*, howsoever; *quamquam*, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with *-vis* or *-libet*:

quantuslibet, *quantusvis*, as great as you please; *ubivis*, where you will
quamvis, as you please, though.

THE VERB.

109. The Inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;
4. Mood—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

110. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

111. The Inflection of the Verb is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

1. The personal endings are pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice.
2. The connecting vowels are either euphonic or symbolic.
3. The tense-signs occur only in the compound tenses (weak tenses).

The compound or weak tenses are:

The Imperfect, Active and Passive. The Perfect in **vī** (**uī**) and **sī**.

The Pluperfect Active.

The Futures in **-bo**, **-bor**.

The Future Perfect.

The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.

So in **amā-ba-m**, *I loved*, **b** is the tense-sign, **a** the connecting vowel, **m** the personal ending (comp. **mē**), 1st P. Singular Active.

REMARKS.—1. The tense-signs are themselves auxiliary verbs, as: **-r(am)** for **-s(am)**, from **(e)s-(se)**; **v(i)**, **u(i)** from **fu(i)**; **sī** from **(e)s (se)**; **-b(am)** **-b(o)** from **fu-(am)**, **fu(o)**.

2. No adequate uniform translation can be given to all the moods and tenses. Especially is this true of the subjunctive. See Syntax.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb *sum*, *I am*.

112. THE VERB *sum*, *I am* (stem *es-*).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SING.—1. <i>sum</i> ,	<i>I am</i> ,	<i>sim</i> ,	<i>I be</i> ,
2. <i>es</i> ,	<i>thou art</i> ,	<i>sīs</i> ,	<i>thou be</i> ,
3. <i>est</i> ,	<i>he, she, it is</i> ,	<i>sit</i> ,	<i>he, she, it be</i> .
PLUR.—1. <i>sumus</i> ,	<i>we are</i> ,	<i>sīmus</i> ,	<i>we be</i> ,
2. <i>estis</i> ,	<i>you are</i> ,	<i>sītis</i> ,	<i>you be</i> ,
3. <i>sunt</i> ,	<i>they are</i> ,	<i>sint</i> ,	<i>they be</i> .

IMPERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>eram</i> ,	<i>I was</i> ,	<i>essem</i> ,	<i>I were (forem)</i> ,
2. <i>erās</i> ,	<i>thou wast</i> ,	<i>essēs</i> ,	<i>thou wert (forēs)</i> ,
3. <i>erat</i> ,	<i>he was</i> ,	<i>esset</i> ,	<i>he were (foret)</i> .
PLUR.—1. <i>erāmus</i> ,	<i>we were</i> ,	<i>essēmus</i> ,	<i>we were</i> ,
2. <i>erātis</i> ,	<i>you were</i> ,	<i>essētis</i> ,	<i>you were</i> ,
3. <i>erant</i> ,	<i>they were</i> ,	<i>essent</i> ,	<i>they were (forent)</i> .

FUTURE.

SING.—1. <i>erō</i> ,	<i>I shall be</i> ,
2. <i>eris</i> ,	<i>thou wilt be</i> ,
3. <i>erit</i> ,	<i>he will be</i> .
PLUR.—1. <i>erimus</i> ,	<i>we shall be</i> ,
2. <i>eritis</i> ,	<i>you will be</i> ,
3. <i>erunt</i> ,	<i>they will be</i> .

PERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>fuī</i> ,	<i>I have been, I was, fuerim</i> ,	<i>I have, may have, been</i> ,
2. <i>fuistī</i> ,	<i>thou hast been, thou fueris,</i> <i>wast</i> ,	<i>thou have, mayest have,</i> <i>been</i> ,
3. <i>fuit</i> ,	<i>he has been, he was, fuerit</i> ,	<i>he have, may have, been</i> .
PLUR.—1. <i>fui^ūmus</i> ,	<i>we have been, we fuerimus,</i>	<i>we have, may have, been,</i>
	<i>were</i> ,	
2. <i>fuistis</i> ,	<i>you have been, you fueritis,</i>	<i>you have, may have, been,</i>
	<i>were</i> ,	
3. <i>fuērunt</i> ,	<i>they have been, they fuerint,</i>	<i>they have, may have, been.</i>
	<i>were</i> ,	

PLUPERFECT.

SING.—1. <i>fueram</i> ,	<i>I had been</i> ,	<i>fuissem</i> ,	<i>I had, might have, been</i> ,
2. <i>fuerās</i> ,	<i>thou hadst been</i> ,	<i>fuissēs</i> ,	<i>thou hadst, mightst have,</i> <i>been</i> ,
3. <i>fuerat</i> ,	<i>he had been</i> ,	<i>fuisset</i> ,	<i>he had, might have, been</i> .
PLUR.—1. <i>fuerāmus</i> ,	<i>we had been</i> ,	<i>fuissēmus</i> ,	<i>we had, might have, been</i> ,
2. <i>fuerātis</i> ,	<i>you had been</i> ,	<i>fuissētis</i> ,	<i>you had, might have, been</i> ,
3. <i>fuerant</i> ,	<i>they had been</i> ,	<i>fuissent</i> ,	<i>they had, might have, been</i> .

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- SING.—1. fuerō, *I shall have been,*
 2. fueris, *thou wilt have been,*
 3. fuerit, *he shall have been,*

- PLUR.—1. fuerimus, *we shall have been,*
 2. fueritis, *you will have been,*
 3. fuerint, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| SING. | | | |
| 1. —, | | | PRES. esse, <i>to be,</i> |
| 2. es, <i>be thou,</i> | estō, <i>thou shalt be,</i> | | PERF. fuisse, <i>to have been,</i> |
| 3. | estō, <i>he shall be.</i> | | FUT. futurum (-am, -um), esse
(fore), <i>to be about to be.</i> |
| PLUR. | | | |
| 1. —, | | | |
| 2. este, <i>be ye,</i> | estote, <i>you shall be,</i> | | PARTICIPLE. |
| 3. | suntō, <i>they shall be.</i> | | FUT. futurus, -a, -um, <i>about to be.</i> |

113.

COMPOUNDS OF sum, *I am.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| ab-sum, <i>I am away, absent.</i> Perf. | ob-sum, <i>I am against, I hurt.</i> |
| abfui, āfui. | Perf. obfui or offui. |
| ad-sum, <i>I am present.</i> Perf. affui. | prae-sum, <i>I am over, I superintend.</i> |
| dē-sum, <i>I am wanting.</i> | prō-sum, <i>I am for, I profit.</i> |
| in-sum, <i>I am in.</i> | sub-sum, <i>I am under.</i> No Perf. |
| inter-sum, <i>I am between.</i> | super-sum, <i>I am, or remain, over.</i> |

REMARK.—Only absum and praesum form present participles: absens, *absent*, and praesens, *present*.

Prōsum, *I profit.*

114. In the forms of prōsum, prōd- is used before vowels.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| PRESENT, | prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, | prō-sim, |
| | prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt, | |
| IMPERFECT, | prōd-eram, | prōd-essem, |
| FUTURE, | prōd-erō, | |
| PERFECT, | prō-fui, | prō-fuerim, |
| PLUPERFECT, | prō-fueram, | prō-fuissem. |
| FUT. PERF., | prō-fuerō, | |

INFINITIVE. PRES. prōd-esse; PERF. prō fuisse.

Possum, *I am able, I can.*

115. Possum is compounded of pot (potis, pote) and sum; t becomes s before s.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SING.—1. pos-sum, <i>I am able, can,</i>	pos-sim, <i>I be able.</i>
2. pot-es,	pos-sīs,
3. pot-est,	pos-sit.
PLUR.—1. pos-sumus,	pos-sīmus,
2. pot-estis,	pos-sītis,
3. pos-sunt,	pos-sint.

IMPERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-eram, <i>I was able,</i> <i>could,</i>	pos-sem, <i>I were, might be, able.</i>
2. pot-erās,	pos-sēs,
3. pot-erat,	pos-set.
PLUR.—1. pot-erāmus,	pos-sēmus,
2. pot-erātis,	pos-sētis,
3. pot-erant,	pos-sent.

FUTURE.

SING.—1. pot-erō, <i>I shall be able.</i>
2. pot-eris,
3. pot-erit.
PLUR.—1. pot-erimus,
2. pot-eritis,
3. pot-erunt.

PERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-uī, <i>I have been able,</i>	pot-uerim, <i>I have, may have, been</i> <i>able.</i>
2. pot-uistī,	pot-uerīs,
3. pot-uit,	pot-uerit.
PLUR.—1. pot-uimus,	pot-uerīmus,
2. pot-uistis,	pot-uerītis,
3. pot-uērunt,	pot-uerint.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-ueram, <i>I had been able,</i>	pot-uissem, <i>I had, might have, been able,</i>
2. pot-uerās,	pot-uissēs,
3. pot-uerat,	pot-uisset.
PLUR.—1. pot-uerāmus,	pot-uissēmus,
2. pot-uerātis,	pot-uissētis,
3. pot-uerant,	pot-uissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.—1. pot-uerō, <i>I shall have been able.</i>
2. pot-uerīs,
3. pot-uerit.
PLUR.—1. pot-uerīmus,
2. pot-uerītis,
3. pot-uerint.

INFINITIVE. *Pres. Posse, to be able. Perf. Potuisse, to have been able.*

SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

116. There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristic, viz., the Vowel Conjugation and the Consonant Conjugation.

117. Vowel verbal stems end in *ā, ē, i* (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in *u* follow the Consonant Conjugation.

118.

THE STEM-FORMS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
I. am-ō,	amā-re,	amā-vī,	amā-tum,	<i>to love.</i>
II. dēle-ō,	dēlē-re,	dēlē-vī,	dēlē-tum,	<i>to blot out.</i>
mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-uī,	mon-i-tum,	<i>to remind.</i>
III. em-ō,	em-e-re,	ēm-ī,	em-tum,	<i>to buy.</i>
statu-ō,	statu-e-re,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
scrib-ō,	scrib-e-re,	scrip-sī,	scrip-tum,	<i>to write.</i>
IV. audi-ō,	audi-re,	audi-vī,	audi-tum.	<i>to hear.</i>

119.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE:

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am loving, do love, love.**Be loving, may love.*

SING.—1. am-ō,

ame-m,

2. amā-s,

amē-s,

3. ama-t,

ame-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-mus,

amē-mus,

2. amā-tis,

amē-tis,

3. ama-nt,

ame-nt.

IMPERFECT.

*Was loving, loved.**Were loving, might love.*

SING.—1. amā-ba-m,

amā-re-m,

2. amā-bā-s,

amā-rē-s,

3. amā-ba-t,

amā-re-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bā-mus,

amā-rē-mus,

2. amā-bā-tis,

amā-rē-tis,

3. amā-ba-nt,

amā-re-nt.

FUTURE.

Shall be loving, shall love.

SING.—1. amā-b-ō,

2. amā-bi-s,

3. amā-bi-t.

PLUR.—1. amā-bi-mus,

2. amā-bi-tis,

3. amā-bu-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1. —,

2. amā, love thou, amā-tō, thou shalt love.

3. amā-tō, he shall love.

PLUR.—1. —,

2. amā-te, love ye, amā-tōte, ye shall love.

3. ama-ntō, they shall love.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. N. ama-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, loving.

FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, being about to love.

120.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have loved, did love.**Have, may have, loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-vī,
2. amā-vi-stī,
3. amā-vi-t,

- amā-ve-ri-m,
amā-ve-rī-s,
amā-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-vi-mus,
2. amā-vi-stis,
3. amā-vē-runt,

- amā-ve-rī-mus,
amā-ve-rī-tis,
amā-ve-ri-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.**Had, might have, loved.*

- SING.—1. amā-ve-ra-m,
2. amā-ve-rā-s,
3. amā-ve-ra-t,

- amā-vi-sse-m,
amā-vi-ssē-s,
amā-vi-sse-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rā-mus,
2. amā-ve-rā-tis,
3. amā-ve-ra-nt,

- amā-vi-ssē-mus,
amā-vi-ssē-tis,
amā-vi-sse-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have loved.

- SING.—1. amā-ve-r-ō,
2. amā-ve-rī-s,
3. amā-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. amā-ve-rī-mus,
2. amā-ve-rī-tis,
3. amā-ve-ri-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amā-re, *to love.*PERF. amā-vi-sse, *to have loved.*FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to love.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], *loving.*G. ama-nd-ī, *of loving.*D. ama-nd-ō, *to loving.*Ac. [amā-re], (ad) ama-nd-um, *loving, to love.* 1. amā-tum, *to love.*Abl. ama-nd-ō, *by loving.* 2. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*

121.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.	
	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Am loved.</i>		<i>Be, may be, loved.</i>
SING.—1. amō-r,		ame-r,
2. amā-ris,		amē-ris,
3. amā-tur,		amē-tur.
PLUR.—1. amā-mur,		amē-mur,
2. amā-minī,		amē-minī,
3. ama-ntur,		ame-ntur.
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was loved.</i>		<i>Were, might be, loved.</i>
SING.—1. amā-ba-r,		amā-re-r,
2. amā-bā-ris,		amā-rē-ris,
3. amā-bā-tur,		amā-rē-tur.
PLUR.—1. amā-bā-mur,		amā-rē-mur,
2. amā-bā-minī,		amā-rē-minī,
3. amā-ba-ntur.		amā-re-ntur.
	FUTURE.	
<i>Shall be loved.</i>		
SING.—1. amā-bo-r,		
2. amā-be-ris,		
3. amā-bi-tur.		
PLUR.—1. amā-bi-mur,		
2. amā-bi-minī,		
3. amā-bu-ntur.		
	IMPERATIVE.	
SING.—1. —,		
2. amā-re, <i>be thou loved,</i>	amā-tor,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
3.	amā-tor,	<i>he shall be loved.</i>
PLUR.—1. —,		
2. amā-minī, <i>be ye loved.</i>		
3.	ama-ntor,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>
	INFINITIVE.	
PRES. amā-rī,		<i>to be loved.</i>
PERF. amā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,		<i>to have been loved.</i>
FUT. amā-tum irī,		<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
F. P. amā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.		

122.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have been loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
2.		es,		s-i-s,
3.		es-t,		s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,		s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,		es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,		es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt,		es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been loved.

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-i-s,
3.		er-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved.*GERUNDIVE. ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.*

123. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Destroy (blot out).**Be destroying, may destroy.*

SING.—1. dēle-ō,

dēle-a-m,

2. dēlē-s,

dēle-ā-s,

3. dēle-t,

dēle-a-t.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-mus,

dēle-ā-mus,

2. dēlē-tis,

dēle-ā-tis,

3. dēle-nt,

dēle-a-nt.

IMPERFECT.

*Was destroying.**Were destroying, might destroy.*

SING.—1. dēlē-ba-m,

dēlē-re-m,

2. dēlē-bā-s,

dēlē-rē-s,

3. dēlē-ba-t,

dēlē-re-t.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-bā-mus,

dēlē-rē-mus,

2. dēlē-bā-tis,

dēlē-rē-tis,

3. dēlē-ba-nt,

dēlē-re-nt.

FUTURE.

Shall destroy.

SING.—1. dēlē-b-ō,

2. dēlē-bi-s,

3. dēlē-bi-t.

PLUR.—1. dēlē-bi-mus,

2. dēlē-bi-tis,

3. dēlē-bu-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1. —,

2. dēlē, *destroy thou,*

dēlē-tō,

thou shalt destroy.

dēlē-tō,

he shall destroy.

PLUR.—1. —,

2. dēlē-te, *destroy ye,*dēlē-tōte, *ye shall destroy.*dēle-ntō, *they shall destroy.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. N. dēle-n-s; G. dele-nt-is, *destroying.*FUTURE. dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um, *about to destroy.*

124

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Have destroyed, destroyed.**Have, may have, destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-vī,**dēlē-ve-ri-m,*2. *dēlē-vi-stī,**dēlē-ve-rī-s,*3. *dēlē-vi-t,**dēlē-ve-ri-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-vi-mus,**dēlē-ve-rī-mus,*2. *dēlē-vi-stis,**dēlē-ve-rī-tis*3. *dēlē-vē-runt,**dēlē-ve-ri-nt.*

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had destroyed.**Had, might have, destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-ve-ra-m,**dēlē-vi-sse-m,*2. *dēlē-ve-rā-s,**dēlē-vi-ssē-s,*3. *dēlē-ve-ra-t,**dēlē-vi-sse-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-ve-rā-mus,**dēlē-vi-ssē-mus,*2. *dēlē-ve-rā-tis,**dēlē-vi-ssē-tis,*3. *dēlē-ve-ra-nt,**dēlē-vi-sse-nt.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have destroyed.*SING.—1. *dēlē-ve-r-ō,*2. *dēlē-ve-rī-s,*3. *dēlē-ve-ri-t.*PLUR.—1. *dēlē-ve-rī-mus,*2. *dēlē-ve-rī-tis,*3. *dēlē-ve-ri-nt.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. *dēlē-re, to destroy.*PERFECT. *dēlē-vī-sse, to have destroyed.*FUTURE. *dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to destroy.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [*dēlē-re*], *destroying, to destroy.*G. *dēle-nd-ī,* *of destroying.*D. *dēle-nd-ō,* *to, for destroying.*Ac. [*dēlē-re*] (ad) *dēle-nd-um, destroying, 1. dēlē-tum, to destroy.*Abl. *dēle-nd-ō,* *by destroying,*2. *dēlē-tū, to destroy, in the destroying.*

125.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am destroyed.**Be, may be, destroyed.*

- SING.—1. dēle-o-r,
2. dēlē-ris,
3. dēlē-tur,

- dēle-a-r,
dēle-ā-ris,
dēle-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-mur,
2. dēlē-mini,
3. dēle-ntur,

- dēle-ā-mur,
dēle-ā-mini,
dēle-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was destroyed.**Were destroyed.*

- SING.—1. dēlē-ba-r,
2. dēlē-bā-ris,
3. dēlē-bā-tur,

- dēlē-re-r,
dēlē-rē-ris,
dēlē-rē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-bā-mur,
2. dēlē-bā-mini,
3. dēlē-ba-ntur,

- dēlē-rē-mur,
dēlē-rē-mini,
dēlē-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall be destroyed.

- SING.—1. dēlē-bo-r,
2. dēlē-be-ris,
3. dēlē-bi-tur.

- PLUR.—1. dēlē-bi-mur,
2. dēlē-bi-mini,
3. dēlē-bu-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

- SING.—1. —,
2. dēlē-re, *be thou destroyed.* dēlē-tor, *thou shalt be destroyed*
3. dēlē-tor, *he shall be destroyed.*

- PLUR.—1. —,
2. dēlē-mini, *be ye destroyed,*
3. dēle-ntor, *they shall be destroyed*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CON

INDICATIVE. PASSIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.
PERFECT.

Have been destroyed, was destroyed. Have, may have, been destroyed.

SING.—1.	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
2.		es,		s-ī-s,
3.		es-t,		s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-ī-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,		s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

Had been destroyed. Had, might have, been destroyed.

SING.—1.	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,		es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,		es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt,		es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been destroyed.

SING.—1.	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-is,
3.		er-it.
PLUR.—1.	dēlē-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. dēlē-rī, *to be destroyed.*

PERF. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um, esse, *to have been destroyed.*

FUT. dēlē-tum irī, *to be about to be destroyed.*

F. P. dēlē-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um, *destroyed.*

GERUNDIVE. dēle-nd-us, -a, -um, [*one*] *to be destroyed.*

127.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Like *dēlere*, to destroy, are conjugated only, *nēre*, to spin, *flēre*, to weep, and the compounds of *-plēre*, fill, and *-olēre* (*-olēscere*), grow; but *aboleo*, I abolish, forms *abolutum*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic *e* in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms. In the Perfect, the ending *vi* becomes *ui*. In the Supine, the connecting vowel *i* is used.

128. Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

<i>cēnsēō</i> ,	<i>cēnsēre</i> ,	<i>cēnsuī</i> ,	<i>cēnsu(m)</i> ,	<i>to think.</i>
<i>doceō</i> ,	<i>docēre</i> ,	<i>docuī</i> ,	<i>doctum</i> ,	<i>to teach.</i>
<i>miscēō</i> ,	<i>miscēre</i> ,	<i>miscuī</i> ,	<i>mixtum (mistum)</i> ,	<i>to mix.</i>
<i>teneō</i> ,	<i>tenēre</i> ,	<i>tenuī</i> ,	<i>(tentum)</i> ,	<i>to hold.</i>
<i>torreō</i> ,	<i>torrēre</i> ,	<i>torruī</i> ,	<i>tostum</i> ,	<i>to parch.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF *mone-o*, I remind.

129.

ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>mone-ō</i> ,	<i>mone-a-m.</i>
IMPF.	<i>monē-ba-m</i> ,	<i>monē-re-m.</i>
FUT.	<i>monē-b-ō</i> ,	
PERF.	<i>mon-uī</i> ,	<i>mon-ue-ri-m.</i>
PLPF.	<i>mon-ue-ra-m</i> ,	<i>mon-u-is-se-m.</i>
F. PF.	<i>mon-ue-r-ō</i> .	

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

monē,
monē-to,

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monē-re.
PERF. mon-ui-sse.
FUT. mon-itūr-um, -am, um, esse.

PARTICIPLE. PRES. mone-n-s.

FUT. mon-itūr-us, -a, -um.

GERUND. mone-nd-i.

SUPINE. 1. mon-it-um.

2. mon-itū.

130.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. mone-o-r,

mone-a-r.

IMPF. monē-ba-r,

monē-re-r.

FUT. monē-bo-r,

PERF. mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-i-m.

PLPF. er-a-m,

es-se-m.

F. PF. er-ō.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

monē-re,

PRES. monē-rī.

monē-tor.

PERF. mon-it-um, -am, -um, -es-se.

FUT. mon-it-um irī.

F. PF. mon-it-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE. PERFECT. mon-it-us, -a, -um.

GERUNDIVE. mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

131.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT.	
<i>Buy.</i>		<i>Be buying, may buy.</i>	
SING.—1.	em-ō,	em-a-m,	
	2. em-i-s,	em-ā-s,	
	3. em-i-t,	em-a-t.	
PLUR.—1.	em-i-mus,	em-ā-mus,	
	2. em-i-tis,	em-ā-tis,	
	3. em-u-nt,	em-a-nt.	

		IMPERFECT.
<i>Was buying.</i>		<i>Were buying, might buy.</i>
SING.—1.	em-ē-ba-m,	em-e-re-m,
	2. em-ē-bā-s,	em-e-rē-s,
	3. em-ē-ba-t,	em-e-re-t.
PLUR.—1.	em-ē-bā-mus,	em-e-rē-mus,
	2. em-ē-bā-tis,	em-e-rē-tis,
	3. em-ē-ba-nt,	em-e-re-nt.

		FUTURE.
<i>Shall be buying, shall buy.</i>		
SING.—1.	em-a-m,	
	2. em-ē-s,	
	3. em-e-t.	
PLUR.—1.	em-ē-mus,	
	2. em-ē-tis,	
	3. em-e-nt.	

		IMPERATIVE.
SING.—1.	—,	
	2. em-e, <i>buy thou,</i>	em-i-tō, <i>thou shalt buy.</i>
	3.	em-i-tō, <i>he shall buy.</i>
PLUR.—1.	—,	
	2. em-i-te, <i>buy ye,</i>	em-i-tōte, <i>ye shall buy.</i>
	3.	em-u-ntō, <i>they shall buy.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.	N. em-e-n-s; G. em-e-nt-is, <i>buying.</i>
FUTURE.	em-tūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to buy</i>

132.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have bought, bought.**Have, may have, bought.*

- SING.—1. ēm-ī,
 2. ēm-i-stī,
 3. ēm-i-t,

- ēm-e-ri-m,
 ēm-e-ri-s,
 ēm-e-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. ēm-i-mus,
 2. ēm-i-stis,
 3. ēm-ē-ru-nt,

- ēm-e-ri-mus,
 ēm-e-ri-tis,
 ēm-e-ri-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had bought.**Had, might have, bought.*

- SING.—1. ēm-e-ra-m,
 2. ēm-e-rā-s,
 3. ēm-e-ra-t,

- ēm-i-sse-m,
 ēm-i-ssē-s,
 ēm-i-sse-t.

- PLUR.—1. ēm-e-rā-mus,
 2. ēm-e-rā-tis,
 3. ēm-e-ra-nt,

- ēm-i-ssē-mus,
 ēm-i-ssē-tis,
 ēm-i-sse-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have bought.

- SING.—1. ēm-e-r-ō,
 2. ēm-e-rī-s,
 3. ēm-e-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. ēm-e-rī-mus,
 2. ēm-e-rī-tis,
 3. ēm-e-ri-nt.

INFINITIVE.

- PRES. em-e-re, *to buy.*
 PERF. ēm-i-sse, *to have bought.*
 FUT. em-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to buy.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

- N. [em-e-re], *to buy, buying.*
 G. em-e-nd-ī, *of buying.*
 D. em-e-nd-ō, *to, for buying.*
 AC. [em-e-re] (ad) em-e-ndum, *to buy.* 1. em-tum, *to buy.*
 Abl. em-e-nd-ō, *by buying.* 2. em-tū, *to buy, in the buying.*

133.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am bought.**Be, may be, bought.*

- SING.—1. em-o-r,
2. em-e-ris,
3. em-i-tur,

- em-a-r,
em-ā-ris,
em-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-i-mur,
2. em-i-minī,
3. em-u-ntur,

- em-ā-mur,
em-ā-minī,
em-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was bought.**Were, might be, bought.*

- SING.—1. em-ē-ba-r,
2. em-ē-bā-ris,
3. em-ē-bā-tur,

- em-e-re-r,
em-e-rē-ris,
em-e-rē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-ē-bā-mur,
2. em-ē-bā-minī,
3. em-ē-ba-ntur,

- em-e-rē-mur,
em-e-rē-minī,
em-e-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall be bought.

- SING.—1. em-a-r,
2. em-ē-ris,
3. em-ē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. em-ē-mur,
2. em-ē-minī,
3. em-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—1.

2. em-ere, *be thou bought,* em-i-tor, *thou shalt be bought.*
3. em-i-tor, *he shall be bought.*

PLUR.—1.

2. em-i-minī, *be ye bought.*

3.

em-u-ntor, *they shall be bought.*

134.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have been, was bought.**Have, may have, been bought.*

SING.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

em-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,

2. es,

s-i-s,

3. es-t,

s-i-t.

PLUR.—1. em-t-ī, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,

em-t-ī, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,

2. es-tis,

s-i-tis,

3. s-u-nt,

s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had been bought.**Had, might have, been bought.*

SING.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,

em-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,

2. er-ā-s,

es-sē-s,

3. er-a-t,

es-se-t.

PLUR.—1. em-t-ī, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,

em-t-ī, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,

2. er-ā-tis,

es-sē-tis,

3. er-a-nt,

es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been bought.

SING.—1. em-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,

2. er-i-s,

3. er-i-t.

PLUR.—1. em-t-ī, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,

2. er-i-tis,

3. er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. em-ī,

*to be bought.*PERF. em-t-um, -am, -um, esse, *to have been bought.*

FUT. em-tum irī,

to be about to be bought.

P. F. em-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. em-t-us, -a, -um, *bought.*GERUNDIVE. em-e-nd-us, -a, -um, *to be bought.*

135.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in *i* follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

INDICATIVE.		ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT.		
<i>Hear.</i>		<i>Be hearing, may hear.</i>		
SING.—1.	audi-ō,	audi-a-m,		
2.	audi-s,	audi-ā-s,		
3.	audi-t,	audi-a-t.		
PLUR.—1.	audi-mus,	audi-ā-mus,		
2.	audi-tis,	audi-ā-tis,		
3.	audi-u-nt,	audi-a-nt.		
		IMPERFECT.		
<i>Was hearing.</i>		<i>Were hearing, might hear.</i>		
SING.—1.	audi-ē-ba-m,	audi-re-m,		
2.	audi-ē-bā-s,	audi-rē-s,		
3.	audi-ē-ba-t,	audi-re-t.		
PLUR.—1.	audi-ē-bā-mus,	audi-rē-mus,		
2.	audi-ē-bā-tis,	audi-rē-tis,		
3.	audi-ē-ba-nt,	audi-re-nt.		
		FUTURE.		
<i>Shall hear.</i>				
SING.—1.	audi-a-m,			
2.	audi-ēs,			
3.	audi-e-t.			
PLUR.—1.	audi-ē-mus,			
2.	audi-ētis,			
3.	audi-e-nt.			
		IMPERATIVE.		
SING.—1.	—,			
2.	audi, <i>hear thou,</i>	audi-tō,	<i>thou shalt hear.</i>	
3.		audi-tō,	<i>he shall hear.</i>	
PLUR.—1.	—,			
2.	audi-te, <i>hear ye,</i>	audi-tōte,	<i>ye shall hear.</i>	
3.		audi-u-ntō,	<i>they shall hear.</i>	
		PARTICIPLE.		
		PRESENT.	N. audi-e-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is, <i>hearing.</i>	
		FUTURE.	audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to hear.</i>	

136.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have heard, heard**Have, may have, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-vī,
2. audi-vi-stī,
3. audi-vi-t,

- audi-ve-ri-m,
audi-ve-ri-s,
audi-ve-ri-t.

- PLUR.—1. audi-vi-mus,
2. audi-vi-stis,
3. audi-vē-runt.

- audi-ve-ri-mus,
audi-ve-ri-tis,
audi-ve-rint.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had heard.**Had, might have, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-ve-ra-m,
2. audi-ve-rā-s,
3. audi-ve-ra-t,

- audi-vi-sse-m,
audi-vi-ssē-s,
audi-vi-sse-t,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ve-rā-mus,
2. audi-ve-rā-tis,
3. audi-ve-ra-nt.

- audi-vi-ssē-mus,
audi-vi-ssē-tis,
audi-vi-sse-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have heard.

- SING.—1. audi-ve-r-ō,
2. audi-ve-ri-s,
3. audi-ve-ri-t,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ve-ri-mus,
2. audi-ve-ri-tis,
3. audi-ve-ri-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audi-re, *to hear.*PERFECT. audi-vi-sse, *to have heard.*FUTURE. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, *to be about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [audi-re], *hearing, to hear.*G. audi-e-nd-ī, *of hearing.*D. audi-e-nd-ō, *to, for hearing.*Ac. [audi-re] (ad) audi-e-nd-um, *hear-**ing, to hear.* 1. audi-tum, *to hear.*Abl. audi-e-nd-ō, *by hearing.*2. audi-tū, *to hear, in the hearing.*

137.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am heard.**Be, may be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-o-r,
2. audi-ris,
3. audi-tur,

- audi-a-r,
audi-ā-ris,
audi-ā-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-mur,
2. audi-mini,
3. audi-u-ntur.

- audi-ā-mur,
audi-ā-mini,
audi-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was heard.**Were, might be, heard.*

- SING.—1. audi-ē-ba-r,
2. audi-ē-bā-ris,
3. audi-ē-bā-tur,

- audi-re-r,
audi-rē-ris,
audi-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-bā-mur,
2. audi-ē-bā-mini,
3. audi-ē-ba-ntur.

- audi-rē-mur,
audi-rē-mini,
audi-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall be heard.

- SING.—1. audi-a-r,
2. audi-ē-ris,
3. audi-ē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. audi-ē-mur,
2. audi-ē-mini,
3. audi-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

- SING.—1. —,

2. audi-re, *be thou heard,* audi-tor, *thou shalt be heard,*
3. audi-tor, *he shall be heard.*

- PLUR.—1. —,

2. audi-mini, *be ye heard.*

3. audi-u-ntor, *they shall be heard.*

138.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

*Have been heard, was heard.**Have, may have, been heard.*

SING.—1. audī-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,

2. es,

s-ī-s,

3. es-t,

s-i-t,

PLUR.—1. audī-t-ī, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,

audi-t-ī, -ae, -a, s-ī-mus,

2. es-tis,

s-ī-tis,

3. s-u-nt.

s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had been heard.**Had, might have, been heard.*

SING.—1. audī-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,

audi-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,

2. er-ā-s,

es-sē-s,

3. er-a-t,

es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. audī-t-ī, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,

audi-t-ī, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,

2. er-ā-tis,

es-sē-tis,

3. er-a-nt.

es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been heard.

SING.—1. audī-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,

2. er-i-s,

3. er-i-t,

PLUR.—1. audī-t-ī, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,

2. er-i-tis,

3. er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. audī-rī, *to be heard.*PERFECT. audī-t-um, -am, um, esse, *to have been heard.*FUTURE. audī-tum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

F. P. audī-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. audī-t-us, -a, -um, *heard.*GERUNDIVE. audī-e-nd-us, -a, -um, [*one*] *to be heard.*

APPENDIX TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

139. Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add *i* to the stem. This *i* is dropped when it would come before *ë* or *ï*, except before *et*; as, *cap-it*, *cap-eret*, but *capi-et*.

INDICATIVE.	ACTIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT.	
<i>Take.</i>		<i>Be taking.</i>
SING.—1. capi- <i>ō</i> ,		cap-i-a-m,
2. cap-i-s,		cap-i-ā-s,
3. cap-i-t,		cap-i-a-t,
PLUR.—1. cap-i-mus,		cap-i-ā-mus,
2. cap-i-tis,		cap-i-ā-tis,
3. capi-u-nt.		cap-i-a-nt.
	IMPERFECT.	
<i>Was taking.</i>		<i>Were taking.</i>
SING.—1. capi- <i>ē</i> -ba-m,		cap-e-re-m,
2. capi- <i>ē</i> -bā-s,		cap-e-rē-s,
3. capi- <i>ē</i> -ba-t,		cap-e-re-t,
PLUR.—1. capi- <i>ē</i> -bā-mus,		cap-e-rē-mus,
2. capi- <i>ē</i> -bā-tis,		cap-e-rē-tis,
3. capi- <i>ē</i> -ba-nt.		cap-e-re-nt.
	FUTURE.	
<i>Shall take.</i>		
SING.—1. capi-a-m,		
2. capi- <i>ēs</i> ,		
3. capi-e-t,		
PLUR.—1. capi- <i>ēs</i> -mus,		
2. capi- <i>ēs</i> -tis,		
3. capi-e-nt.		
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
SING.—2. cap-e, <i>take thou,</i>		PRES. cap-e-re,
cap-i-tō,		<i>to take.</i>
3. cap-i-tō,		
		PARTICIPLE.
PLUR.—2. cap-i-te, <i>take ye,</i>		PRES. capi-e-n-s,
cap-i-tōte,		<i>taking.</i>
3. capi-u-ntō.		
		GERUND.
		G. capi-e-nd-ī,
		<i>of taking.</i>

140.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Am taken.**Be, may be, taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-o-r,
 2. cap-e-ris,
 3. cap-i-tur,
 PLUR.—1. cap-i-mur,
 2. cap-i-mini,
 3. capi-u-ntur.

- capi-a-r,
 capi-ā-ris,
 capi-ā-tur,
 capi-ā-mur,
 capi-ā-mini,
 capi-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was taken.**Were, might be, taken.*

- SING.—1. capi-ē-ba-r,
 2. capi-ē-bā-ris,
 3. capi-ē-bā-tur,
 PLUR.—1. capi-ē-bā-mur,
 2. capi-ē-bā-mini,
 3. capi-ē-ba-ntur.

- cap-e-re-r,
 cap-e-rē-ris,
 cap-e-rē-tur,
 cap-e-rē-mur,
 cap-e-rē-mini,
 cap-e-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall be taken.

- SING.—1. capi-a-r,
 2. capi-ē-ris,
 3. capi-ē-tur,
 PLUR.—1. capi-ē-mur,
 2. capi-ē-mini,
 3. capi-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

- SING.—2. cap-e-re,
be thou taken,
 capi-tor,
thou shalt be taken,
 3. capi-tor,
he shall be taken,

- PRES. cap-i,
to be taken.

- PLUR.—2. cap-i-mini,
be ye taken, ye shall be taken,
 3. capi-untor,
they shall be taken.

- GERUNDIVE.
 capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um,
[one] to be taken.

141. DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Exhort.**Be exhorting, may exhort.*

- SING.—1. hort-o-r,
2. hortā-ris,
3. hortā-tur,

- horte-r,
hortē-ris,
hortē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. hortā-mur,
2. hortā-mini,
3. hortā-ntur.

- hortē-mur,
hortē-mini,
hortē-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was exhorting.**Were exhorting, might exhort.*

- SING.—1. hortā-ba-r,
2. hortā-bā-ris,
3. hortā-bā-tur,

- hortā-re-r,
hortā-rē-ris,
hortā-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. hortā-bā-mur,
2. hortā-bā-mini,
3. hortā-ba-ntur.

- hortā-rē-mur,
hortā-rē-mini,
hortā-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall exhort.

- SING.—1. hortā-bo-r,
2. hortā-be-ris,
3. hortā-bi-tur,

- PLUR.—1. hortā-bi-mur,
2. hortā-bi-mini,
3. hortā-bu-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. hortā-re,
exhort thou,
hortā-tor,
thou shalt exhort,
3. hortā-tor,
he shall exhort,

- PART. PRES. hortā-n-s,
exhorting,
FUT. hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um,
about to exhort.
INF. FUT. hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,
to be about to exhort.

- PLUR.—2. hortā-mini,
exhort ye, ye shall exhort,
3. hortā-ntor,
they shall exhort.

PASSIVE IN MEANING.

- GERUNDIVE, hortā-nd-us, -a, -um,
[one] to be exhorted.

142. DEPONENT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

Have exhorted, exhorted.

Have, may have, exhorted.

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,

hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,

2. es,

s-i-s,

3. es-t,

s-i-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, s-u-mus,

hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,

2. es-tis,

s-i-tis,

3. s-u-nt.

s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

Had exhorted.

Had, might have, exhorted.

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,

hortā-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,

2. er-ā-s,

es-sē-s,

3. er-a-t,

es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, er-ā-mus,

hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,

2. er-ā-tis,

es-sē-tis,

3. er-a-nt.

es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have exhorted.

SING.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,

2. er-i-s,

3. er-i-t,

PLUR.—1. hortā-t-i, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,

2. er-i-tis,

3. er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. hortā-rī,
to exhort.

PERFECT. hortātus, -a, -um,
having exhorted.

PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,
to have exhorted.

F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

SUPINE. 1. hortā-tum,
to exhort, for exhorting.

2. hortā-tū,
to exhort, in the exhorting

GERUND. [hortā-rī],
to exhort, exhorting.

G. horta-nd-i,
of exhorting.

143. DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Fear.**Be fearing, may fear.*

- SING.—1. vere-o-r,
 2. verē-ris,
 3. verē-tur,

- vere-a-r,
 vere-ā-ris,
 vere-ā-tur,

- PLUR.—1. verē-mur,
 2. verē-minī,
 3. vere-ntur.

- vere-ā-mur,
 vere-ā-minī,
 vere-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was fearing.**Were fearing, might fear.*

- SING.—1. verē-ba-r,
 2. verē-bā-ris,
 3. verē-bā-tur,

- verē-re-r,
 verē-rē-ris,
 verē-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. verē-bā-mur,
 2. verē-bā-minī,
 3. verē-ba-ntur.

- verē-rē-mur,
 verē-rē-minī,
 verē-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall fear.

- SING.—1. verē-bo-r,
 2. verē-be-ris,
 3. verē-bi-tur,

- PLUR.—1. verē-bi-mur,
 2. verē-bi-minī,
 3. verē-bu-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. verē-re,
fear thou,
 verē-tor,
thou shalt fear,
 3. verē-tor,
he shall fear,

- PART. PRES. vere n-s,
fearing,
 FUT. ver-i-tūr-us, -a, -um,
about to fear.
 INF. FUT. ver-i-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse
to be about to fear.

- PLUR.—2. verē-minī,
fear ye, ye shall fear,
 3. vere-ntor,
they shall fear.

- PASSIVE IN MEANING.
 GERUNDIVE, vere-nd-us, -a, -um,
[one] to be feared.

144. DEPONENT OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

Have feared, feared.

Have, may have, feared.

SING.—1.	ver-i-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	ver-i-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
2.		es,		s-ī-s,
3.		es-t,		s-i-t,
PLUR.—1.	ver-i-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	ver-i-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt.		s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

Had feared.

Had, might have, feared.

SING.—1.	ver-i-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	ver-i-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,		es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,		es-se-t,
PLUR.—1.	ver-i-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	ver-i-t-ī, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt.		es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have feared.

SING.—1.	ver-i-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-is,
3.		er-it,
PLUR.—1.	ver-i-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	verē-rī,	PERFECT.	ver-i-tus, -a, um.
	<i>to fear.</i>		
PERF.	ver-i-t-um, -am, -um, esse,		
	<i>to have feared.</i>		
F. P.	ver-i-tum fore.		

SUPINE. 1.	ver-i-tum,	2.	ver-i-tū,
	<i>to fear, for fearing.</i>		<i>to fear, in fearing.</i>
GERUND.	[verē-rī],	G.	vere-nd-ī,
	<i>to fear, fearing.</i>		<i>of fearing.</i>

145. DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Speak.**Be speaking, may speak.*

- SING.—1. loqu-o-r,
2. loqu-e-ris,
3. loqu-i-tur,

- loqu-a-r,
loqu-ā-ris,
loqu-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-i-mur,
2. loqu-i-mini,
3. loqu-u-ntur,

- loqu-ā-mur,
loqu-ā-mini,
loqu-a-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was speaking.**Were speaking, might speak.*

- SING.—1. loqu-ē-ba-r,
2. loqu-ē-bā-ris,
3. loqu-ē-bā-tur,

- loqu-e-re-r,
loqu-e-rē-ris,
loqu-e-rē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-ē-bā-mur,
2. loqu-ē-bā-mini,
3. loqu-ē-ba-ntur,

- loqu-e-rē-mur,
loqu-e-rē-mini,
loqu-e-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall speak.

- SING.—1. loqu-a-r,
2. loqu-ē-ris,
3. loqu-ē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. loqu-ē-mur,
2. loqu-ē-mini,
3. loqu-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

- SING.—2. loqu-e-re,
speak thou,
loqu-i-tor,
thou shalt speak,
3. loqu-i-tor,
he shall speak.

- PLUR.—2. loqu-i-mini,
speak ye.
3. loqu-u-ntor,
they shall speak.

ACTIVE FORMS.

- PART. PRES. loqu-e-n-s,
speaking.
FUT. locū-tūr-us, -a, -um,
about to speak.
INF. FUT. locū-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,
to be about to speak.

PASSIVE IN MEANING.

- GERUNDIVE, loqu-e-ndus, -a, -um,
to be spoken.

146. DEPONENT OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

	<i>Have spoken, spoke.</i>		<i>Have, may have, spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	locū-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2.		es,	s-i-s,
3.		es-t,	s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	locū-t-ī, -ae, -a, s-i-mus,
2.		es-tis,	s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,	s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Had spoken.</i>		<i>Had, might have, spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	locū-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,	es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,	es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	locū-t-ī, -ae, -a, es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,	es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt.	es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>Shall have spoken.</i>
SING.—1.	locū-t-us, -a, -um, er-ō,
2.	er-i-s,
3.	er-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	locū-t-ī, -ae, -a, er-i-mus,
2.	er-i-tis,
3.	er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. loqu-ī, <i>to speak.</i>	PERF. locū-tus, -a, -um, <i>having spoken.</i>
PERF. locū-t-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have spoken.</i>	
F. PF. locū-t-um, -am, -um, fore.	
SUPLINE. 1. locū-tum, <i>to speak, for speaking.</i>	2. locū-tū, <i>to speak, in speaking.</i>
GERUND. [loqu-ī], <i>to speak, speaking.</i>	G. loqu-e-nd-ī, <i>of speaking.</i>

147. DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*Lie.**Be lying, may lie.*

- SING.—1. menti-o-r,
2. menti-ris,
3. menti-tur,

- menti-a-r,
menti-ā-ris,
menti-ā-tur.

- PLUR.—1. menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,
3. menti-u-ntur,

- menti-ā-mur,
menti-ā-mini,
menti-ā-ntur.

IMPERFECT.

*Was lying.**Were lying, might lie.*

- SING.—1. menti-ē-ba-r,
2. menti-ē-bā-ris,
3. menti-ē-bā-tur.

- menti-re-r,
menti-rē-ris,
menti-rē-tur,

- PLUR.—1. menti-ē-bā-mur,
2. menti-ē-bā-mini,
3. menti-ē-ba-ntur.

- menti-rē-mur,
menti-rē-mini,
menti-re-ntur.

FUTURE.

Shall lie.

- SING.—1. menti-a-r,
2. menti-ē-ris,
3. menti-ē-tur.

- PLUR.—1. menti-ē-mur,
2. menti-ē-mini,
3. menti-e-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE FORMS.

- SING.—2. menti-re,
lie thou,
menti-tor,
thou shalt lie,
3. menti-tor,
he shall lie.

- PART. PRES. menti-e-n-s,
lying.
PERF. menti-tūr-us, -a, -um,
about to lie.
INF. FUT. menti-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse,
to be about to lie.

- PLUR.—2. menti-mini,
lie ye,
3. menti-u-ntor,
they shall lie.

PASSIVE IN MEANING.

GERUNDIVE, menti-c-nd-us, -a, -um.

148. DEPONENT OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

Have lied, lied.

Have, may have, lied.

SING.—1.	mentī-t-us, -a, -um,	s-u-m,	mentī-t-us, -a, -um,	s-i-m,
2.		es,		s-ī-s,
3.		es-t,		s-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	mentī-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-u-mus,	mentī-t-ī, -ae, -a,	s-ī-mus,
2.		es-tis,		s-i-tis,
3.		s-u-nt,		s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

Had lied.

Had, might have, lied.

SING.—1.	mentī-t-us, -a, -um,	er-a-m,	mentī-t-us, -a, -um,	es-se-m,
2.		er-ā-s,		es-sē-s,
3.		er-a-t,		es-se-t.
PLUR.—1.	mentī-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-ā-mus,	mentī-t-ī, -ae, -a,	es-sē-mus,
2.		er-ā-tis,		es-sē-tis,
3.		er-a-nt,		es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have lied.

SING.—1.	mentī-t-us, -a, -um,	er-ō,
2.		er-i-s,
3.		er-i-t.
PLUR.—1.	mentī-t-ī, -ae, -a,	er-i-mus,
2.		er-i-tis,
3.		er-u-nt.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	mentī-rī, <i>to lie.</i>	PERFECT.	mentī-t-us, -a, -um, <i>having lied.</i>
PERF.	mentī-t-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have lied.</i>		
F. P.	mentī-t-um, -am, -um, fore.		
SUPINE.	1. mentī-tum, <i>to lie, for lying,</i>	2. mentī-tū, <i>to lie, in lying.</i>	
GERUND.	[mentī-rī], <i>to lie, lying.</i>	G.	mentī-e-nd-ī, <i>of lying,</i>

149. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	amātūr-us, -a, -um, sum, <i>Am about to love.</i>	amātūr-us, -a, -um, sim, <i>Be about to love.</i>
IMPERF.	amātūrus eram, <i>Was about to love.</i>	amātūrus essem, <i>Were about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō, <i>Shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	amātūrus fui, <i>Have been, was, about to love.</i>	amātūrus fuerim, <i>Have, may have, been about to love.</i>
PLUPERF.	amātūrus fueram, <i>Had been about to love.</i>	amātūrus fuisset, <i>Had, might have, been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	amātūrus fuerō.	
INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	amātūr-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>
	PERFECT.	amātūr-um fuisse, <i>to have been about to love.</i>

150.

PASSIVE.

PRES.	amand-us, -a, -um, sum, <i>Have to be loved.</i>	amand-us, -a, -um, sim, <i>Have to be loved.</i>
IMPERF.	amandus eram, <i>Had to be loved.</i>	amandus essem, forem, <i>Had to be loved.</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>Shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>Have had to be loved.</i>	amandus fuerim, <i>Have had to be loved.</i>
PLUPERF.	amandus fueram, <i>Had had to be loved.</i>	amandus fuisset, <i>Should have had to be loved.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	amand-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have to be loved.</i>
	PERFECT.	amand-um fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved.</i>

151. ABBREVIATIONS OCCURRING IN CERTAIN FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, *-ivī*, drop the **V** before **S** or **R**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in *-ivī*, which admit the contraction only before **S**.

		PERFECT.		
SING.—1.	—	—	—	—
	2. amāvistī, amāstī.	dēlēvistī, dēlēstī.		audivistī, audīstī.
	3. —	—	—	—
PLUR.—1.	—	—	—	—
	2. amāvistis, amāstis.	dēlēvistis, dēlēstis.		audivistis, audīstis.
	3. amāvērunt, amārunt.	dēlēvērunt, dēlērunt.		audīvērunt, audīerunt.
SUBJ.	amāverim, amārim.	dēlēverim, dēlērim.		audiverim, audierim.
PLUPERFECT.				
IND.	amāveram, amāram.	dēlēveram, dēlēram.		audiveram, audieram.
SUBJ.	amāvissem, amāssem.	dēlēvissem, dēlēessem.		audivissem, audīssem.
FUTURE PERFECT.				
	amāvero, amāro.	dēlēvero, dēlēro.		audīvero, audiero.
INFINITIVE PERFECT.				
	amāvisse, amāsse.	dēlēvisse, dēlēesse.		audīvisse, audīsse.

In like manner, *nōvī*, *I know*, and *mōvī*, *I have moved*, are, in their compounds especially, contracted :

SING.—2. *nōstī*. PLUR.—2. *nōstis*, 3. *nōrunt*. SUBJ. *nōrim*.

PLUPERFECT. *nōram*. SUBJ. *nōssem*. INF. *nōsse*. But the Future is *nōvero*, uncontracted.

REMARK.—In *petere*, *to fall upon*, *dēsīnere*, *to give over*, and in the compounds of *ire*, *to go*, the **V** of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 3 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues, as :

petivī, *petiī*; *petivit*, *petiit*. So *dēsivī*, *dēsīi*; *dēsīvit*, *dēsīit*, etc.
And *rediī*, *redīit*, from *redīre*, *to go back*.

2. In 3 Pl. Perf. Act. instead of the ending *-ērunt*, *-ēre* is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above : *amāvēre*, *they have loved*; *dēlēvēre*, *they have destroyed*; *ēmēre*, *they have bought*; *audīvēre*, *they have heard*. But *amāre*, for *amārunt*, is not admissible.

3. Instead of *-ris* in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often *-re* :

amābāre, *thou wast loved*; *amārēre*, *thou mightest be loved*; *amābere*, *thou wilt be loved*. This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of *dīcere*, *to say*, *dūcere*, *to lead*, *facere*, *to make*, and *ferre*, *to bear*, are *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of *facio*, which change **a** into **i**, as : *perfice*, *achieve thou*. (188 R.)

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of *-endī*, *-endus*, may, especially after **i**, end in *-undī* and *-undus*, as :

faciundus, *to be done*; *gerundus*, *to be carried*.

152.

THE STEM.

I. IN THE PRESENT.

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

Hence verbs are classified according to the relation of the Present Stem to the Verb Stem.

I. *Stem class*: To this class belong those verbs whose present stem is the same as the verb stem.

Such are the verbs of the vowel conjugations; and in the Third Conjugation such verbs as *leg-o, I read, ed-o, I eat, em-o, I buy*.

II. *The Protracted or Intensified class*: In this class the vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened in the Present Stem:

dūc-o, I lead, stem dūc-; dīc-o, I say, stem dīc.

REMARK.—This change arises from a diphthongal strengthening of the stem: *duc-o, deic-o*; but the class is treated as a stem-class in formation.

III. *The Nasal class*: In this class the stem is strengthened by *n*.

A. In vowel-stems: *si-, sino, I let; li-, lino, I besmear*.

B. After the characteristic *r* or *m*: *cer-, cerno, I sift, separate; tem-, temno, I scorn*.

C. Before the characteristic mute: *vic-, vinco, I conquer; frag-, frango, I break; fud-, fundo, I pour*.

Before a **P**-mute **N** becomes **M**: *rup-, rumpo, I rend; cub-, cumbo, I lie down*.

IV. *The T class*: *flec-, flecto, I bend*.

V. *The Inchoative class*: The stem strengthened by *sc* or *isc*: *sc* after vowel stems, *isc* after consonant stems.

1. <i>ira-, irascor,</i> <i>I am in a rage.</i>	<i>cre-, crē-sco,</i> <i>I grow.</i>	<i>dormi-, obdormī-sco,</i> <i>I fall asleep.</i>
2. <i>ap-, ap-iscor,</i> <i>I reach.</i>	<i>fac-, profic-iscor,</i> <i>I set out.</i>	<i>nac-, nanc-iscor,</i> <i>I get.</i>

VI. *Reduplicated class*: Reduplication in the Present stem:

gen-, gi-gno, I beget, (for GI-GEN-O); sta-, si-sto, si-st-ere, to set, stand
Compare *stāre, to stand*.

VII. *U-class*: **U** suffixed to the stem:

ting-, tingu-o, I soak,

VIII. *I-class*: **I** suffixed to the stem:

cap-, capi-o, I take.

IX. *Geminated class*:

The Liquids **l** and **r** may be doubled: *pel-, pello, I drive; cur-, curro, I run.*

So **t** is doubled in *mit-, mitto, I send.*

REMARK.—This small class is probably a subdivision of the 8th class (*I-class*); *pello*, for *peljo, pelio*; *curro*, for *curjo, curio*.

X. Change of Conjugation:

Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

vid-, vide-o, I see, vidē-re.

ven-, veni-o, I come, venī-re.

153.

II. IN THE PERFECT.

The Perfect is formed from the pure stem.

EXCEPTIONS: see change of conjugation. (156, 176).

1. The vowel-stems take **-vī**: *amā-vī, I have loved; delē-vī, I have destroyed; audī-vī, I have heard.*

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change **-vī** into **-uī**. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems with *short* stem-syllable take **ī** in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and **ā** is changed into **ē**.

<i>lego, I read,</i>	<i>vid-ēo, I see,</i>	<i>fod-īo, I dig,</i>	<i>fug-īo, I flee,</i>	<i>ag-o, I do,</i>
<i>lēg-ī.</i>	<i>vīd-ī.</i>	<i>fōd-ī.</i>	<i>fūg-ī.</i>	<i>ēgī.</i>

3. Consonant-stems with *long* stem-syllables take **sī** in the Perfect:

<i>rēp-o, I creep,</i>	<i>rēp-sī.</i>	<i>scribo, I write,</i>	<i>scrip-sī</i>	<i>dic-o, I say,</i>	<i>dixī = dic-sī.</i>
<i>aug-ēo, I increase,</i>	<i>auxī = aug-sī.</i>			<i>rād-o, I scrape,</i>	<i>rā-sī = rad-sī.</i>

Even when the stem-syllable is *long by position* only:

carp-o, I pluck, carp-sī.

ping-o, I paint, pinxī = ping-sī.

EXCEPTIONS.—Exceptions are stems in **-nd**, which take **ī** in the Perfect: *dēfend-o, I strike (ward) off, dēfend-ī*; perhaps because the stems in **-nd** formed originally a *reduplicated perfect*:

mand-o, I chew, man(di)dī; so *(fe)fendī, I have struck.*

4. The stems in **u** have **i** in the Perfect: **acu-o**, *I sharpen*, **acu-i**.

5. Sundry verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, *i. e.*, repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it:

pend-o, *I weigh*, **pe-pend-i**. **posc-o**, *I demand*, **po-posc-i**, **curr-o**, *I run*, **cu-curr-i**.

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, **e** is always found in the syllable of reduplication:

cad-o, *I fall*, **ce-cid-i**.

parc-o, *I spare*, **pe-perc-i**.

caed-o, *I fell*, **ce-cid-i**.

pel-lo, *I push*, **pe-pul-i**.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **-i**. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change **a** into **i**, **ae** into **i**, **a** before two consonants into **e**, and **e** and **o** into **u** before **l**.

REMARK.—In compounds with monosyllabic prepositions reduplication is generally dropped except in **disco**, *I learn*, **dō**, *I give*, **posco**, *I demand*, **stō**, *I stand*. The compounds of **curro**, *I run*, sometimes retain it, **excucurri**. With dissyllabic prepositions the reduplication is commonly retained.

III. THE SUPINE.

154. I. The Supine is formed from the *pure stem*.

1. Vowel-stems and stems in **U** take **-tum** in the Supine:

am-o, *I love*, **amā-tum**.

audi-o, *I hear*, **audī-tum**.

dēle-o, *I destroy*, **dēlē-tum**.

tribu-o, *I allot*, **tribū-tum**.

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before **-tum**, and insert the connecting-vowel **i**: **mone-o**, *I remind*, **moni-tum**. Some have no connecting-vowel. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems in a **P-** or **K-**mute take **-tum** in the Supine:

cap-io, *I take*, **cap-tum**.

fac-io, *I do*, **fac-tum**.

rēp-o, *I creep*, **rep-tum**.

dīc-o, *I say*, **dic-tum**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Among the **P-**stems, only **lābor**, *I slip*, **lap-sus**.

2. Among the **K-**stems, the Supine in **-sum** occurs:

A. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by **t**:

flect-o, *I bend*, **flexum**.

pect-o, *I comb*, **plexum**.

plect-o, *I plait*, **plexum**.

nect-o, *I knot, bind*, **nexum**.

B. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid: **merg-o**, *I dip*, **mer-sum**; **terg-o**, *I wipe*, **ter-sum**; **parc-o**, *I spare*, **par-sum**; **sparg-o**, *I sow, scatter*, **spar-sum**; **mulce-o**, *I stroke*, **mul-sum**.

C. In some the ending **-sum** prevents confusion with other words: **figo**, *I shape*, makes **fic-tum**; but **figo**, *I fasten*, **fix-um**. So **mul-sum**, from **mulce-o**, *I stroke*, distinguishes it from **multum**, *much*.

REMARK.—The **K**-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between **l-s**, **l-t**, **r-s**, **r-t**: **fulc-io**, *I prop*, **ful(c)-sī**, **ful(c)-tum**; **torqu-eo**, *I twist*, **tor(qu)-sī**, **tor(qu)-tum**. (See 160.)

3. Consonant-stems in a **T**-mute take **-sum** in the Supine:

ed-o, *I eat*, **ē-sum** (for **ed-sum**); **lūd-o**, *I play*, **lū-sum**; **dēfend-o**, *I ward off*, **dēfensum**.

4. Liquid-stems have partly **-tum**, partly **-sum**. Stems in **m** and **n** take **-tum**; stems in **l** and **r** take **-sum**:

em-o, *I buy*, **em-tum**; **veni-o**, *I come*, **ven-tum**; **can-o**, *I sing*, **can-tum**.
ver-sum, from **ver-ro**, *I sweep*; **fal-sum**, from **fall-o**, *I cheat*; **vul-sum**, from **vell-c**, *I pluck*.

EXCEPTIONS.—A. Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have **-tum**, with or without connecting-vowels: **al-o**, *I nourish*, **al-i-tum** or **al-tum**.

B. To be distinguished from other forms: **par-tum**, from **pari-o**, *I bring forth*; but **par-sum**, from **parc-ere**, *to spare*: **sal-tum**, from **sali-o**, *I leap*; but **sal-sum**, from **sali-o**, *I salt*.

C. **Man-sum**, from **mane-o**, *I remain*.

II. The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem.

Juvātūrus, *about to help*, from **juvāre**; **secātūrus**, from **secāre**, *to cut*; **sonātūrus**, from **sonāre**, *to sound*; **lavātūrus**, from **lavāre**, *to wash*; but **adjūtūrus**, from **adjuvāre**, *to help*; **moritūrus**, from **morior**, *I die*; **oritūrus**, from **orior**, *I rise*; **paritūrus**, from **pario**, *I bring forth*; **agnōtūrus**, from **agnōsco**, *I recognize*; **nāscitūrus**, from **nāscor**, *I am born*.

In some **U**-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel **I**: **arguitūrus**, from **arguo**, *I accuse*; **abnuitūrus**, from **abnuo**, *I refuse*; **luitūrus**, from **lu-o**, *I wash off*, **ruitūrus**, from **ruo**, *I rush*; **fruitūrus**, from **fruo**, *I enjoy*.

155.

EUPHONIC LAWS

IN THE CONVERSION OF THE CONSONANT-CHARACTERISTIC.

Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**:

scrib-o, *I write*, **scrip-sī**, **scrip-tum**.

Characteristic **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**:

leg-o, *I read*, **lec-tum**; **coqu-o**, *I bake*, **coc-tum**.

Characteristic **c**, **g**, and **qu** with **s** become **x**:

dīc-o, *I say*, **dixī** (= **dīc-sī**).

jung-o, *I join*, **junxī** (= **jung-sī**).

coqu-o, *I cook*, coxī (= coqu-sī).

stingu-o, *I poke (out)*, stinxī.

Characteristic *t* and *d* before *s* are dropped, or become by assimilation *ss* :

ed-o, *I eat*, ē-sum (= ed-sum); cēd-o, *I give way*, cēs-sī (= ced-sī).

mitt-o, *I send*, mī-sī (= mit-sī), mis-sum (= mit-sum).

156.

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (*e, i, a*), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present, is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur :

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.

auge-o,	augē-re,	aux-ī,	auc-tum,	<i>to increase.</i>
sentī-o,	sentī-re,	sen-sī,	sen-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>
sēpi-o,	sēpi-re,	sēp-sī,	sēp-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
veni-o,	venī-re,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>
vide-o,	vidē-re,	vid-ī,	vī-sum,	<i>to see.</i>
vinci-o,	vinci-re,	vinx-ī,	vinc-tum,	<i>to bind.</i>

REMARK.—As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the list below.

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.

crē-sc-c	crē-sc-ere,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	<i>to grow.</i>
li-n-c,	lin-ere,	li-vī (lē-vī),	li-tum,	<i>to besmear.</i>

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.

frem-o,	frem-ere,	frem-uī,	frem-i-tum,	<i>to growl.</i>
pet-o,	pet-ere,	pet-ivī,	pet-itum,	<i>to fall upon.</i>

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.

crep-o, I.	crepā-re, I.	crep-uī, II.	crep-itum, II.,	<i>to crackle.</i>
aperī-o, IV.	aperī-re, IV.	aper-uī, II.	aper-tum,	<i>to uncover.</i>

5. *dare*, *to give*, and *stāre*, *to stand*, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

REMARK.—Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in 176-180.

STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.

157. PERFECT.—1. After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -ī.

capi-o (cap-),	cap-ere,	cēp-ī,	cap-tum,	<i>to take.</i>
ac-cipi-o,	ac-cip-ere,	ac-cēp-ī,	ac-cep-tum,	<i>to receive.</i>
rump-o (rup-),	rump-ere,	rūp-ī,	rup-tum,	<i>to break.</i>

158. 2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sī.

carp-o,	carp-ere,	carp-sī,	carp-tum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
dē-cerp-o,	dē-cerp-ere,	dē-cerp-sī,	dē-cerp-tum,	<i>to pluck off.</i>
nūb-o,	nūb-ere,	nūp-sī,	nup-tum,	<i>to put on a veil (as a bride).</i>
rēp-o,	rēp-ere,	rēp-sī,	rep-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>
scalp-o,	scalp-ere,	scalp-sī,	scalp-tum,	<i>to scrape.</i>
scrib-o,	scrib-ere,	scrip-sī,	scrip-tum,	<i>to write.</i>
sculp-o,	sculp-ere,	sculp-sī,	sculp-tum,	<i>to chisel.</i>
serp-o,	serp-ere,	serp-sī,	serp-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

sēpi-o (saepi-o),	sēpī-re,	sēp-sī,	sēp-tum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
sorbe-o,	sorbē-re,	(sorp-sī) sorbuī,		<i>to sup up.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

clep-o,	clep-ere,	clep-sī (clēp-ī),	clep-tum,	<i>to flch.</i>
lamb-o,	lamb-ere,	lamb-ī,	(lamb-i-tum),	<i>to lick.</i>

STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.

159. PERFECT.—After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -ī.

a. Pure stem.

ag-o,	ag-ere,	ēg-ī,	ac-tum,	<i>to do, drive.</i>
cō-g-o,	cō-g-ere,	co-ēg-ī,	co-ac-tum,	<i>to compel.</i>
dē-g-o,	dē-g-ere,	—	—	<i>to pass (time).</i>
red-ig-o,	red-ig-ere,	red-ēg-ī,	red-ac-tum,	<i>to bring back.</i>
faci-o,	fac-ere,	fēc-ī,	factum,	<i>to make.</i>
cale-faci-o (calf),	cale-fac-ere	cale-fēc-ī,	cale-fac-tum,	<i>to make warm.</i>
per-fici-o,	per-fic-ere,	per-fēc-ī,	per-fec-tum,	<i>to achieve.</i>
fugi-o,	fug-ere,	fūg-ī,	fug-i-tum,	<i>to flee.</i>
jaci-o,	jac-ere,	jēc-ī,	jac-tum,	<i>to cast.</i>
con-jici-o,	con-jic-ere,	con-jēc-ī,	con-jec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>
leg-o,	leg-ere,	lēg-ī,	lec-tum,	<i>to pick up, read.</i>
col-lig-o,	col-lig-ere,	col-lēg-ī,	col-lec-tum,	<i>to gather.</i>

So the other compounds, except dī-lig-o, intel-lig-o, neg-lig-o, see 161.

b. Stem strengthened by **N**.

frang-o,	frang-ere, frēg-ī,	frac-tum,	<i>to break.</i>
per-fring-o,	per-fring-ere, per-frēg-ī,	per-frac-tum,	<i>to shiver.</i>
linqu-o,	linqu-ere, liqu-ī,		<i>to leave.</i>
re-liqu-o,	re-liqu-ere, re-liqu-ī,	re-lic-tum,	<i>to leave behind.</i>
(pang-o),	(pang-ere), (pēg-ī),	(pac-tum),	comp. 2 b and 3, <i>to drive in.</i>
com-ping-o,	com-ping-ere, com-pēg-ī,	com-pac-tum,	<i>to drive tight.</i>
vinc-o (VIC),	vinc-ere, vic-ī,	vic-tum,	<i>to conquer.</i>

160.

2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -sī.

a. Pure stem.

dīc-o,	dīc-ere, dīxī (dīc-sī),	dīc-tum,	<i>to say.</i>
dūc-o,	dūc-ere, dūxī,	dūc-tum,	<i>to lead.</i>
fīg-o,	fīg-ere, fixī,*	fixum,*	<i>to fasten.</i>
-flig-o (con-, af-, in-),	-flig-ere, -fixī,	-flīc-tum,	<i>to strike.</i>
frīg-o,	frīg-ere, frīxī,	frīc-tum,	<i>to parch.</i>
sūg-o,	sūg-ere, sūxī,	suc-tum,	<i>to suck.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

auge-o,	aug-ēre, auxī,	auc-tum,	<i>to cause to wax.</i>
frige-o,	frīg-ēre, (frīxī),	—	<i>to be chilled.</i>
lūce-o,	lūcē-re, lūxī,	—	<i>to give light.</i>
lūge-o,	lūgē-re, lūxī,	—	<i>to be in mourning.</i>

b. Stem strengthened by **N**, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by Position.

Supine without **N**.

fig-o,	fig-ere, finxī,	fic-tum,	<i>to form.</i>
ping-o,	ping-ere, pinxī,	pic-tum,	<i>to paint.</i>
string-o,	string-ere, strinxī,	strīc-tum,	<i>to draw tight.</i>

Supine with **N**.

ang-o,	ang-ere, anxī,	—	<i>to throttle, vex.</i>
cing-o,	cing-ere, cinxī,	cīnc-tum,	<i>to gird.</i>
ē-mung-o,	ē-mung-ere, ē-munxī,	ē-munc-tum,	<i>to wipe the nose.</i>
jung-o,	jung-ere, junxī,	junc-tum,	<i>to yoke, join.</i>
ling-o,	ling-ere, linxī,	līnc-tum,	<i>to lick.</i>
ning-o,	ning-ere, ninxī,	—	<i>to snow.</i>
pang-o,	pang-ere, panxī,	panc-tum,	<i>to drive in.</i>
plang-o,	plang-ere, planxī,	planc-tum,	<i>to smite.</i>
-stingu-o (ex-, dis-, re-),	-stingu-ere, -stinxī,	-stīnc-tum,	<i>to (stick) put out.</i>
ting-o (tingu-o),	ting(u)-ere, tinxī,	tīnc-tum,	<i>to wet, dye.</i>
ung-o (ungu-o),	ung(u)-ere, unxī,	unc-tum,	<i>to anoint.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

sanci-o,	sancī-re, sanxī,	sanc-tum and sancitum,	<i>to hallow.</i>
vinci-o,	vīncī-re, vīnxī,	vīnc-tum,	<i>to bind.</i>

* The exceptions mentioned, 154, are marked with *.

c. Stem strengthened by **T**, Supine in **-sum**.

flect-o,	flect-ere,	flexī,	flexum,*	to bend.
nect-o,	nect-ere,	nexī (nexuī),	nexum,*	to knot.
pect-o,	pect-ere,	pexī,	pexum,*	to comb.
plect-o,	plect-ere,	(plexī),	plexum,*	to plait.

d. The **K**-mute dropped after **L** or **R**, and before **S** or **T**.

merg-o,	merg-ere,	mer-sī,	mer-sum,*	to dip in.
sparg-o,	sparg-ere,	spar-sī,	spar-sum,*	to strew.
con-sperg-o,	con-sperg-ere,	con-sper-sī,	con-sper-sum.	to besprinkle.
terg-o (e-o),	terg-ere (ē-re),	ter-sī,	ter-sum,*	to wipe.

With change of Conjugation.

alge-o,	algē-re,	al-sī,	—	to freeze.
farcī-o (-fercī-o),	farcī-re,	far-sī,	far-tum (-sum),	to stuff.
fulcī-o,	fulcī-re,	ful-sī,	ful-tum,	to prop.
fulge-o,	fulgē-re,	ful-sī,	—	to glow.
indulge-o,	indulgē-re,	indul-sī,	(indul-tum),	to give way.
mulce-o,	mulcē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum,*	to stroke.
mulge-o,	mulgē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum (ctum),*	to milk.
sarci-o,	sarcī-re,	sar-sī,	sar-tum,	to patch.
torque-o,	torquē-re,	tor-sī,	tor-tum,	to twist.
turge-o,	turgē-re,	tur-sī,	—	to swell.
urge-o,	urgē-re,	ur-sī,	—	to press.

EXCEPTIONS.

161. 1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in **-sī**.

coqu-o,	coqu-ere,	coxī,	coc-tum,	to cook.
[lig-o (leg-),	lig-ere,	-lexī,	-lec-tum.]	
dī-lig-o,	dī-lig-ere,	dī-lexī,	dīlec-tum,	to love.
intelligo or intellego.	intellig-ere,	intel-lexī,	intel-lec-tum,	to understand.
negligo or neg-leg-o,	neg-lig-ere,	neg-lexī,	neg-lec-tum,	to neglect.

(col-lig-ere, ē-lig-ere, 159)

[licī-o (lac),	lic-ere,	-lexī,	-lec-tum,]	to lure.
(al-, il-) pel-licī-o,	pel-lic-ere,	pel-lexī,	pel-lec-tum,	to allure.
ē-licī-o,	ē-lic-ere,	ē-lic-uī,	ē-lic-i-tum,	to lure forth.
[spici-o (SPEC),	-spic-ere,	-spexī,	-spec-tum,]	to peer.
(ad-, con-, dē-, in-),				
per-spici-o,	per-spic-ere,	per-spexī,	per-spec-tum,	to see through.
reg-o,	reg-ere,	rexī,	rec-tum,	to keep right.
dī-rig-o,	dī-rig-ere,	dī-rexī,	dī-rec-tum,	to guide.
per-g-o,	per-g-ere,	per-rexī,	per-rec-tum,	to go on.
su-rg-o,	su-rg-ere,	sur-rexī,	sur-rec-tum,	to rise up.
teg-o,	teg-ere,	texī,	tec-tum,	to cover.

2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in **-ī**.

ic-o (defective),	ic-ere,	ic-ī,	ic-tum,	to strike.
-------------------	---------	-------	---------	------------

Present stem rare: **ic-it, ic-itur, ic-imur.**

162.

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

disc-o,	disc-ere,	di-dic-i,	(disc-itūrus),	<i>to learn.</i>
Compounds retain reduplication.				
(pang-o, 159, b),	(pang-ere),	pe-pig-i,	pac-tum,	<i>to drive a bargain.</i>
parc-o,	parc-ere,	pe-perc-i (par-sī),	(par-sūrus),	<i>to spare.</i>
com-parco (-perco),	com-parc-ere,	com-pars-i,	com-par-sum,	<i>to save.</i>
posc-o,	posc-ere,	po-posc-i,	—	<i>to claim.</i>
pung-o,	pung-ere,	pu-pug-i,	punc-tum,	<i>to prick.</i>
inter-pungo,	inter-pungere.	inter-punxi,	inter-punc-tum,	<i>to place points between.</i>
tang-o (TAG),	tang-ere,	te-tig-i,	tac-tum,	<i>to touch.</i>
at-ting-o,	at-ting-ere,	at-tig-i,	at-tac-tum,	<i>to border upon.</i>

163.

ASPIRATE STEMS IN H AND V.

The stems in **H**, and some in **V**, follow the Conjugation of the **K**-mute stems.

REMARK.—In these stems an original **K**-mute reappears, as, **viv-o** for **vi(g)vo**, and **vixi** for **vig(v)sī**. Compare **nix** for **nig(v)s**, *snow*.

PERFECT, -sī. *Supine*, -tum.

flu-o (flugv-),	flu-ere,	fluxī,	(flux-us),	<i>to flow.</i>
stru-o (strugv-),	stru-ere,	struxī,	struc-tum,	<i>to build.</i>
trah-o,	trah-ere,	traxī,	trac-tum,	<i>to drag.</i>
veh-o,	veh-ere,	vexī,	vec-tum,	<i>to carry.</i>
viv-o (vigv-),	viv-ere,	vixī,	vic-tum,	<i>to live.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

cō-nive-o (nigv-),	cō-nivē-re,	cō-nixī and ivī,	—	<i>to close the eyes.</i>
--------------------	-------------	------------------	---	---------------------------

164.

STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

SUPINE : -sum.

PERFECT.—1. The stems in **D** with short stem-syllable and all stems in -nd, have Perfect in -i.

(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

ac-cend-o,	ac-cend-ere,	ac-cend-i,	ac-cen-sum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
dē-fend-o,	dē-fend-ere,	dē-fend-i,	dē-fen-sum,	<i>to strike away, defend.</i>
ed-o,	ed-ere,	ēd-i,	ē-sum (es-sum),	<i>to eat.</i>
com-ed-o,	com-ed-ere,	com-ēd-i,	com-ē-sum and com-es-tum,	<i>to eat up.</i>
fund-o (FUD),	fund-ere,	fūd-i,	fū-sum,	<i>to pour.</i>
mand-o,	mand-ere,	mand-i,	man-sum,	<i>to chew.</i>
prehend-o,	prehend-ere,	prehend-i,	prehen-sum,	<i>to seize.</i>
scand-o,	scand-ere,	scand-i,	scan-sum,	<i>to climb.</i>
a(d)-, dē-scend-o,	dē-scend-ere,	dē-scend-i,	dē-scen-sum,	<i>to climb up, down.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

prande-o,	prandē-re,	prand-i,	pran-sum.	<i>to breakfast.</i>
vide-o,	vidē-re,	vīd-i,	vī-sum,	<i>to see.</i>

165. 2. Stems in **D** and **T**, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in **-sī**.

claud-o,	claud-ere,	clau-sī,	clau-sum,	<i>to shut.</i>
con-, ex-clūd-o,	ex-clūd-ere,	ex-clū-sī,	ex-clū-sum,	<i>to shut up,</i> <i>out.</i>
laed-o,	laed-ere,	lae-sī,	lae-sum.	<i>to harm.</i>
col-lid-o,	col-lid-ere,	col-li-sī,	col-li-sum,	<i>to strike to-</i> <i>gether.</i>
lūd-o,	lūd-ere,	lū-sī,	lū-sum,	<i>to play.</i>
plaud-o (ap-plaud-o),	plaud-ere,	plau-sī,	plau-sum,	<i>to clap.</i>
ex-plōd-o,	ex-plōd-ere,	ex-plō-sī,	ex-plō-sum,	<i>to hoot off.</i>
rād-o,	rād-ere,	rā-sī,	rā-sum,	<i>to scratch.</i>
rōd-o,	rōd-ere,	rō-sī,	rō-sum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
trūd-o,	trūd-ere,	trū-sī,	trū-sum,	<i>to push.</i>
vād-o (in-, ē-),	-vād-ere,	-vā-sī,	-vā-sum,	<i>to go.</i>

With change of Conjugation.

arde-o,	ardē-re,	ar-sī,	ar-sum,	<i>to be on fire.</i>
rīde-o,	rīdē-re,	rī-sī,	rī-sum,	<i>to laugh</i> <i>(at).</i>
senti-o,	senti-re,	sen-sī,	sen-sum,	<i>to feel.</i>
suāde-o,	suādē-re,	suā-sī,	suā-sum,	<i>to (make</i> <i>sweet)</i> <i>counsel.</i>

166. 3. With assimilation.

a. In the Supine.

fodi-o,	fod-ere,	fōd-i,	fos-sum,	<i>to dig.</i>
mitt-o,	mitt-ere,	mī-sī,	mis-sum,	<i>to send.</i>
pand-o,	pand-ere,	pand-i,	pas-sum (pansum),	<i>to spread</i> <i>out.</i>
sede-o,	sedē-re,	sēd-i,	ses-sum,	<i>to sit.</i>

b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

cēd-o,	cēd-ere,	ces-sī,	ces-sum,	<i>to yield.</i>
quati-o,	quat-ere,	(quas-sī),	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>
con-cutio (per-, ex-),	con-cut-ere,	con-cus-sī,	con-cus-sum,	<i>to shatter.</i>

167. EXCEPTIONS.

1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in **-sī**.

dī-vid-o,	dī-vid-ere,	dī-vī-sī,	dī-vī-sum,	<i>to part.</i>
quati-o,	quat-ere,	(quas-sī),	quas-sum,	<i>to shake.</i>

2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in **-ī**.

cūd-o,	cūd-ere,	cūd-ī,	cū-sum,	<i>to hammer.</i>
sīd-o,	sīd-ere,	sīd-ī,		<i>to sit down.</i>

In composition -sēdī, -sessum, from sede-o.

con-sīd-o,	con sīd-ere,	con-sēd-ī,	con-ses-sum,	<i>to settle</i> <i>down.</i>
strīde-o (-do),	strīdēre (-ere),	strīd-ī,	—	<i>to whistle,</i> <i>screech.</i>
vert-o,	vert-ere,	vert-ī,	ver-sum,	<i>to turn.</i>
re-vert-or,	re-vert-ī,	revert-ī (active),	re-ver-sum,	<i>to turn</i> <i>back.</i>

168.

4. With reduplicated Perfect.

The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs. (153 R.)

cad-o,	cad-ere,	ce-cid-ī,	cā-sum,	to fall.
oc-cid-o,	oc-cid-ere,	oc-cid-ī,	oc-cā-sum,	to perish.
caed-o,	caed-ere,	ce-cīd-ī,	cae-sum,	to fell.
oc-cīd-o,	oc-cīd-ere,	oc-cīd-ī,	oc-cī-sum,	to kill.
pend-o,	pend-ere,	pe-pend-ī,	pen-sum,	to hang (transit.).
tend-o,	tend-ere,	te-tend-ī,	ten-sum and -tum,	to stretch.
ex-tend-o,	ex-tend-ere,	ex-tend-ī,	ex-ten-sum and -tum,	to stretch out.
os-tend-o,	os-tend-ere,	os-tend-ī,	os-ten-sum (-tus),	to stretch at, show (obs-t-).

With change of Conjugation.

morde-o,	mordē-re,	mo-mord-ī,	mor-sum,	to bite.
pende-o,	pendē-re,	pe-pend-ī,	—	to hang (intr.).
sponde-o,	spondē-re,	spo-pond-ī,	spon-sum,	to pledge oneself.
tonde-o,	tondē-re,	to-tond-ī,	ton-sum,	to shear.

In some verbs the strengthening **N** of the Present has been dropped. In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

find-o,	find-ere,	fid-ī,	fis-sum,	to cleave.
scind-o,	scind-ere,	scid-ī,	scis-sum,	to split.
tund-o,	tund-ere,	tu-tud-ī,	tun-sum and tū-sum,	to thump.

169.

LIQUID-STEMS.

1. All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Contracted forms: **sū-mo** (sub-imo); **pō-no** (po-sino or posi-n-o).

2. Original sibilant stems: **haere-o**, **haes-.**

2. Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix **e**, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation.

3. Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take in the Perfect, and in the Supine either **-sum** or **-tum**. They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (**rr**, **ll**). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

em-o, em-ere, ēm-ī, em-tum, to take, to buy.

So, too, **co-em-o**, *I buy up*. But the compounds with **ad-**, **ex-**, **inter-**, take **-im-o**. So **dir-im-o**, *I sever*.

inter-im-o, inter-im-ere, inter-ēm-ī, inter-em-tum, to make way with.

The other compounds of **em-o** contract: **cō-mo**, **dē-mo**, **prō-mo**, **sū-mo** and have **-sī** in the Perfect, generally with a **p** between, which is generated by the coming together of a labial and sibilant or dental. Comp **hiem(p)s**.

ōm-o,	cōm-ere,	cōmp-sī,	cōmp-tum,	<i>to adorn.</i>
ēm-o,	dēm-ere,	dēmp-sī,	dēmp-tum,	<i>to take away.</i>
rōm-o,	prōm-ere,	prōmp-sī (prōm-sī),	prōmp-tum (prōmtum),	<i>to take out.</i>
ūm-o,	sūm-ere,	sūmp-sī (sūm-sī),	sūmp-tum (sūmtum),	<i>to take.</i>

The same formation occurs in the stem *-tem-*. Present, *temn-o*, *I scorn*.
on-temn-o, *-temn-ere*, *-temp-sī* (msī), *-temp-tum* (mtum), *to despise.*

170. 1. With the characteristic doubled.

psall-o,	psall-ere,	psall-ī,	—	<i>to play on the cithern.</i>
sall-o,	sall-ere,	sall-ī,	sal-sum,	<i>to salt.</i>
vell-o,	vell-ere,	vell-ī (vul-sī),	vul-sum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
verr-o,	verr-ere,	verr-ī (rare),	ver-sum,	<i>to sweep.</i>

2. With change of Conjugation in the Present.

veni-o,	veni-re,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum,	<i>to come.</i>
---------	----------	--------	----------	-----------------

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

can-o,	can-ere,	ce-cin-ī,	can-tum,	<i>to sing.</i>
curr-o,	curr-ere,	cu-curr-ī,	cur-sum,	<i>to run.</i>
fall-o,	fall-ere,	fe-fell-ī,	fal-sum,	<i>to cheat.</i>
pari-o,	par-ere,	pe-per-ī,	par-tum* (paritūrus),	<i>to bring forth.</i>
com-peri-o,	com-peri-re,	com-per-ī,	com-per-tum,	<i>to find out.</i>
re-peri-o,	re-peri-re,	rep-per-ī,	re-per-tum,	<i>to find.</i>
pell-o,	pell-ere,	pe-pul-ī,	pul-sum,	<i>to push, drive back.</i>
per-cell-o,	per-cell-ere,	per-cul-ī,	per-cul-sum,	<i>to smite down.</i>
toll-o,	toll-ere,	sus-tul-ī,	sub-lā-tum.	<i>to lift up.</i>

171. APPARENT LIQUID-STEMS IN r.—In the liquid-stems in *r* with long stem-syllable, the *r* has arisen from *s*. The original *s* reappears in the Perfect and Supine: hence the endings *-sī* in the Perfect (or by assimilation *-ssī*), and *-stum* (*-sum*) in the Supine.

haere-o,	haerē-re,	hae-sī,	haes-um,	<i>to stick (to).</i>
auri-o,	auri-re,	hau-sī,	haus-tum,	<i>to drain.</i>
ūr-o,	ūre-re,	ūs-sī,	ūs-tum.	<i>to burn.</i>
com-būr-o,	com-būr-ere,	com-būs-sī,	com-būs-tum,	<i>to burn up.</i>

With short stem-syllable.

ger-o,	ger-ere,	ges-sī,	ges-tum (see <i>tostum</i> , 128),	<i>to carry.</i>
--------	----------	---------	------------------------------------	------------------

STEMS IN S.

172. 1. The stems in *s* preceded by a *vowel* have in general changed it to *r*. Unchanged appears only:

vis-o,	vis-ere,	vi-sī,	vi-sum,	<i>to visit.</i>
--------	----------	--------	---------	------------------

2. Stems in *s* preceded by a *consonant* are:

leps-o,	deps-ere,	deps-ūī,	deps-tum,	<i>to knead.</i>
pīns-o,	pīns-ere,	pīns-ūī, -ī,	pīns-i-tum (pīs-tum, pīn-sum),	<i>to pound.</i>
tex-o,	tex-ere,	tex-ūī,	tex-tum,	<i>to weave.</i>

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See

STEMS IN U.

PERFECT IN -i. SUPINE IN -tum.

173. 1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

ab-lu-o,	ab-lu-ere,	ab-lu-ī,	ab-lū-tum,	<i>to wash off.</i>
ab-nu-o,	ab-nu-ere,	ab-nu-ī,	(ab-nu-itur-us),	<i>to dissent.</i>
acu-o,	acu-ere,	acu-ī,	acū-tum,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
ad-nuo (an-nu-o),	ad-nu-ere,	ad-nu-ī,	—	<i>to nod assent.</i>
argu-o,	argu-ere,	argu-ī,	argū-tum,	<i>to accuse.</i>
con-gru-o,	con-gru-ere,	con-gru-ī,	—	<i>to agree.</i>
ex-u-o,	ex-u-ere,	ex-u-ī,	ex-ū-tum,	<i>to put off, doff.</i>
im-bu-o,	im-bu-ere,	im-bu-ī,	im-bū-tum,	<i>to dip, dye.</i>
in-du-o,	in-du-ere,	in-du-ī,	in-dū-tum,	<i>to put on, don.</i>
lu-o,	lu-ere,	lu-ī,	lu-itūr-us,	<i>to atone for.</i>
metu-o,	metu-ere,	metu-ī,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
minu-o,	minu-ere,	minu-ī,	minū-tum,	<i>to lessen.</i>
plu-o,	plu-ere,	plu-it, plūv-it.	—	<i>to rain.</i>
ru-o,	ru-ere,	ru-ī,	rū-tum (ruitūrus),	<i>to rush down.</i>
spu-o,	spu-ere,	spu-ī,	spū-tum,	<i>to spew.</i>
statu-o,	statu-ere,	statu-ī,	statū-tum,	<i>to settle.</i>
sternu-o,	sternu-ere,	sternu-ī,	—	<i>to sneeze.</i>
su-o,	su-ere,	su-ī,	sū-tum,	<i>to sew.</i>
tribu-o,	tribu-ere,	tribu-ī,	tribū-tum,	<i>to allot.</i>

174. 2. With characteristic preceded by a vowel.

After a vowel, u appears as v, but in the Supine it suffers, as a vowel, contraction with the vowel preceding it (generally with change of conjugation).

cave-o,	cavē-re,	cāv-ī,	cau-tum,	<i>to take heed.</i>
fave-o,	favē-re,	fāv-ī,	fau-tum,	<i>to be well-disposed.</i>
fove-o,	fovē-re,	fōv-ī,	fō-tum,	<i>to keep warm.</i>
juv-o,	juvā-re,	jūv-ī,	jū-tum (juvātūrus),	<i>to help.</i>
ad-juv-o,	-juvā-re,	-jūv-ī,	-jū-tum (-jū tūrus),	<i>to stand by aid.</i>
(lav-o.)	(lav-ere.)	lāv-ī,	lau-tum (lō-tum),	<i>to wash.</i>
lav-o,	lavā-re,	(lavā-vī.)	lavā-tum,	<i>to wash.</i>
move-o,	movē-re,	mōv-ī,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
pave-o,	pavē-re,	pāv-ī,	—	<i>to quake (with fear).</i>
vove-o,	vovē-re,	vōv-ī,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>

The same reappearance of v occurs in:

ferve-o (o),	fervē-re (ere),	ferv-ī (ferb-uī),	—	<i>to seethe.</i>
solv-o,	solv-ere,	solv-ī,	solū-tum,	<i>to loose, pay.</i>
volv-o,	volv-ere,	volv-ī,	volū-tum,	<i>to roll.</i>

DEPONENTS.

175. REMARKS.—1. Deponent verbs are passive forms which have lost their passive or reflexive signification.

2. Stems strengthened by *sc* or *isc* have generally an inchoative meaning. Comp. 152, V.

1. STEMS IN A P-MUTE.
- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|--------------|----------------|--|
| 1. | ad-ip-isc-or, | ad-ip-isc-I, | ad-ep-tus sum, | <i>to (fasten to one's self) attain.</i> |
| 2. | lāb-or, | lāb-I, | lāp-sus sum, | <i>to glide.</i> |
2. STEMS IN A K-MUTE.
- | | | | | |
|-------|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1, a. | pro-fic-isc-or, | pro-fic-isc-I, | pro-fec-tus sum, | <i>to (get forward) set out.</i> |
| 2, b. | fung-or, | fung-I, | func-tus sum, | <i>to discharge.</i> |
| | nanc-isc-or, | nanc-isc-I, | nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum, | <i>to get.</i> |
| c. | am-plect-or, | am-plect-I, | am-plex-us sum, | <i>to twine round, embrace.</i> |
| d. | ulc-isc-or, | ulc-isc-I, | ul-tus sum, | <i>to avenge.</i> |
| Ex.e. | experg-isc-or, (-reg-) | ex-per-g-isc-I, | ex-per-rec-tus sum, | <i>to (right one's self up) awake.</i> |
| 4. | pac-isc-or, | pac-isc-I, | pac-tus sum (pepigī), | <i>to drive (a bargain).</i> |
3. STEMS IN H AND V.
- | | | | | |
|--|------------------|--------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | fru-or (frugv-), | fru-I, | fruc-tus, fru-i-tus sum, | <i>to enjoy.</i> |
| | veh-or, | veh-I, | vec-tus sum, | <i>to (waggon) ride.</i> |
4. STEMS IN A T-MUTE.
- | | | | | |
|----|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 2. | assenti-or, | assenti-rī, | assen-sus sum, | <i>to assent.</i> |
| 3. | fate-or. | fatē-rī, | fas-sus sum, | <i>to confess.</i> |
| | con-fite-or, | con-fitē-rī, | con-fes-sus sum, | <i>to confess.</i> |
| 3. | gradi-or, | grad-I, | gres-sus sum, | <i>to step.</i> |
| | ag-gredi-or, | ag-gred-I, | ag-gres-sus sum, | <i>to attack.</i> |
| 2. | nīt-or (gnict-) | nīt-I, | nī-sus (nix-us) sum, | <i>to stay one's self on.</i> |
| | from genū, } | | nī-sūrus, } | |
| 2. | ordi-or, | ordī-rī, | or-sus sum, | <i>to begin.</i> |
| 3. | pati-or, | pat-I, | pas-sus sum, | <i>to suffer.</i> |
| | per-peti-or, | per-pet-I, | per-pes-sus sum, | <i>to endure to the end.</i> |
| 2. | ūt-or. | ūt-I, | ū-sus sum, | <i>to use.</i> |
5. STEMS IN A LIQUID.
- | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| | com-min-isc-or. | com-min-isc-I, | com-men-tus sum, | <i>to think up, devise.</i> |
| | ex-peri-or, | ex-peri-rī, | ex-per-tus sum, | <i>to try.</i> |
| | misere-or, | miserē-rī, | miser-i-tus sum, | <i>to pity.</i> |
6. STEMS IN R FOR S.
- | | | | | |
|--|----------|---------|---------------|---------------------|
| | quer-or, | quer-I, | ques-tus sum, | <i>to complain.</i> |
|--|----------|---------|---------------|---------------------|
7. STEMS IN U.
- | | | | | |
|----|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | loqu-or, | loqu-I, | locū-tus sum, | <i>to speak.</i> |
| | sequ-or, | sequ-I, | secū-tus sum, | <i>to follow</i> |
| 2. | ob-liv-isc-or, | ob-liv-isc-I, | ob-li-tus sum, | <i>to forget.</i> |

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

(Compare 156.)

A.

176. 1. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

crep-o,	crepā-re,	crep-uī,	crep-itur,	<i>to rattle.</i>
cub-o,	cubā-re,	cub-uī,	cub-itur,	<i>to lie.</i>
dom-o,	domā-re,	dom-uī,	dom-itur,	<i>to tame.</i>
mic-o,	micā-re,	mic-uī,	—	<i>to quiver. flash.</i>
dī-mic-o,	dī-micā-re,	dī-micā-vī,	dī-micā-tum,	<i>to fight (out).</i>
plic-o (ex-plic-o),	plicā-re,	plic-uī (plicā-vī),	plic-itur (-ā-tum),	<i>to fold.</i>
(The simple rare.)				
son-o,	sonā-re,	son-uī,	son-itur (sonā-tū- rus),	<i>to sound.</i>
ton-o,	tonā-re,	ton-uī,	—	<i>to thunder.</i>
vet-o,	vetā-re,	vet-uī,	vet-itur,	<i>to forbid.</i>

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

fric-o,	fricā-re,	fric-uī,	fric-tum (-ā-tum),	<i>to rub.</i>
nec-o,	necā-re,	necā-vī,	necā-tum,	<i>to kill.</i>
ē-nec-o,	ē-necā-re,	ē-nec-uī (-ā-vī),	ē-nec-tum,	<i>to kill off.</i>
sec-o,	secā-re,	sec-uī,	sec-tum,	<i>to cut.</i>

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

ac-cumb-o,	ac-cumb-ere,	ac-cub-uī,	ac-cub-itur,	<i>to lie down.</i>
frem-o,	frem-ere,	frem-uī,	frem-itur,	<i>to roar, rage.</i>
gem-o,	gem-ere,	gem-uī,	gem-itur,	<i>to groan.</i>
gi-gn-o (GEN-),	gi-gn-ere,	gen-uī,	gen-itur,	<i>to beget.</i>
mol-o,	mol-ere,	mol-uī,	mol-itur,	<i>to grind.</i>
strep-o,	strep-ere,	strep-uī,	strep-itur,	<i>to make a din.</i>
vom-o,	vom-ere,	vom-uī,	vom-itur,	<i>to vomit.</i>

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

al-o,	al-ere,	al-uī,	al-tum, al-itur,	<i>to nourish.</i>
col-o,	col-ere,	col-uī,	cul-tum,	<i>to cultivate.</i>
consul-o,	consul-ere,	consul-uī,	consul-tum,	<i>to consult.</i>
frend-o (e-o),	frend-ere,	(frend-uī),	frē-sum, fres-sum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
occul-o,	occul-ere,	occul-uī,	occul-tum,	<i>to conceal.</i>
rapi-o,	rap-ere,	rap-uī,	rap-tum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
cor-ripi-o,	cor-rip-ere,	cor-rip-uī,	cor-reptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
ser-o,	ser-ere,	—	—	<i>to string (out).</i>
dē-ser-o,	dē-ser-ere,	dē-ser-uī,	dē-sertum,	<i>to abandon.</i>

So, too, deps-o, *I knead*, tex-o, *I weave*, and pinso, *I pound*. (See 172.)

WITHOUT SUPINE.

compesc-o,	compesc-ere,	compesc-uī,		<i>to curb in.</i>
con-cin-o (oc- prae-),	con-cin-ere,	con-cin-uī,		<i>to sing together</i>
ex-cell-o, (ante- prae),	ex-cell-ere,	ex-cell-uī,	ex-cel-sus,	<i>to surpass.</i>
stert-o,	stert-ere,	stert-uī,		<i>to snore.</i>
trem-o,	trem-ere,	trem-uī,		<i>to tremble.</i>

3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amici-o,	amicī-re,	amic-uī (amixī),	amic-tum,	to clothe.
aperi-o,	aperī-re,	aper-uī,	aper-tum,	to open.
operi-o,	operī-re,	oper-uī,	oper-tum,	to cover up.
sali-o,	sali-re,	sal-uī,	sal-tum,	to leap.
dē-sili-o,	dē-sili-re,	dē-sil-uī,	(dē-sul-tum.)	to leap down.

4. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

arcess-o,	arcess-ere,	arcess-ivī,	arcess-ītum,	to send for.
in-cess-o,	So, too, lacess-o,	in-cess-ivī (cessī),	in-cess-ītum,	to attack.
	So facess-o,	I cause, make off.		
cupi-o,	cup-ere,	cup-ivī,	cup-ītum,	to desire.
pet-o,	pet-ere,	pet-ivī,	pet-ītum,	to seek (fly at).
quaer-o,	quaer-ere,	quaes-ivī,	quaes-ītum,	to seek.
quaeso, quaesumus,	are old colloquial forms, <i>prythee</i> .			
con-quir-o,	con-quir-ere,	conquis-ivī,	con-quīs-ītum,	to hunt up.
rud-o,	rud-ere,	rud-ivī,	rud-ītum,	to roar.
sapi-o,	sap-ere,	sap-ivī (-uī),	—	to have a flavor.

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.

cie-o (ci-o),	ciē-re (cī-re),	cī-vī,	ci-tum (cī-tum),	to stir up.
con-citus, per-cit-us, ex-ci-tus, or excītus, but ac-cī-tus.				

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.

pōt-o,	pōtā-re,	pōtā-vī,	pō-tum (pō) or pōt-ātum, pōt-tūrus, potā-tūrus,	to drink.
--------	----------	----------	--	-----------

B.

177.

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION AS RESULT OF REDUPLICATION.

d-ō,	da-re,	ded-ī,	da-tum,	to give, put, do.
------	--------	--------	---------	-------------------

REMARK.—Everywhere a-short, except in *dās*, thou givest, and *dā*, give thou.

1. Like *dō*, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as :

circum-dō, <i>I surround</i> ;	satis-dō, <i>I give bail</i> ;	pessum dō, <i>I ruin</i> ;	vēnum-dō, <i>I sell</i> ;	as :
circum-d-o,	circum-da-re,	circum-de-dī,	circum-da-tum,	to surround.

2. The compounds of *da-re* with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

ab-d-o,	ab-d-ere,	ab-did-ī,	ab-d-ītum,	to put away.
ad-d-o,	ad-d-ere,	ad-did-ī,	ad-d-ītum,	to put to.
con-d-o,	con-d-ere,	con-did-ī,	con-d-ītum,	to put up (found).
abs-con-do,	abs-con-d-ere,	abs-con-d-ī, (didī),	abs-con-d-ītum,	to put far away.
crē-d-o,	crē-d-ere,	crē-did-ī,	crē-d-ītum,	to put faith.
dē-d-o,	dē-d-ere,	dē-did-ī,	dē-d-ītum,	to give up.
ē-d-o,	ē-d-ere,	ē-did-ī,	ē-d-ītum,	to put out.
in-d-o,	in-d-ere,	in-did-ī,	in-d-ītum,	to put in.
per-d-o,	per-d-ere,	per-did-ī,	per-d-ītum,	to fordo (ruin).
prō-d-o,	prō-d-ere,	prō-did-ī,	prō-d-ītum,	to betray.
red-d-o,	red-d-ere,	red-did-ī,	red-d-ītum,	to give back.
trā-d-o,	trā-d-ere,	trā-did-ī,	trā-d-ītum,	to give over.
vēn-d-o,	vēn-d-ere,	vēn-did-ī,	vēn-d-ītum,	to put up to sale.

178.

sto, *I stand.*

st-o,	stā-re,	stet-ī,	(stā-tu-rūs),	<i>to stand.</i>
ad-st-o,	ad-stā-re,	ad-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand by.</i>
con-st-o,	con-stā-re,	con-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand fast.</i>
in-st-o,	in-stā-re,	in-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand upon.</i>
ob-st-o,	ob-stā-re,	ob-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand out against.</i>
per-st-o,	per-stā-re,	per-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand firm.</i>
prae-st-o,	prae-stā-re,	prae-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand ahead.</i>
re-st-o,	re-stā-re,	re-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand over.</i>
dī-st-o,	dī-stā-re,	—	—	<i>to stand apart.</i>
ex-st-o,	ex-stā-re,	—	—	<i>to stand out.</i>
circum-st-o,	circum-stā-re,	circum-stet-ī,	—	<i>to stand round.</i>

1. Like *circum-sto*, all compounds of *stāre* with dissyllabic prepositions have *-stetī* in the Perfect, as :

ante-sto, *I am superior* ; *inter-sto*, *I am between* ; *super-sto*, *I stand upon*.

2. In other compounds the reduplicated form *sisto* is used, which, as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive, *I stand*.

sist-o,	sist-ere,	(stit-ī),	sta-tum,	<i>to (cause to) stand.</i>
con-sist-o,	con-sist-ere,	con-stit-ī,	con-sti-tum,	<i>to come to a stand.</i>
dē-sist-o (ab-),	dē-sist-ere,	dē-stit-ī,	dē-sti-tum,	<i>to stand off.</i>
ex-sist-o,	ex-sist-ere,	ex-stit-ī,	ex-sti-tum,	<i>to stand up.</i>
ob-sist-o,	ob-sist-ere,	ob-stit-ī,	ob-sti-tum,	<i>to take a stand against.</i>
re-sist-o,	re-sist-ere,	re-stit-ī,	re-sti-tum,	<i>to withstand.</i>
ad-sist-o,	ad-sist-ere,	ad-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand near.</i>
in-sist-o,	in-sist-ere,	in-stit-ī,	—	<i>to stand upon.</i>
circum-sist-o,	circum-sist-ere,	circum-stet-ī,	—	<i>to take a stand round.</i>

179.

C.

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION AS RESULT OF STRENGTHENED PRESENT.

1. Present strengthened by *n*.

li-n-o,	lin-ere,	lī-vī, or lēvī,	li-tum,	<i>to besmear.</i>
si-n-o,	sin-ere,	sī-vī,	si-tum,	<i>to let.</i>
dē-sin-o,	dē-sin-ere,	de-sī-vī (īī),	dē-si-tum,	<i>to leave off.</i>
pōn-o (PO-SINO),	pōn-ere,	pos-uī,	posi-tum,	<i>to place, leave be- hind.</i>

2. Present strengthened by *sc* : compare **E** (181).

crē-sc-o,	crēsc-ere,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	<i>to grow.</i>
nō-sc-o,	nōsc-ere,	nō-vī,	(Adj. nōtus),	<i>to learn to know.</i>
co-gnōsc-o,	co-gnōsc-ere,	co-gnō-vī,	co-gn-itum,	<i>to recognize.</i>

So the other compounds of *nōsco*, except *ignōsco*, *I pardon*, take no notice of, which has Sup. *ignōtum* (adj. *ignōtus*, *unknown*).

pa-sc-o,	pase-ere,	pā-vī,	pas-tum,	<i>to graze (trans.)</i>
quie-sc-o,	quiesc-ere,	quīē-vī,	quīē-tum,	<i>to rest.</i>
sue-sc-o (as-, con-),	suesc-ere,	suē-vī,	suē-tum,	<i>to accustom one's self.</i>

D.

180. Some stems in -r (-er) undergo change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present. **Ser-o**, *I sow*, is a reduplicated form for **se-so**.

cer-n-o,	cern-ere,	(crē-vī),	(crē-tum),	<i>to separate.</i>
dē-cern-o,	dē-cern-ere,	dē-crē-vī,	dē-crē-tum,	<i>to decide.</i>
ser-o,	ser-ere,	sē-vī,	sa-tum,	<i>to sow.</i>
con-ser-o,	con-ser-ere,	con-sē-vī,	con-s-itum,	—
sper-n-o,	sper-ere,	sprē-vī,	sprē-tum,	<i>to despise.</i>
ster-n-o,	stern-ere,	strā-vī,	strā-tum,	<i>to strew.</i>
ter-o,	ter-ere,	trī-vī,	trī-tum,	<i>to rub.</i>

E.

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

181. 1. The inchoatives are formed $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{by adding to the vowel-} \\ \text{stems -sc-} \\ \text{by adding to the conso-} \\ \text{nant-stems -isc-} \end{array} \right.$

Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

inveterā-sc-o,	inveterāsc-ere,	inveterā-vī,	inveterā-tum,	<i>to grow old.</i>
nā-sc-or,	nāsc-I,	nā-tus sum,		<i>to be born.</i>
ex-olē-sc-o,	ex-olēsc-ere,	ex-olē-vī,	ex-olē-tum,	<i>to get one's growth.</i>

Like **exolēscō**, conjugate **obsolēscō**, *I grow old*; but **abolēscō**, *I disappear*, follows **aboleo**, and **inolēscō** has no supine.

ad-olē-sc-o,	ad-olēsc-ere,	ad-olē-vī,	ad-ul-tum,	<i>to grow up.</i>
co-alē-sc-o,	co-alēsc-ere,	co-al-uī,	(co-al-itum),	<i>to grow together.</i>
con-valē-sc-o,	con-valēsc-ere,	con-val-uī,	con-val-i-tum,	<i>to get well.</i>
in-calē-sc-o,	in-calēsc-ere,	in-cal-uī,	—	<i>to get warm.</i>
ex-ardē-sc-o,	ex-ardēsc-ere,	ex-ar-sī,	ex-ar-sum,	<i>to take fire.</i>
sci-sc-o,	scisc-ere,	sci-vī,	sci-tum,	<i>to decree.</i>
ad-sci-sc-o,	ad-scisc-ere,	ad-sci-vī,	ad-sci-tum,	<i>to take on.</i>
ob-dormi-sc-o,	ob-dormisc-ere,	ob-dormi-vī,	ob-dormi-tum,	<i>to fall asleep.</i>
con-cup-isc-o,	con-cupisc-ere,	con-cup-ivī,	con-cupī-tum,	<i>to long for.</i>
(cup-ere),				
in-gem-isc-o,	in-gemisc-ere,	in-gem-uī,	—	<i>to sigh.</i>
re-sip-isc-o,	re-sipisc-ere,	re-sip-ivī,	—	<i>to come to one's senses.</i>
(sap-ere),				
re-viv-isc-o,	re-vivisc-ere,	re-vi-xī,	re-vic-tum,	<i>to come to life again.</i>

2. Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

ē-vān-esc-o,	ē-vānesc-ere,	ē-vān-uī,	(vānus),	<i>to disappear.</i>
irā-sc-or,	irā-sci,	irā-tus sum,	(ira),	<i>to grow angry.</i>
		<i>I am angry,</i>		
nōt-esc-o,	nōtesc-ere,	nōt-uī,	(nōtus),	<i>to become known.</i>
vesper-asc-o,	vesperasc-ere,	—	(vesper),	<i>to become evening.</i>

182.

CHANGE OF VOICE.

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

aude-o,	audē-re,	au-sus sum,	<i>to dare.</i>
fid-o.	fid-ere,	fi-sus sum.	<i>to trust.</i>
gaude-o,	gaudē-re,	gāv-īsus sum,	<i>to rejoice.</i>
[re-vert-or	re-vert-ī,	re-vert-ī, re-versus sum],	<i>to turn back.</i>
sole-o,	solē-re,	sol-itus sum,	<i>to be wont.</i>

REMARKS.—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, as: *cēnātus*, *one who has dined*, from *cēnāre*, *to dine*; *prānsus*, *having breakfasted*, from *prandeo*, *I breakfast*; *pōtus*, *drunken*, from *pōto*, *I drink*; *jūrātus*, *having taken the oath, sworn*, from *jūro*, *I swear*; *conjūrātus*, *a conspirator*, from *conjūro*, *I conspire*. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: *considerātus*, *circumspect*, from *considero*; *cautus*, *wary*, from *caveo*, *I beware*.

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: *adeptus* (*adipiscor*), *having acquired, or being acquired*; *comitātus* (*comitor*, *I accompany*); *expertus* (*experior*, *I try*); *exsecrātus* (*exsecror*, *I curse*); *imitātus* (*imitor*, *I copy*); *meritus* (*mereor*, *I deserve*); *opinātus*, *necopinātus* (*opinor*, *I think*); *pactus* (*paciscor*, *I contract*); *partitus* (*partior*, *I distribute*); *sortitus* (*sortior*, *I cast lots*); *tueor*, *I protect*; *tūtus*, *safe*; the Perf. Participle in ordinary use is *tūtātus*.

183.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

A.

IRREGULAR IN THE FORMATION OF THE TENSE-STEMS.

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are:

1. Two Verbs in a **P**-mute of the 3d conjugation, viz. :

clepo, *I flee*.

lambo, *I lick*. See 158.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **K**-mute, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in **-sī**, viz. :

rego, *I keep right*,
lego, *I pick up*,

tego, *I cover in*,
lacio, *I lure*,

coquo, *I bake*, and the compounds of
specio, *I spy* (-*ligo*, -*licio*, -*spicio*).

From *lego*, however, only *diligo*, *I love*; *intellego*, *I understand*; and *neglego*, *I neglect*; are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 161.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T**-mute, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-sī**, viz. :

dīvido, *I part*.

quatio, *I shake*. See 167.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a **T**-mute, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in **-ī**, viz. :

cūdo, *I hammer*; *sīdo*, *I sit*; *strīdeo*, *I whistle*; *verto*, *I turn*. See 167.

5. Assimilation between **bs** and **ms** occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

jube-o,	jubē-re,	jus-sī,	jus-sum,	<i>to order.</i>
prem-o (-prim-o),	prem-ere,	pres-sī,	pres-sum,	<i>to press.</i>

6. Special irregularities occur in :

bib-o,	bib-ere,	bib-i,	(bib-itum),	<i>to drink.</i>
mane-o,	manē-re,	man-sī,	man-sum,	<i>to remain.</i>
mēti-or,	mēti-rī,	men-sus sum,		<i>to measure.</i>
met-o,	met-ere,	mes-suī,	mes-sum,	<i>to mow.</i>
mori-or,	mor i,	mor-tuus sum,		<i>to die.</i>
rauci-o,	rauci-re,	rau-sī,	rau-sum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
re-or,	rē-rī,	ra-tus sum,		<i>to think.</i>

This verb has no present participle.

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are :

fer-o,	fer-re,	tul-i,	lā-tum,	<i>to bear.</i>
toll-o,	toll-ere,	sus-tul-i,	sub-lā-tum,	<i>to lift.</i>

See 186.

184.

B.

IRREGULAR IN THE CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT-STEM.

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem are :

1. **ori-or, ori-rī, or-tus sum, to arise.**

PRESENT : **ori-or, or-eris, or-itur, or-imur, or-iminī, ori-untur.**

IMPERFECT : **ori-rer** and **or-erer.** GERUND : **ori-undus.**

The compounds follow the simple verb, except **ad-ori-rī, rise up at, attack,** which follows the Fourth Conjugation.

2. **i-re, to go.** Stem **i,** which, before **a, o, u,** becomes **e.**

185.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I go.</i>		<i>I be going.</i>
SING.—1. e-o,		e-a-m,
2. i-s,		e-ā-s,
3. i-t,		e-a-t,
PLUR.—1. i-mus,		e-ā-mus,
2. i-tis,		e-ā-tis,
3. e-u-nt.		e-a-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. i,	<i>go thou,</i>	i-tō,	<i>thou shalt go,</i>
3.		i-tō,	<i>he shall go,</i>
PLUR.—2. i-te,	<i>go ye,</i>	i-tōte,	<i>ye shall go,</i>
3.		e-u-ntō,	<i>they shall go.</i>

INDICATIVE.

i-ba-m, *I went,*i-b-ō, *I shall go.*i-vī (compos. -i-ī), *I have gone,*i-vera-m (ex-i-era-m), *I had gone,*

i-ver-ō (ex-i-er-ō).

INFINITIVE : PRES. i-re. PERF. i-visse (isse).

PARTICIPLES : PRES. i-e-ns. G. e-u-ntis. FUT. ACT. i-tūr-us.

GERUND : e-u-nd-ī.

SUPINE : i-tum, *to go.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

i-re-m, *I were going.*

FUTURE.

PERFECT.

i-veri-m (ex-i-eri-m).

PLUPERFECT.

i-visse-m (ex-i-sse-m).

FUTURE PERFECT.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds : circum-i-rī.

Compounds of eo are : vēn-eo, *I am for sale*, and per-eo, *I perish*, which serve as passives to vēn-do and per-do, whose regular passives occur only in the forms vēnd-itus, vēnd-endus, and per-ditus.The compound ambi-o, *I solicit*, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.Like i-re, *to go*, are conjugated quī-re, *to be able*, and ne-quī-re, *to be unable*, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.3. fer-re, *to bear.*

186. The connecting-vowel i is dropped before t and s, and ē before r.

INDICATIVE.

I bear.

SING.—1. fer-ō,

2. fer-s,

3. fer-t,

PLUR.—1. fer-i-mus,

2. fer-tis,

3. fer-u-nt.

ACTIVE.

PRESENT.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be bearing.

fer-a-m,

fer-ā-s,

fer-a-t,

fer-ā-mus,

fer-ā-tis,

fer-a-nt.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. fer,	<i>bear thou,</i>	fer-tō,	<i>thou shalt bear,</i>
3.		fer-tō,	<i>he shall bear,</i>
PLUR.—2. fer-te,	<i>bear ye,</i>	fer-tōte,	<i>ye shall bear,</i>
3.		fer-u-ntō,	<i>they shall bear.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

fer-ēba-m,	<i>I was bearing,</i>	fer-re-m,	<i>I were bearing.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	------------------	------------------------

FUTURE.

fer-a-m,	<i>I shall bear.</i>
-----------------	----------------------

PERFECT.

tul-ī,	<i>I have borne,</i>	tul-eri-m.
---------------	----------------------	-------------------

INFINITIVE: PRES. **fer-re.** PERF. **tul-isse.**

PART. **fer-e-ns,** *bearing.* FUT. ACT. **lā-tūr-us.**

SUPINE: **lā-tum** (t(o)**lā-tum**).

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I am borne.

I be borne.

SING.—1. **fer-o-r,**

fer-a-r,

2. **fer-ris,**

fer-ā-ris,

3. **fer-tur,**

fer-ā-tur,

PLUR.—1. **fer-i-mur,**

fer-ā-mur,

2. **fer-i-mini,**

fer-ā-mini,

3. **fer-u-ntur.**

fer-a-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. **fer-re,** *be thou borne,*

fer-tor, *thou shalt be borne.*

3.

fer-tor, *he shall be borne.*

PLUR.—2. **fer-i-mini,** *be ye borne.*

3.

fer-u-ntor, *they shall be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERF.: **fer-ēba-r,**

fer-re-r.

FUTURE: **fer-a-r.**

PERFECT: **lā-tus sum,**

lā-tus sim.

INF. **fer-rī,** *to be borne.*

GER.: **fer-e-nd-us,**

COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-o.	af-fer-re,	at-tul-ī,	al-lā-tum,	<i>to bear to.</i>
au-fer-o,	au-fer-re,	abs-tul-ī.	ab-lā-tum,	<i>to bear away.</i>
con-fer-o,	con-fer-re,	con-tul-ī,	col-lā-tum,	<i>to collect.</i>
dif-fer-o,	dif-fer-re,	dis-tul-ī,	dī-lā-tum,	<i>to put off.</i>
ef-fer-o,	ef-fer-re,	ex-tul-ī,	ē-lā-tum,	<i>to carry out.</i>
of-fer-o,	of-fer-re,	ob-tul-ī,	ob-lā-tum,	<i>to offer.</i>

REMARK.—Suf-fero, *I undergo*, has the Perfect sus-tin-uī (sus-tul-ī, sub-lā-tum), being appropriated to toll-o). (183.)

4. ed-ere, *to eat*.

187. In certain forms the connecting-vowels *i* and *e* are dropped before *s*, *t*, and *r*; *d* before *s* (*r*) is dropped or assimilated (as *ss*), and before *t* becomes *s*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

	<i>I eat.</i>		<i>I be eating.</i>
SING.—1.	ed-o,		ed-a-m,
	2. ed-i-s, ē-s,		ed-ā-s,
	3. ed-i-t, ē-st,		ed-a-t,
PLUR.—1.	ed-i-mus,		ed-ā-mus,
	2. ed-i-tis, ēs-tis,		ed-ā-tis,
	3. ed-u-nt.		ed-a-nt.

IMPERFECT.

ed-ēba-m,	<i>I ate,</i>	ed-ere-m,	ēs-sem, <i>I were eating.</i>
-----------	---------------	-----------	-------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2.	ed-e, ēs,	<i>eat thou,</i>	ed-i-to, ēs-tō̄,	<i>thou shalt eat,</i>
	3.		ed-i-to, ēs-tō̄,	<i>he shall eat,</i>
PLUR.—2.	ed-i-te, ēs-te,	<i>eat ye,</i>	editōte, ēs-tōte,	<i>ye shall eat.</i>
	3.		ed-u-ntō̄,	<i>they shall eat.</i>

INFINITIVE.

ed-ere, ēs-se, *to eat.*

5. fi-erī, *to become*.

188. Fi-o is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., fi-e-reñ, *I were becoming*; fi-e-rī, *to become*. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel,

The Infinitive ends in *-rī*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *facio*, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *facio*.

ACTIVE.

PRES.	<i>facio</i> , <i>I make</i> .
IMPERF.	<i>faciēbam</i> , <i>I made</i> .
FUTURE.	<i>faciam</i> , <i>I shall make</i> .
PERFECT.	<i>fēcī</i> .
PLUPERF.	<i>fēceram</i> .
F. PERF.	<i>fēcero</i> .

PASSIVE.

IND.	<i>fiō</i> , <i>I am made, I become</i> . <i>fīs, fit (fīmus, fītis), fiunt</i> . <i>fiēbam</i> , <i>I was made, I became</i> . <i>fīam</i> , <i>I shall be made (become)</i> . <i>factus sum</i> . <i>factus eram</i> . <i>factus erō</i> .
SUB.	<i>fīam, fīas, fiat</i> , etc. <i>fierem, fierēs</i> , etc.
INF. PERF.	<i>factum esse</i> , <i>to have become</i> .
FUT.	<i>futūrum esse</i> <i>or fore</i> .
F. P.	<i>factum fore</i> .

REMARK.—The compounds of *facio* with Prepositions change the *a* of the stem into *i*, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem : *perficio*, *I achieve*, Pass. *perficior*; *interficio*, Pass. *interficior*, *I am destroyed*. But when compounded with words other than prepositions, *facio* retains its *a*, and uses *fiō* as its Passive :

patefacio, *I lay open*, Pass. *patefio* : *calefacio*, *I warm*, Pass. *calefio*.

The accent remains the same as in the simple verb : *calefācis*, *thou warmest*.

189. 6. *Vel-le*, *to be willing*.

nōlle, *to be unwilling* ; *mālle*, *to be willing rather*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>volō</i> ,	<i>nōlo</i> ,	<i>mālo</i> ,
<i>vīs</i> ,	<i>nōn vīs</i> ,	<i>māvīs</i> ,
<i>vult</i> ,	<i>nōn vult</i> ,	<i>māvult</i> ,
<i>volumus</i> ,	<i>nōlumus</i> ,	<i>mālumus</i> ,
<i>vultis</i> ,	<i>nōn vultis</i> ,	<i>māvultis</i> ,
<i>volunt</i> .	<i>nōlunt</i> .	<i>mālunt</i> .

IMPERFECT.

<i>volēbam</i> ,	<i>nōlēbam</i> ,	<i>mālēbam</i> .
------------------	------------------	------------------

FUTURE.

<i>volam</i> ,	<i>nōlam</i> ,	<i>mālam</i> ,
<i>volēs</i> ,	<i>nōlēs</i> ,	<i>mālēs</i> .

PERFECT.

<i>voluī</i> ,	<i>nōluī</i> ,	<i>māluī</i> .
----------------	----------------	----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
velis,	nōlis,	mālis,
velit,	nōlit,	mālit,
velimus,	nōlimus,	mālimus,
velitis,	nōlitis,	mālitis,
velint.	nōlint.	mālint.

IMPERFECT.

vellem,	nōllem,	māllem.
---------	---------	---------

IMP. :	SING.—nōli, nōlitō.	
	PLUR.—nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.	
INF. PRES. velle,	nōlle,	mālle.
PERF. voluisse,	nōluisse,	māluisse.
PART. volens.	nōlens.	

190.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. ājo, *I say ay.*

IND. PRES.	1. ājo, 2. ais, 3. ait.	PLUR.—3. ājunt.
	IMPERF. ājēbam, etc.	
SUBJ.	ājās, ājat,	ājant.
PART. ājens (as adj.),	<i>affirmative.</i>	

2. inquam, *I say, quoth I.*

IND. PRES.	SING.—1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit.
	PLUR.—1. inquamus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquit.
IMPERF.	3. inquitēbat.
FUT.	2. inquitēs, 3. inquiet.
PERF.	2. inquistī, 3. inquit.
	PLUR.—2. inquistis.

3. fā-rī, *to speak.*

PRES. fātur.	FUT. fābor, fābitur.	PERF. fātus sum, etc.	SUP. fātū
IMPER. fāre.	GER. fandī, fandō.	PART. PRES. fantis, fantem,	

4. avē-re, salvē-re, valē-re.

avē,	salvē, salvēbis, <i>hail thou!</i>	valē, <i>farewell.</i>
avēte,	salvēte, <i>hail ye!</i>	valēte, <i>farewell.</i>
avēre,	salvēre.	valēre.
	age, agite, <i>come!</i>	apage, <i>begone!</i>
	cedo, <i>give!</i>	PLUR.—cette,

5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are **coepī**, *I have begun*, to which *incipio* serves as a Present; **meminī**, *I remember*; **ōdī**, *I hate*; **nōvī** (from *nōsco*, see 179), *I know, am aware*; **consuēvī** (from *consuesco*), *I am wont*.

IND. **coepī**, *I have begun*.

coeperam,
coeperō.

IND. **meminī**, *I remember*,
memineram,
meminerō.

IMPER. SING.—**mementō**.

IND. **ōdī**, *I hate*,
ōderam,
ōderō.

SUBJ. **coeperim**,
coepissem.

INF. **coepisse**, *to have begun*.

SUBJ. **meminerim**,
meminisse.

INF. **meminisse**, *to remember*.

PLUR.—**mementōte**.

SUBJ. **ōderim**,
ōdissem,
INF. **ōdisse**, *to hate*.

coepī and **ōdī** have passive forms of the same meaning :

coeptus sum, *I have begun* (which is used with the Passive Inf.).

ōsus sum, *I hate*.

191. OBSOLETE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Future of Verbs in **-io** is sometimes formed like **ībo**, *I shall go* ; **venībo**, *I shall come* ; **scībo**, *I shall know*.

2. The Pres. Inf. Pass. was originally longer by **-er** : **monstrārier**, **miscērier**, **admittier**, **experīrier**.

3. The Pres. Subj. Act. had an ending **-im** (compare **sim**, **velim**) : **edim**, **edīs**, **edit**, **edint**, *eat* ; **effodint**, *dig out* ; **coquint**, *cook*. Stem vowels were dropped : **temperint**, **carint**. **Dare** formed **duim** ; so, **perduim**, **crēduim**.

4. In older poetry **ie** of the Imperf. Ind. Act. 4th conj. is sometimes contracted into **ī** : **scībam**.

5. In the Perfect stem there was a shorter formation. So in the 2 Pers. Perf. Act. Ind. 3 conj., **dixtī**, **dixtis** (only from mute stems). The terminations **-sim** and **-sem** (Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.), **-so** (Fut. Perf.), **-se** (Perf. Inf.), are added to the verb stem. After a vowel **s** becomes **ss**. So **dixim**, **faxim**, **adaxim**, **rapsim** ; **locāssim**, **negāssim** ; **faxem**, **extinxem** ; **faxo**, **capso**, **jusso**, **amāssō** ; **surrexe**, **prōtraxe**, **dīxe**. The Inf. forms of the vowel conjugations coincide with **amāsse**, **flēsse**, **audisse**, as **creāstī**, **dēlēstī**, **audistī** with **dixtī**. A Future Inf. in **-sere** is also found : **impetrāsere**, **prohibēssere**. Compare, however, **facessere**, **capessere**.

The antiquated forms of **facio** are often found in old formulae.

6. Old forms of **esse**.

(1) **siem**, **siēs**, **siet**, Pr. Subj.

(2) **escit**, **escunt**, Inchoative for Fut.

(3) **fuam**, **fuās**, **fuat**, **fuant**, Pr. Subj. (stem **fu-**).

(4) **fūvī**, **fōvī**, Pf. Ind.

INDEX OF VERBS.

THIS Index is intended to serve as a supplement also, and contains many verbs not mentioned in the text, defectives in supine or in perfect and supine, compounds, isolated forms, rare words.

A.

- Ab-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Ab-igo (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -actum, 159.
 Ab-jicio (JACIO), ere, -jēcī, -jectum, 159.
 Ab-luo, ere, -luī, -lūtum, 173.
 Ab-nuo, ere, -nuī (-nuitūrus), 173.
 Ab-oleo, ēre, -ēvī, itum, 127.
 Ab-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, 181.
 Ab-ripio (RAPIO), ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 176. [177.
 Abs-condo (DO), ere, -dī (-didī), ditum,
 Ab-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.
 Ab-sum, -esse, ab-fuī, ā-fuī, 113.
 Ac-cendo, ere, -cendī, -censum, 164.
 Ac-cido (CADO), ere, -cidī, 168.
 Ac-cipio (CAPIO), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 157.
 Ac-colo (COLO), ere, -coluī, -cultum, 176.
 Ac-cumbo, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 176.
 Ac-curro, ere, ac-currī, -cursum, 170.
 Aceo, ēre, acuī, *to be sour*.
 Acēscō, ere, acuī, 181, *to get sour*.
 Ac-quiro (QUAERO), ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, 176.
 Acq̄o, ere, acuī, acūtum, 173.
 Ad-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Ad-imo (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -emtum, 131.
 Ad-īpiscor, ī, ad-ēptus sum, 175, 182.
 Ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 181.
 Ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, 184.
 Ad-scīscō, ere, -scīvī, -scītum, 181.
 Ad-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.
 Ad-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
 Ad-sto, -stāre, -stitī, 178.
 Ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, af-fuī, 113.
 Agresso, ere, *to fall sick*.
 Af-fero, -ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum, 186.
 Age, 190.
 Ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus, 175.
 A-gnōscō, ere, a-gnōvī, a-gnitum (agnōtūrus), 179.
 Ago, ere, ēgī, actum, 159.
 Ājo, 190.
 Albeo, ēre, *to be white*.
 Algeo, ēre, alsī, 160.
 Al-licio, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161. (licuī)
 Al-luo, ere, -luī, lūtum, 173.
 Alo, ere, aluī, al(i)tum, 176.
 Amb-igo (AGO), ere, 159.
 Amb-īo (EO), īre, īvī (iī), itum, 185.
 Amicio, īre, (amicuī, amixī,) amictum, 176.
 Amo, āre, āvī, ātum. See 119.
 Amplector, ī, amplexus, 175.
 An-go, ere, anxī, 160.
 An-nuo, ere, annuī (annūtum), 173.
 Ante-cello, ere, 176.
 Ante-sto, -stāre, -stetī, 178.
 Apāge, 190.
 A-perio, -īre, aperuī, apertum, 176.
 Apiscor, ī, aptus sum. See adipiscor, 175.
 Ap-peto, ere, īvī, itum, 176.
 Ap-plico (176), āre, -plicuī, -plicitum, (-plicāvī, -plicātum).
 Ap-pōno (179), ere, -posuī, -positum.
 Arceo, ēre, arcuī { arcus, (comp. 128) } artus (adj.)
 Arcesso (accerso), ere, arcessivī, -itum, 176.
 Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 165.
 Arēscō, ere, āruī, 181, *to become dry*.
 Arguo, ere, arguī, (argūtum,) 173. (arguitūrus)
 Ar-ripio (RAPIO), ere, uī, -reptum, 176.
 A-scendo (SCANDO), ere, ī, scensum, 164.
 A-spicio, ere, a-spexī, a-spectum, 161.
 As-sentior, īrī, assensus sum, 175.
 As-sideo (SEDEO), ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 166.
 As-suesco, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 179.
 At-texo, ere, -texuī, -textum, 172.
 At-tineo (TENEEO), ēre, uī, -tentum, 128.

At-tingo (TANGO), ere, attigī, attac-
tum, 162.
At-tollo, ere, *to raise up*.
Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 182.
Audio, ire, ivī, itum. *See* 136.
Au-fero, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, 186.
Augeo, ēre, auxī, auctum, 156.
Avē, 190.

B.

Balbūtio, ire, *to stutter*.
Batuo, ere, uī, *to pummel, fence*.
Bibo, ere, bibī, (bibitum), 183.

C.

Cado, ere, cecidī, cāsūm, 168.
Caecūtio, ire, *to be blind*.
Caedo, ere, cecidī, caesum, 168.
Calefacio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 159, 188.
Calēscō, ere, caluī, *to get warm*.
Calleo, ēre, uī, *to be skilled*.
Calveo, ēre, *to be bald*.
Candeo, ēre, uī, *to shine*.
Cāneo, ēre, *to be gray*.
Cano, ere, cecinī, cantum, 170.
Cappso, ere, capessivī, itum, 176.
Capiro, ere, cēpī, captum, 157. *See*
139.
Carpo, ere, carpsī, carptum, 158.
Caveo, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 174.
Cēdo, ere, cessī, cēssum, 166.
Cēnātus, 182, R. 1.
Cēnseo, ēre, uī, ^{cēnsūm,}
(cēnsitus) 128.
Cerno, ere, (crēvī), (crētum), 180.
Cio, } ciēre,
Cio, } cīre, cīvī, cītum, 176.
Cingo, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 160.
Circum-do, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 177.
Circum-sisto, ere, stēī, 178.
Circum-sto, stāre, stēī, 178.
Claudo, ere, clausī, clausum, 165.
Clepo, ere, ^{clepsī,}
(clēpī) cleptum, 158, 183.
Co-alēscō, ere, -aluī, (-alitur), 181.
Co-arguo, ere, uī, 173.
Co-emo, ere, -ēmī, -em(p)tum, 169.
Coepī, coepisse, 190.
Co-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 156,
179.
Cō-go (AGO), ere, co-ēgī, co-actum,
159.

Col-lido (LAEDO), ere, -lisī, -līsum,
165.
Col-ligo (LEGO), ere, -lēgī, -lectum,
159.
Col-lūceo, ēre, -lūxī, 160.
Colo, ere, coluī, cultum, 176.
Com-būro, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, 171.
Com-edo, ere, -ēdī, -ēsūm (estum), 164.
Comitātus, 182, R. 2.
Comminiscor, ī, commentus sum,
175.
Com-moveo, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 174.
Cō-mo (EMO), ere, cōmpsi, cōmptum,
169.
Com-parco, ere, -parsī, -parsum, 162.
Com-pello, ere, com-pulī, -pulsum,
168, 170.
Com-perio (PARIO), ire, com-perī,
com-per-tum, 170.
Compesco, ere, uī, 176.
Com-pingo, ere, -pēgī, -pactum, 159.
Com-plector, ī, com-plexus, 175.
Com-pleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 127.
Com-primo (PREMO), ere, -pressī,
-pressum, 183.
Com-pungo, ere, -punxī, -punctum,
162.
Con-cido (CADO), ere, -cidī, 168.
Con-cido (CAEDO), ere, -cidī, -cīsum,
168.
Con-cino (CANO), ere, -cinuī, 176.
Concitus (CIEO), 176.
Con-clūdo (CLAUDO), ere, -clūsī, -clū-
sum, 165.
Con-cupisco, ere, -cupivī, cupitum,
181.
Con-cutio (QUATIO), ere, -cussī, -cus-
sum, 167.
Con-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Con-fercio (FARCIO), ire (fersī), fer-
tum, 160.
Con-fero, -ferre, -tulī, collātum, 186.
Con-ficio (FACIO), ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
159, 188.
Con-fiteor (FATEOR), ērī, -fessus, 175.
Con-fringo (FRANGO), ere, -frēgī,
-fractum, 159.
Con-gruo, ere, congruī, 173.
Con-jicio (JACIO), ere, -jēcī, -jectum,
159.
Conjūrātus, 182, R. 1.
Con-nīveo, ēre, ^{connixī,}
(connivī), 163.
Con-quīro (QUAERO), ere, -quīsvī,
-quīsitum, 176.

Con-sero, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 176.
 Con-sero, ere, -sēvī, -situm, 180.
 Con-sīderātus, 182, R. 1.
 Con-sīdo, ere, consēdī, -sēssum, 167.
 Con-sisto, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 178.
 Con-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
 Con-stituo (STATUO), ere, uī, -stitū-
 tum, 173.
 Con-sto, -stāre, -stitī, (constātūrus),
 178.
 Con-suesco, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 179,
 190.
 Consulo, ere, consuluī, -sultum, 176.
 Con-temno, ere, -tem(p)sī, -tem(p)-
 tum, 169.
 Con-texo, ere, -texuī, -textum, 172.
 Con-tineo (TENE0, 128), ēre, uī, -ten-
 tum.
 Con-tingo (TANGO), ere, contigī, con-
 tactum, 162.
 Convalēscō, ere, -valuī, -valitum, 181.
 Coquo, ere, coxī, coctum, 161, 183.
 Cor-ripio (RATIO), ere, -ripuī, -rep-
 tum, 176.
 Cor-ruo, ere, corruī, 173.
 Crēbresco, ere, crēbruī, *to get fre-
 quent.*
 Crē-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Crepo, āre, crepuī, crepitum, 176.
 Crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 179.
 Cubo, āre, cubuī, cubitum, 176.
 Cūdo, ere cūdī, cūsum, 167.
 Cupio, ere, cupivī, cupitum, 176.
 Curro, ere, cucurrī, cursum, 170.

D.

Dē-cerno, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 180.
 Dē-cerpo (CARPO), ere, sī, tum, 158.
 Dē-do, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 177.
 Dē-fendo, ere, -fendī, -fensum, 164.
 Dēfetiscor, I, *to be worn out.*
 Dē-go (AGO), ere, 159.
 Dēleo. *See Paradigm, 123-126.*
 Dē-ligo (LEGO), ere, -legī, -lectum,
 159.
 Dē-mo (EMO), ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum,
 169.
 Dēpello (170), ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum.
 Dē-primō (PREMO, 183), ere, -pressī,
 pressum.
 Depso, ere, depsuī, depstum, 172.
 Dē-scendo (SCANDO), ere, -scendī,
 -scensum, 164.
 Dē-sero, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 176.

Dē-silio (SALIO), īre, (ir), (dēsultum),
 uī, 176.
 Dē-sino, ere, dēsivī, dēsitum, 179.
 Dē-sipio (SAPIO), -ere, 176.
 Dē-sisto, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 178.
 Dē-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
 Dē-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.
 Dē-tendo (168), ere, -tendī, -tentum.
 Dē-tineo (TENE0, 128), ēre, -uī, -ten-
 tum.
 Dē-vertor, -ī, 182.
 Dico, ere, dixī, dictum, 160.
 Dif-fero, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, 186.
 Dī-gnōscō (NŌSC0, 179), ere, -gnōvī.
 Dī-ligo, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
 Dī-mico, āre, āvī, ātum, 176.
 Dī-rigo, ere, -rexī, -rectum, 161.
 Dir-imo (EMO, 169), ere, -ēmī, -em-
 tum.
 Disco, ere, didicī, 162.
 Dis-crepo, āre, -crepuī (āvī), 176.
 Dis-cumbo (176), ere, -cubuī, -cubi-
 tum.
 Dis-pesco, ere, [-pescuī,] -pestum, *to
 divide.*
 Dis-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdī.
 Dī-stinguo, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 160.
 Dī-sto, -stāre, 178.
 Dītesco, ere, *to grow rich.*
 Dīvido, ere, dīvisī, dīvisum, 167.
 Do, dare, dedī, datum, 177.
 Doceo, ēre, docuī, doctum, 128.
 Domo, āre, uī, itum, 176.
 Dūco, ere, dūxī, dūctum, 160.
 Dulcesco, ere, *to grow sweet.*
 Dūresco, ere, dūruī, *to grow hard.*

E.

Edo, ere, ēdī, ēsum, 164, 187.
 Ē-do (DO), ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum, 177.
 Ef-fero, -ferre, extulī, elātum, 186.
 Egeo, ēre, eguī, *to want.*
 Ē-licio, ere, -licuī, -licitum, 161.
 Ē-ligo (LEGO), ere, -lēgī, -lectum, 159.
 Ē-mico (176), āre, uī (ātūrus).
 Ēmineo, ēre, uī, *to stand out.*
 Emo, ere, ēmī, emtum, 169. *See 131.*
 Ē-neco, āre, (enecuī, enecāvī), enectum, 176.
 Eo, īre, ivī, itum, 185.
 Ē-vādo, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, 165.
 Ē-vānescō, ere, ēvānuī, 181.
 Ex-ardēscō, ere, exarsī, exarsum, 181.

Ex-cello, ere, uī (excelsus), 176.
 Excītus, 176.
 Ex-clūdo (CLAUDO), ere, -sī, -sum, 165.
 Ex-curro (170), ere, excucurri, -cursum.
 Ex-olēso, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 181.
 Ex-pello (170), ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
 Expergiscor, ī, experrectus sum, 175.
 Ex-perior, īrī, -pertus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.
 Ex-pleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 127.
 Ex-plico, āre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum), 176.
 Ex-plōdo (PLAUDO), ere, -sī, -sum, 165.
 Exsecrātus, 182, R. 2.
 Ex-stinguo, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 160.
 Ex-sisto, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 178.
 Ex-sto, āre (exstātūrus), 178.
 Ex-tendo, ere, dī, -sum (-tum), 168.
 Ex-tollo, ere.
 Ex-uo, ere, -uī, -ūtum, 173.

F.

Facesso (176), ere, īvī (-ī), itum.
 Facio, ere, fēcī, factum, 159, 188.
 Fallo, ere, fefellī, falsum, 170.
 Farcio, īre, farsī, fartum (-sum), 160.
 Fārī, 190.
 Fateor, ērī, fassus sum, 175.
 Fatisco, ere, *to fall apart*.
 Fatiscor, ī (fessus, *adj.*).
 Faveo, ere, fāvī, fautum, 174.
 Ferio, īre, *to strike*.
 Fero, ferre, tulī, lātum, 183, 186.
 Ferveo, ēre, fervī (ferbuī), 174.
 Fido, ere, fīsus sum, 182.
 Figo, ere, fixī, fixum, 160.
 Findo, ere, fidī, fissum, 168.
 Fingo, ere, fluxī, fictum, 160.
 Fio, fierī, factus sum, 188.
 Flecto, ere, flexī, flexum, 160.
 Fleo, ēre, ēvī, ētum, 127.
 Fligo, ere, flīxī, flictum, 160.
 Flōreo, ere, uī, *to bloom*.
 Fluo, ere, fluxī (fluxus, *adj.*), 163.
 Fodio, ere, fōdī, fossum, 166.
 Forem, 112.
 Foveo, ēre, fōvī, fōtum, 174.
 Frango, ere, frēgī, fractum, 159.
 Fremo, ere, uī, itum, 176.
 Frendo (eo), ere (uī), frēsūm, fresum, 176.

Frico, āre, uī, frictum (ātum), 176.
 Frigeo, ēre (frīxī), 160.
 Frigo, ere, frīxī, frictum (frīxum), 160.
 Frondeo, ēre, uī, *to be leafy*.
 Fruor, ī, fructus (fruitus) sum, 175.
 Fugio, ere, fūgī, fugitum, 159.
 Fulcio, īre, fulsī, fultum, 160.
 Fulgeo, ēre, fulsī, 160.
 Fundo, ere, fūdī, fūsum, 164.
 Fungor, ī, functus sum, 175.
 (Furo, *def.*), furere, *to rave*.

G.

Gannio, īre, *to yelp*.
 Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 182.
 Gemo, ere, uī, itum, 176.
 Gero, ere, gessī, gestum, 171.
 Gigno, ere, genuī, genitum, 176.
 Glisco, ere, *to swell*.
 Gradior, ī, gressus sum, 175.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesī, haesum, 171.
 Haurio, īre, hausī, haustum, 171.
 (hausūrus, haustūrus),
 Hisco, ere, *to yawn*.
 Horreo, ēre, uī, *to stand on end*.
 Hortor, ārī, ātus sum, 141, 142.

I.

Īco, ere, icī, ictum, 161.
 Ignōsco, ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, 179.
 Il-licio, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
 Il-līdo (LAEDO), ere, -līsī, -līsum, 165.
 Imbuo, ere, uī, ūtum, 173.
 Imitātus, 182, R. 2.
 Immineo, ēre, *to overhang*.
 Im-pingo (PANGO, 160), ere, -pēgī, -pactum.
 In-calēso, ere, -caluī, 181.
 In-cendo, ere, -cendī, -censum, 164.
 In-cesso, ere, īvī (ī), 176.
 In-cido (CAEDO, 168), ere, -cidī, -cāsum.
 In-cīdo (CAEDO, 168), ere, -cidī, -cīsum.
 In-cipio (CAPIO, 157), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
 In-crepo (CREPO, 176), āre, uī, itum.
 In-cumbo (176), ere, -cubuī, -cubitum.

In-cutio (QUATIO, 167), ere, -cussi, -cussum.
 Ind-igeo (EGEO), ēre, uī, *to want*.
 Ind-ipiscor, ī, indeptus sum, 175.
 In-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
 Indulgeo, ēre, indulsī (indultum), 160.
 In-duo, ere, -duī, -dūtum, 173.
 Ineptio, īre, *to be silly*.
 Ingemisco, ere, ingemuī, 181.
 Ingruo, ere, uī. *See congruo*, 173.
 In-nōtesco (181), ere, nōtuī.
 In-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olitur, 181.
 Inquam, 190.
 In-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sedī, -sesum.
 In-sisto, ere, -stitī, 178.
 In-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
 Inter-ficio, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 159.
 In-sto, āre, -stitī, (instātūrus), 178.
 In-sum, -esse, -fuī, 113.
 Intel-ligo, ere, -lexī, lectum, 161, 183.
 Inter-imo (EMO), ere, -ēmī, -emtum, 169.
 Inter-pungo, ere, -punxī, -punctum, 162.
 Inter-sto, āre, -steī, 178.
 Inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, 113.
 Inveterasco, ere, -āvī, 181.
 In-vādo, ere, invāsī, -vāsum, 165.
 Irāscor, ī, irātus sum, 181.

J.

Jaceo, ēre, jacuī, *to lie*.
 Jacio, ere, jēcī, jactum, 159.
 Jubeo, ēre, jussī, jussum, 183.
 Jungo, ere, junxī, junctum, 160.
 Jūrātus, 182, R. 1.
 Juvo, āre, jūvī, jūtum (juvātūrus), 174.

L.

Lābor, ī, lapsus sum, 175.
 Laccio, ere, laccessivī, -itum, 176.
 Lacio, 161.
 Laedo, ere, laesī, laesum, 165.
 Lambo, ere, ī, 158, 183.
 Languo, ēre, ī, *to be languid*.
 Lateo, ēre, uī, *to lie hid*.
 Lavo, āre (ere), lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 174.
 Lego, ere, lēgī, lectum, 159.
 Libet, libēre, libuit (libitum est), *it pleases*.
 Licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted*.

Lingo, ere, linxī, linctum, 160.
 Lino, ere, līvī (lēvī), litum, 179.
 Linquo, ere, liquī, 159.
 Liqueo, ēre, licuī, *to be clear*.
 Liveo, ēre, *to be livid*.
 Loquor, ī, locūtus sum. *Paradigm*, 145, 146.
 Lūceo, ēre, lūxī, 160.
 Lūdo, ere, lūsī, lūsum, 165.
 Lūgeo, ēre, lūxī, 160.
 Luo, ere, luī { lūtum, *to wash*, 173.
 { luitum, *to atone for*.

M.

Maereo, ēre, *to grieve*.
 Mālo, malle, māluī, 189.
 Mando, ere, mandī, mansum, 164.
 Maneo, ēre, mansī, mansum, 183.
 Medeor, ērī, *to heal*.
 Meminī, 190.
 Mentior, irī, itus. *Paradigm*, 147.
 Mereor, ērī, meritus sum, 182, R. 2.
 Mergo, ere, mersī, mersum, 160.
 Mētiōr, irī, mensus sum, 183.
 Meto, ere, messuī (rare), messum, 183.
 Metuo, ere, uī, 173.
 Mico, āre, uī, 176.
 Minuo, ere, minuī, minūtum, 173.
 Misceo, ēre, uī, mixtum, (mistum), 128.
 Misereor, ērī miseritus, (misertus) sum, 175.
 Mitto, ere, mīsī, missum, 166.
 Molo, ere, moluī, molitum, 176.
 Moneo, ēre, uī, itum, 129, 130.
 Mordeo, ēre, momordī, morsum, 168.
 Morior, morī, mortuus moritūrus sum, 183.
 Moveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 174.
 Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 160.
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum(ctum), 160.
 Mungo, ere, munxī, munctum, 160.

N.

Nanciscor, ī, nactus (nactus), 175.
 Nāscor, ī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus) 181.
 Neco, āre, āvī, ātum, 176.
 Necto, ere, nexī (nexuī), nexum, 160.
 Neg-ligo, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
 Necopinātus, 182, R. 2.
 Neo, nēre, nēvī, nētum, 127.

Nequeo, ire, 185.
 Nōtesco, ere, nōtūī, 181.
 Ningo, ere, ninxī, 160.
 Niteo, ēre, uī, *to shine*.
 Nītor, ī, nixus (nīsus) sum, 175.
 Nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, 189.
 Noceo, ēre, uī (nocitūrus), *to be hurtful*.
 Nōsco, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 179.
 Nūbo, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 158.

O.

Ob-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Ob-dormisco, ere, -dormivī, -dormitum, 181.
 Obliviscor, ī, oblitus sum, 175.
 Ob-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdī, -sesum.
 Ob-sisto, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 178.
 Obs-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -olētum, 181.
 Ob-sto, stāre, stitī (obstātūrus), 178.
 Obtineo (TENEEO, 128), ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
 Oc-cido, (CADO), ere, -cidī, -cāsum, 168.
 Oc-cīdo (CAEDO), ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, 168.
 Oc-cino (CANO), ere, -cinuī, 176.
 Oc-cipio (CAPIO), (157), ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
 Occulo, ere, occuluī, occultum, 176.
 Odī, *def.*, 190.
 Of-fendo (164), ere, -fendī, -fensum.
 Of-fero, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, 186.
 Oleo, ēre, uī, *to smell*.
 Olēscō. *See* 181.
 Operio, ire, operuī, opertum, 176.
 Opīnātus, 182, R. 2.
 Opperior, īrī, oppertus (*or* Itus). *Comp.* 175, 5.
 Ordior, īrī, orsus sum, 175.
 Orior, īrī, ortus sum (oritūrus), 184.
 Os-tendo, ere, -tendī, -ten-sum (-tentus), 168:

P.

Paciscor, ī, pactus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.
 Palleo, -ēre, -uī, *to be pale*.
 Pando, ere, pandī, passum (pansum), 166.
 Pango, ere { pepigī, 162, }
 { panxī, 160, } pactum.
 Parco, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus, 162.
 Pario, ere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), 170.
 Partior, īrī, itus, 182, R. 2.
 Pasco, ere, pāvī, pāstum, 179.
 Pate-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 188.
 Pateo, ēre, uī, *to be open*.
 Patior, ī, passus sum, 175.
 Paveo, ēre, pāvī, 174.
 Pecto, ere, pexī, pexum, 160.
 Pel-licio, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
 Pello, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 170.
 Pendeo, ēre, pependī, 168.
 Pendo, ere, pependī, pensum, 168.
 Per-cello, ere, perculī, percusum, 170.
 Percēseō (CENSEO), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsūm.
 Percitus (CIEO), 176.
 Per-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Per-co, ire, periī, itum, 185.
 Per-ficio, ere, -fēcī, fectum, 188.
 Pergo (REGO), ere, perrexī, perrectum, 161.
 Per-petior (PATIOR, 175), ī, perpessus sum.
 Per-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
 Per-sto, -stāre, -stitī, 178.
 Per-tineo (TENEEO, 128), ēre, uī.
 Pessum-do, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 177.
 Peto, ere, īvī (īrī), itum, 156, 176.
 Piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum ēst, *it irks*.
 Pingo, ere, pinxī, pictum, 160.
 Pinso, ere, uī (ī), pinsitum (pistum, pinsum), 172.
 Plango, ere, planxī, planctum, 160.
 Plaudo, ere, plausī, plausum, 165.
 Plecto, ere, plexī, plexum, 160.
 Plector, ī, *to be punished*.
 Pleo. *See* 127.
 Plico, āre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum), 176.
 Pluo, ere, pluit, 173.
 Pluvit.
 Polleo, ēre, *to be potent*.
 Pōno (169), ere, posuī, positum, 179.
 Posco, ere, poposci, 162.
 Pos-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ere, -sēdī, -sesum.
 Pos-sum, posse, potuī, 115.
 Pōto, āre, āvī, pōtum, pōtātum, 176.
 Pōtus, 182, R. 1.
 Prae-cello, ere, -celluī, 176.
 Prae-cino, ere, cinuī, 176.
 Prae-curro, ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, 170.
 Prae-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, sēdī.

Prae-sum, -esse, -fui, 113.
 Prae-sto, -stāre, -stiti, (-stātūrus),
 178.
 Prandeo, ēre, prandi, pransum, 164,
 182, R. 1.
 Prehendo, ere, prehendi, prehensum,
 164.
 Premo, ere, pressi, pressum, 183.
 Prōd-igo (AGO, 159), ere, -ēgi.
 Prō-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
 Pro-ficiscor, i, profectus sum, 175.
 Pro-fiteor (FATEOR, 175), ēri, -fessus
 sum.
 Prōmo (EMO), ere, prōmpsi, prōmp-
 tum, 169.

Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, 114.
 Prō-tendo (TENDO, 168), ere, -tendi,
 -tentum, -tensum.

Psallo, ere, i, 170.

Pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est, *it
 shames.*

Puerāscō, ere, *to become a boy.*

Pungo, ere, pupugi, punctum, 162.

Q.

Quaero, } ere, quaesivi, quaesitum,
 Quaeso, } 176.

Quatio, ere, (quassi), quassum, 166.

Queo, quire, 185.

Querōr, queri, questus sum, 175.

Quiēscō, ere, quiēvi, quiētum, 179.

R.

Rādo, ere, rāsi, rāsum, 165.

Rapio, ere, rapui, raptum, 176.

Raucio, ire, rausi, rausum, 183.

Re-cēnseo (CENSEO, 128), ēre, -cēnsui,
 -cēnsium (recēnsitum).

Recrūdēscō, ere, -crūdūi, *to get raw
 again.*

Red-arguo (173), ere, -argui.

Red-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.

Red-igo (AGO), ere, -ēgi, -actum, 159.

Re-fello (FALLO, 170), ere, refelli.

Re-fero (183, 186), -ferre, -tulī, -lā-
 tum.

Rego, ere, rexi, rectum, 161, 183.

Re-linquo, ere, -liqui, -lictum, 159.

Reminiscor, i, *to recollect.*

Renīdeo, ēre, *to glitter.*

Reor, ēri, ratus sum, 183.

Re-perio, ire, reperī, repertum, 170.

Rēpo, ere, rēpsi, reptum, 158.

Re-sipisco, ere, -sipivi (-sipui), 181.

Re-sisto, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 178.

Re-spondeo (168), ēre, -spondi, -spon-
 sum.

Re-sto, stāre, -stiti, 178.

Restinguo, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 160.

Re-tineo (TENEEO, 128), ēre, uī, -ten-
 tum.

Re-vertor, i, reverti, reversum, 167.

Re-vivisco, ere, vixi, victum, 181.

Rīdeo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, 165.

Rigeo, ēre, uī, *to be stiff.*

Rōdo, ere, rōsi, rōsum, 165.

Rubeo, ēre, uī, *to be red.*

Rudo, ere, rudivi, itum, 176.

Rumpo, ere, rūpi, ruptum, 157.

Ruo, ere, rūi, rutum (ruitūrus), 173.

S.

Salio, ire, (salii), saltum, 176.

Sallo, ere, salli, salsum, 170.

Salvē, *def.*, 190.

Sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, 160.

Sapio, ere (sapivi), sapui, 176.

Sarcio, ire, sarsi, sartum, 160.

Satis-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.

Scabo, ere, scabi, *to scratch.*

Scalpo, ere, scalpsi, scalptum, 158.

Scando, ere, scandi, scansum, 164.

Scateo, ēre, *to gush forth.*

Scindo, ere, scidi, scissum, 168.

Scisco, ere, scivi, scitum, 181.

Scrībo, ere, scrīpsi, scrīptum, 158.

Sculpo, ere, sculpsi, sculptum, 158.

Seco, āre, secuī, sectum, 176.

Sedco, ēre, sedi, sessum, 166.

Seligo (LEGO, 159), ere, -lēgi, -lectum.

Sentio, ire, sensi, sensum, 165.

Sepelio, ire, ivi, sepultum, 176.

Sepio, ire, sepsi, sēptum, 158.

Sequor, i, secutus sum, 175.

Sero, ere, 176.

Sero, ere, sēvi, satum, 180.

Serpo, ere, serpsi, serptum, 158.

Sido, ere, sidi, 167.

Sileo, ēre, uī, *to be silent.*

Sino, ere, sivi, situm, 179.

Sisto, ere, stiti, statum, 178.

Sitio, ire, ivi, *to thirst.*

Soleo, ēre, solitus sum, 182.

Solvo, ere, solvi, solūtum, 174.

Sono, āre, sonui, sonitum, 176.

Sorbeo, ēre (sorp-si), sorbui, 158.

Sordeo, ēre, uī, *to be dirty*.
 Sortior, īrī, sortitus sum, 182, R. 2.
 Spargo, ere, sparsī, sparsum, 160.
 Sperno, ere, sprēvī, sprētum, 180.
 -Spicio. *See ad-spicio*.
 Splendo, ēre, uī, *to shine*.
 Spondeo, ēre, sponondī, sponsum, 168.
 Spuo, ere, spuī, spūtum, 173.
 Squāleo, ēre, *to be rough, foul*.
 Statuo, ere, statuī, statūtum, 173.
 Sterno, ere, strāvī, strātum, 180.
 Sternuo, ere, sternuī, 173.
 Sterto, ere, stertuī, 176.
 -Stinguo, ere, 160.
 Stō, stāre, steti, stātum, 178.
 Strepo, ere, strepuī, strepitum, 176.
 Strīdeo, ēre (ere), strīdī, 167.
 Stringo, ere, strinxī, strictum, 160.
 Struo, ere, struxī, structum, 163.
 Studeo, ēre, uī, *to be zealous*.
 Stupeo, ēre, uī, *to be astounded*.
 Suādeo, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, 165.
 Sub-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Sub-igo (AGO, 159), ere, -ēgī, -actum.
 Suc-cēdo (CĒDO, 166), ere, -cessī, -cessum.
 Suc-cendo (*see ac-cendo*, 164), ere, -cendī, -censum.
 Suc-cēnseo (128), ēre, uī, -cēnsum.
 Suesco, ere, suēvī, suētum, 179.
 Suf-fero, -ferre, sus-tinuī, 186, R.
 Suf-ficio (FACIO, 159), ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
 Suf-fodio (166), ere, -fōdī, -fossum.
 Sug-gero (*see* 171), ere, -gessī, -gestum.
 Sūgo, ere, suxī, suctum, 160.
 Sum, esse, fuī, 112.
 Sūmo (ĒMO), ere, sumpsī, sumptum, 169.
 Suo, ere, suī, sūtum, 173.
 Superbio, ire, *to be haughty*.
 Super-sto, -stāre, -steti, 178.
 Super-sum, -esse, -fuī, 113.
 Sup-pōno (*see* 179), ere, -posuī, -positum.
 Surgo (REGO), ere, surrexī, surrectum, 161.

T.

Taedet, pertaesum est, *it tires*.
 Tango, ere, tetigī, tactum, 162.
 Tego, ere, texī, tectum, 161, 183.

Temno, ere, 169.
 Tendo, ere, tetendī, tensum (-tum), 168.
 Teneo, ēre, tenuī, (tentum), 128.
 Tergo (eo), ēre, tersī, tersum, 160.
 Tero, ere, trīvī, trītum, 180.
 Texo, ere, texuī, textum, 172.
 Timeo, ēre, uī, *to fear*.
 Ting(u)o, ere, tinxī, tinctum, 160.
 Tollo, ere (sustulī, sublātum), 170.
 Tondeo, ēre, totondī, tonsum, 168.
 Tono, āre, uī, 176.
 Torpeo, ēre, uī, *to be torpid*.
 Torqueo, ēre, torsī, tortum, 160.
 Torreo, ēre, torruī, tostum, 128.
 Trā-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Traho, ere, traxī, tractum, 163.
 Tremo, ere, uī, 176.
 Tribuo, ere, uī, tribūtum, 173.
 Trūdo, ere, trūsī, trūsum, 165.
 Tueor, ērī (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 182, R. 2.
 Tumeo, ēre, uī, *to swell*.
 Tundo, ere, tutudī, tunsum, tūsum, 168.
 Turgeo, ēre, tursī, 160.

U.

Ulcisor, i, ultus sum, 175.
 Ungo, ere, unxī, unctum, 160.
 Urgeo, ēre, ursī, 160.
 Ūro, ere, ussī, ustum, 171.
 Ūtor, i, ūsus sum, 175.

V.

Vādo, ere, 165.
 Valē, 190.
 Veho, ere, vexī, vectum, 163.
 Vello, ere, vellī (vulsī), vulsum, 170.
 Vēn-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
 Vēn-eo, ire, ivī (ii), 185.
 Venio, ire, vēnī, ventum, 170.
 Vēnum-do, -dare, dēdī, -datum, 177.
 Vereor, ērī, veritus sum. *See* 143.
 Verro, ere, verrī, versum, 170.
 Verto, ere, vertī, versum, 167.
 Vescor, i, *to feed*.
 Vesperasco, ere, 181.
 Veto, āre, vetuī, vetitum, 176.
 Video, ēre, vidī, vīsum, 164.

Vico, ēre, ctum, *to plait. See 127.*

Vigeo, ēre, ui, *to flourish.*

Vincio, ire, vixi, vinctum, 160.

Vinco, ere, vici, victum, 159.

Viso, ere, visi, visum, 172.

Vivo, ere, vixi, victum, 163.

Volo, velle, volui, 189.

Volvo, ere, volvi, volūtum, 174.

Vomo, ere, vomui, vomitum, 176.

Voveo, ēre, vovi, vōtum, 174.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

192. SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

Lūna splendet, *The moon shines.*

Lūna is the *subject*; **splendet**, the *predicate*.

193. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb :
-u-m, I am; docē-s, thou teachest; scrib-i-t, he writes.

REMARK.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 111): **n** is the first person, **s** the second, **t** the third. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

194. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

REMARKS.—1. The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.

2. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.

3. The Vocative (the case of Direct Address) is not affected by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose. (See further, 324, R. 1.)

Almae filius Mājae. HOR. *Son of mild Maia!*

Audī tū, populus Albānus. LIV. *Hear thou, people of Alba!*

O is prefixed to give emphasis to the address :

Ō formōse puer, nimium nē crēde colōrī. VERG. *O shapely boy! trust not complexion all too much.*

The vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

195. The Subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some other word or phrase used as a noun:

Deus mundum gubernat, *God steers the universe.*

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, *I drove out kings.*


Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, *The sage does not fear adversity.*

Victī in servitūtem rediguntur, *The vanquished are reduced to slavery.*

Contendisse decōrum est. OV. *To have struggled is honorable.*

Magnum est beneficium nātūrae quod necesse est morī. SEN. *It is a great boon of nature, that we must needs die.*

Vidēs habet duās syllabās, (The word) "*vidēs*" has two syllables.

 The following remarks may be omitted by the beginner.

REMARKS.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number: **pauperēs**, *the poor*; **dīvitēs**, *the rich*; **doctī**, *the learned*; whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed: **vir bonus**, *a good man*; **homo doctus**, *a learned person*; **mulier peregrīna**, *a foreign woman*. When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: **cānī** (**capillī**), *grey hairs*; **calida** (**aqua**), *warm water*; **dextra** (**manus**), *right hand*.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: **medium**, *the midst*; **extrēmum**, *the end*; **reliquum**, *the residue*; **futūrum**, *the future*; **bonum**, *good*; **bona**, *blessings, possessions*; **malum**, *evil*; **mala**, *misfortunes*. The plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the singular: **vēra**, *the truth*; **omnia**, *everything*.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns: **aliquid bonī**, *something good*; **nihil malī**, *nothing bad*. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (See 371, R. 2.)

4. Instead of the neuter adjective the word **rēs**, *thing*, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders; so **bonārum rērum**, *of blessings*, rather than **bonōrum** (m. and n.).

5. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English: **adventūs imperātōrum**, *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete: **fortitudinēs**, *gallant actions*; **formidinēs**, *bugbears*; **irae**, *quarrels*.

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are: **nivēs**, *snow(-flakes)*; **grandinēs**, *hail(-stones)*; **pluviae**, *(streams of) rain*; **ligna**, *(logs of) wood*; **carnēs**, *pieces of meat*; **aera** *articles of bronze*; also symmetrical parts of the human body: **cervicēs**, *neck*; **pectora** *breast*.

The Plural is freely used in poetry:

Ōtia sī tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs. OV. *If you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined.*

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person plural for the First Person singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. In poetry there is often an element of shyness.

Librum dē senectūte ad tē mīsimus. CIC. *We (I) have sent you a treatise on old age.*

Sitque memor nōstri necne, referte mihī. OV. *Bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no.*

8. The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: *faba*, beans; *porcus*, pig (meat); *gallina*, fowl (as articles of food); *vestis*, clothing; *hostis*, the enemy; *miles*, the soldiery; *pedes*, infantry; *eques*, cavalry.

196. COPULA.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief Copula is the verb *sum*, *I am*.

Fortūna caeca est. CIC. *Fortune is blind.*

Ūsus magister est optimus. CIC. *Practice is the best teacher.*

REMARK.—Strictly speaking, the Cōpula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: *est Deus*, there is a God, God exists; *rectē semper erunt rēs*, things will always be (go on) well; *sic vīta hominum est*, such is human life; “So runs the world away.”

197. Other copulative verbs are: *vidēri*, to seem; *appārere*, to appear; *manēre*, to remain; *nāsci*, to be born; *fierī*, to become; *evādere*, to turn out; *creārī*, to be created; *dēligi*, to be chosen; *putārī*, to be thought; *habērī*, to be held; *dīcī*, to be said; *appelārī*, to be called; *nōminārī*, to be named. Hence the rule:

Verbs of Seeming, Remaining, Becoming, with the Passive of verbs of Making and Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two nominatives, one of the Subject, one of the Predicate:

Nēmo dives nāscitur. SEN. *No one is born rich.*

Aristidēs jūstus appellātur, *Aristides is called just.*

Servius Tullius rēx est dēclārātus. LIV. *Servius Tullius was declared king.*

Thūcŷdidēs nunquam numerātus est ōrātor. CIC. *Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.*

REMARKS.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nominative with the Infinitive after auxiliary verbs. (424.)

Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo potest. CIC. *No one can be happy without virtue.*

2. On the Double Accusative construction after Active Verbs, see 334.

198. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The personal pronoun is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as for example in contrasts:

Amāmus parentēs, *We love (our) parents.*

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis. CIC. *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

199. Verbs that have no definite subject are called Impersonal Verbs, chiefly relating to the state of the weather:

Tonat, it thunders ; fulgurat, fulminat, it lightens ; pluit, it rains ; ningit, it snows.

REMARKS.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (201) is often used impersonally: **vivitur, people live ; curritur, there is a running.** The subject is contained in the verb itself: **sic vivitur = sic vita vivitur, such is life.** In the same way explain **taedet, it wearies ; miseret, it moves to pity ; piget, it disgusts ; pudet, it puts to shame.**

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an Infinitive or an equivalent for a subject.

3. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Plural of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. So the Ideal Second Person Singular. (252.) To be noticed is the occasional use of **inquit, quoth he**, of an imaginary person :

Nōn concēdo, inquit, Epicūrō. CIC. *I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.*

200. COPULA OMITTED.—**Est** or **sunt** is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles :

Summum jūsum summa injūria, *The height of right (is) the height of wrong.*
Nēmo malus fēlix. JUV. *No bad man (is) happy.* **Quid dulcius quam habēre quicum omnia audeās loquī.** CIC. *What sweeter than to have some one, with whom you can venture to talk about everything?* **Aliquamdiū certātum.** SALL. *The struggle was kept up for some time.*

So also **esse** with participles and the like.

Caesar statuit exspectandam clāssēm. CAES. *Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.*

CONCORD.

201. THE THREE CONCORDS.—There are three great concords in Latin :

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject.
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive. (281, 319.)
3. The agreement of the Pronoun with the Noun (Relative with antecedent.) (616.)

REMARK.—It may be well for the beginner to study these together.

202. AGREEMENT OF THE PREDICATE WITH THE SUBJECT.

The verbal predicate	}	agrees with its subject	{	in number
				and person.
The adjective predicate	}	agrees with its subject	{	in number,
				gender, and
				case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

Substantiva mōbilia (21) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis (198).

Vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. CIC. *True friendships are abiding.*

Dōs est decem talenta. TER. *The dowry is ten talents.*

Ūsus magister est optimus. CIC. *Practice is the best teacher.*

Athēnae sunt omnium doctrīnārum inventricēs. CIC. *Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning.*

Arx est monosyllabum. "Arx" is a monosyllable.

REMARKS.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes :

I. The natural relation is preferred to the artificial (**constructio ad sensum, per synesin, according to the sense**).

II. The nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence :

EXCEPTIONS.—1) Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural : **pars, part; vīs, quantity; multitūdo, crowd**; organized bodies more rarely.

Pars mājor recēperant sēsē. LIV. *The greater part had retired.*

Omnis multitūdo abeunt. LIV. *All the crowd depart.*

2) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject :

Capita conjūrātiōnis virgīs caesī sunt. LIV. *The heads of the conspiracy were flogged.*

3) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death") :

Amantium irae (195, R. 5) **amōris integratio est.** TER. *Lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

2. A superlative adjective defined by a partitive genitive follows the gender of the subject when it precedes :

Hordeum omnium frūgum mollissimum est. PLIN. *Barley is the softest of all grains.*

Otherwise it follows the genitive :

Vēlōcissimum omnium animālium est delphīnus. PLIN. *The dolphin is the swiftest of all animals.*

3. The Vocative is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 324, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject :

Triste lupus stabulīs. VERG. *The wolf is destruction to the folds.*

Omnium rērum (195, R. 4) **mors est extrēmum.** CIC. *Death is the end of all things.*

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate :

Ea nōn media sed nulla via est. LIV. *That is not a middle course, but no course at all.*

Nōn ego illam mihi dūco dōtem esse, quae dōs dīcitur. PLAUT. *That which is called a dowry I deem not my dowry, no, not I.*

When the pronoun is the predicate there is no change. So in definitions.

Quid est Deus? *What is God?*

FORMS OF THE VERBAL PREDICATE.

VOICES OF THE VERB.

203. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive. The latter seems to have been Reflexive in its origin.

204. The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject*.

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject: **occidere, to fell = to kill** (Transitive); **occidere, to fall** (Intransitive).

REMARK.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: **suppeditāre, to supply** (Transitive), **to be, on hand** (Intransitive); **queror, I complain** (Intransitive), **I complain of** (Transitive). When transitive verbs are used intransitively they serve simply to characterize the agent. When intransitive verbs are used transitively it is chiefly with an accusative of the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

205. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

Virgīs caeditur, He is beaten with rods.

The agent is put in the Ablative with **ab (ā)**.

Ā patre caeditur, He is beaten by (his) father.

REMARKS.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: **famē perire, to perish of hunger.**

Ab reō fustibus vāpulāvit. QUINT. *He was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

Vinci ā Voluptāte, to be overcome by Pleasure. CIC.

Poenō milite portās frangimus. JUV. *We break down the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).*

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like Persons.

Ā cane nōn magnō saepe tenētur aper. OV. *A boar is often held fast by a little dog.*

Animals, as instruments, are treated like Things.

Equō vehī, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse); **in equō**, on horseback.

206. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent.

With the Perfect Passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

Rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est. CIC. *I have had the whole thing provided for.*

Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. OV. *Poems—I have none written (I have written no poems).*

With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

Nihil est hominī tam timendum quam invidia. CIC. *There is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.* See 352.

207. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

Alexander Dārīum vicit, *Alexander conquered Darius.*

Dārīus ab Alexandrō victus est, *Darius was conquered by Alexander.*

208. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

Active: **Miserī invident bonīs,** *The wretched envy the well-to-do.*

Passive: mihi invidētur, <i>I am envied,</i>	} ab aliquō, <i>by some one.</i>
tibi invidētur, <i>thou art envied,</i>	
eī invidētur, <i>he is envied,</i>	
nōbīs invidētur, <i>we are envied,</i>	
vōbīs invidētur, <i>you are envied,</i>	
iīs invidētur, <i>they are envied,</i>	

Nihil facile persuādētur invitīs. QUINT. *People are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.*

Ānulis nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur. SEN. *Our seals are more trusted than our souls.*

REMARK.—The same rule applies to Genitive and Ablative. The poets are more free in imitation of the Greek. *Cūr invidēor?* HOR. for *Cūr invidētur mihi?* *Why am I envied?*

209. Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

Omne animal sē ipsum diligit. CIC. *Every living creature loves itself.*

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed:

Lavor, I bathe, I bathe myself.

Purgārī nequivērunt. LIV. *They could not clear themselves.*

Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalīrius herbis. OV. *A sick Podalīrius, I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.*

210. As the Active in all languages is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the Passive in Latin in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: *trahor, I let myself be dragged*; *tondeor, I have myself shaved.*

Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docērī. OV. *He himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).*

211. The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: *hortor, I am exhorting* (Trans.); *morior, I am dying* (Intrans.).

212. Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by *inter, among*, and the Personal Pronouns, *nōs, us*; *vōs, you*; *sē, themselves*: *Inter sē amant, They love one another.*

TENSES.

213. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).

2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*.

The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

214. There are six tenses in Latin :

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

215. An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*. *Continuance* and *completion* require a point of reference for definition; *attainment* does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the *Indefinite* or *Historical Perfect* (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure Perfect*.

216. The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

REMARK.—The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich :

Talia tentābat, sic et tentāverat ante,
Vixque dedit victās utilitāte manūs. Ov.

217.

TABLE OF TEMPORAL RELATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	ACTIVE.	
<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>[Attainment.</i>
PRESENT : scribo, <i>I am writing.</i>	scripsi, <i>I have written.</i>	scribo, <i>I write.</i>
FUTURE : scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i>	scripsero, <i>I shall have written.</i>	scribam (scripsero), <i>I shall write.</i>
PAST : scribēbam, <i>I was writing.</i>	scripseram, <i>I had written.</i>	scripsi, <i>I wrote.]</i>

PASSIVE.

	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>	<i>Attainment.</i>
PRESENT:	scribitur (epistola), <i>The letter is written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta est, <i>has been written,</i> <i>is written,</i>	scribitur, <i>is written.</i>
FUTURE:	scribētur, <i>The letter will be written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta erit, <i>will have been,</i> <i>will be written,</i>	scribētur, <i>will be written.</i>
PAST:	scribēbātur, <i>The letter was written,</i> <i>(writing),</i>	scripta erat, <i>had been written,</i> <i>was written,</i>	scripta est, <i>was written.</i>

REMARK.—The English Passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the Active.

A letter was written: { Continuance, *Some one was writing* a letter.
 { Completion, *Some one had written* a letter.
 { Attainment, *Some one wrote* a letter.

☞ The detailed consideration of the Tenses may be omitted by the beginner.

PRESENT TENSE.

218. The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements *that apply to all time* (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

Auribus teneō lupum. TER. *I am holding the wolf by the ears.*

Universal Present:

Probitās laudātur et alget. JUV. *Honesty is bepraised and freezes.*

REMARKS.—1. The Specific Present is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Present is Aoristic, true at any point.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Present is used of *attempted* and *intended* action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Present this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Imperfect. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the Verb for the Endeavor which lies in the Tense. So in the traditional example:

Quintus frāter Tusculānum vēnditat. CIC. *Brother Quintus is "trying to sell" his Tusculan villa: vēnditāre* itself means *to offer for sale*. Translate: *intends to offer for sale*, if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The ambiguity of our English Passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law; hence, the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done; what is not done is not to be done.

(Deus) **nec bene prōmeritis capitur, nec tangitur irā. LUCR.** *God is not to be inveigled by good service, nor touched by anger.*

219. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in *anticipation of the future*, chiefly in compound sentences:

Sī vincimus, omnia tūta erunt. SALL. *If we conquer (= shall conquer), everything will be safe.*

Antequam ad sententiam redeo dē mē pauca dīcam. CIC. *Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

Exspectābō dum ille venit. TER. *I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.*

220. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a *lively representation of the past* (Historical Present):

Rōmam proficiscitur. SALL. *He sets out for Rome.*

Mātūrat proficisci. CAES. *He hastens to depart.*

REMARK.—**Dum**, *while*, commonly takes the Historical Present: **Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est.** CAES. *While these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar.* **Dum**, *so long as*, follows the ordinary law. (See 566.)

221. The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued into the present*, especially with **jam**, *now*; **jam diū**, *now for a long time*; **jam pridem**, *now long since*. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

Mithridātēs annum jam tertium et vicēsimum regnat. CIC. *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

Liberāre vōs ā Philippō jam diū magis vultis quam audētis. LIV. *You have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourself from Philip.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

222. The Imperfect Tense denotes *Continuance in the Past*: **pugnābam**, *I was fighting*.

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations*; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process*; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items*; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*.

223. The two tenses are often so combined that the general

statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect :

Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat. CIC. *Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

224. The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted*, *intended* and *expected* actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cūriam relinquēbat. TAC. *He was for leaving the senate-house.*

Postumius dēdēbatur. CIC. *Postumius was to be given up.*

Lēx abrogābatur. LIV. *The law was to be abrogated.*

Ōreum et Eretriam Eumenī dabant: senātus libertātem hīs cīvitatibus dedit. LIV. *They were for giving Oreus and Eretria to Eumenes; the senate gave these cities liberty.*

Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalīrius herbīs. OV. (206.)

Aditum nōn dabat. NEP. *He would not grant access (dedit, did not).*

REMARKS.—1. The Imperfect as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Imperfect and Historical Perfect coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Historical Perfect must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

Gorgiās centum et novem annōs vixit. QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Imperfect of such verbs as **dēbēre**, *to owe*, *posse*, *to be able*, is sometimes used in a modal sense. (246, R. 2.)

225. The Imperfect is used as the English Progressive Pluperfect: especially with **jam**, **jam diū**, **jam dūdum**.

Jam dūdum tibi adversābar. PLAUT. *I had long been opposing you.*

REMARK.—As the Historical Present is used in lively narrative, so the Historical Infinitive is used in lively *description*, parallel with the Imperfect. (649.)

PERFECT TENSE.

226. The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:

1. Pure Perfect.
2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

1. PURE PERFECT.

227. The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

The Pure Perfect looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Present looks at but one end; or, rather, beginning and end are one.

228. The Pure Perfect is used:

1. Of an action that is over and gone.

Filium ūnicum habeo, imō habuī. TER. *I have an only son—nay, I have had an only son.*

Tempora quid faciunt: hanc volo, te voluī. OV. *What difference times make! I want her—I wanted you.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action: Resulting condition.

Equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibi reliquī. CIC. *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium—(they are still there).*

Perdidī spem quā mē oblectābam. PLAUT. *I've lost the hope with which I entertained myself.*

Actum est, peristī. TER. *It is all over; you're undone.*

REMARK.—The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: **nōvī**, *I have become acquainted with, I know*; **meminī**, *I have recalled, I remember*; **ōdī**, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate*; **consuēvī**, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed*. This is due to the inchoative character of the Present form.

Ōdērunt hilarem tristēs tristemque jocōsī. HOR. *The long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

229. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

Brūtus sī conservātus erit, vicimus. CIC. *Brutus!—if HE is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.*

Ōtia sī tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs. OV. (195, R. 6.)

230. **Habeo** or **teneo**, *I hold, I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the *maintenance of the result*.

Habeo statūtum, *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.*

Habeo perspectum, *I have perceived, and I have full insight.*

Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī. MART. *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

REMARK.—On the Iterative Perfect, see 569.

2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

231. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.*

Vēnī, vidī, vicī. SUET. *I came, saw, overcame.*

Milo domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est. CIC. *Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.*

Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annos. QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

232. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

233. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:

1. Of an action that *is over and gone.*

Putāram, I had thought (before such and such a thing happened).

2. Of a Resulting Condition.

Massiliensēs portās Caesarī clauserant. CAES. *The Marseillse had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)*

REMARKS.—1. When the Perfect of resulting Condition is translated by an English Present (228 R.), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: **nōveram, I had become acquainted with, I knew**; **memineram, I remembered**; **ōderam, I hated**; **consuēveram, I was accustomed.**

2. The Periphrastic Pluperfect with **habeo** corresponds to the Perfect. (230.)

3. On the Iterative Pluperfect, see 569.

FUTURE TENSE.

234. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future.*
scribam, I shall be writing.

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: **scribam, I shall write.**

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs. OV. *So long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends,*

Quidquid eris, mea semper eris. Ov. *Whatever you shall be (are), you will always be mine own.*

2. Observe especially the verbs **volō**, *I will*, and **possum**, *I can*.

Ōdero si poterō ; si nōn, invitus amābo. Ov. *I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.*

Si qua volet regnāre diū, dēlūdat amantem. Ov. *She who shall wish to queen it long must fool her lover.*

235. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

Tū nihil dicēs. Hor. *You shall, are to, say nothing (do you say nothing).*

Quum volet accēdēs, quum tē vitabit abibis. Ov. *When she wants you, approach ; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

236. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment* : **fēcero**, *I shall have done it*, or *I shall do it* (once for all) ; **videro**, *I will see to it* ; **prōfēcerit**, *it will prove profitable*.

REMARKS—1. Hence, when the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future Perfect is used as a Future :

Nōvero, *I shall know* ; **consuēvero**, *I shall be accustomed* ; **Ōdero, si poterō.** Ov. (234, R. 2.)

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.

When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ejus victōria erit. Liv. *Who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

3. The Future Perfect is frequently used in **volō**, *I will* ; **nōlo**, *I will not* ; **possum**, *I can* ; **licet**, *it is left free* ; **libet**, *it is agreeable* ; **placet**, *it is the pleasure* ; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

Si potuero, faciam vōbis satis. Cic. *If I can, I shall satisfy you.*

4. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment ; one action involves the other.

Qui Marcum Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum confēcero. Cic. *He who shall have crushed (crushes) Mark Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.*

Ea vitia qui fūgerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitāverit. Cic. *He who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.*

Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote *antecedence*, the second *finality*. An Imperative is often used in the first clause.

Immūtā verbōrum collocatiōnem, perierit tōta rēs. Cic. *Change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

237. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

Dē hōc tū ipse videris. Cic. *You may see to that yourself hereafter*

PERIPHRASTIC TENSES.

238. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives.

I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

239. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of *esse* and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. Compare *amātor* and *amātūrus*. The translation is very various:

1. *Scriptūrus sum*, *I am about to write*, *I am to write*, *I purpose to write*, *I am likely to write*.

2. *Scriptūrus eram*, *I was about to write*, etc.

3. *Scriptūrus fui*, *I have been or was about to write* (often = *I should have written*).

4. *Scriptūrus fueram*, *I had been about to write*, etc.

5. *Scriptūrus ero*, *I shall be about to write*, etc.

6. *Scriptūrus fuero*, *I shall have made up my mind to write*, etc. (of course very rare).

1. *Bellum scriptūrus sum quod populus Rōmānus cum Jugurthā gessit.* SALL. *I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.*

2. *Rēx nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat.* LIV. *The king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.*

3. *Cato quā nocte peritūrus fuit lēgit.* SEN. *Cato read on the night when he was about to die* (kill himself).

Dēditōs ultimīs cruciātibus affectūrī fuērunt. LIV. *They would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.*

4. *Māior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta Carthāginiensium futūra fuerat.* LIV. *The Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.*

5. *Plūs mihi detractūrus ero, quam illi collātūrus.* SEN. *I shall in all likelihood take away more from myself than I shall bestow on him.*

6. *Sapiens nōn vivet, sī fuerit sine homine victūrus.* SEN. *The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.*

REMARK.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, *scriptūrus sim*, *essem*, *fuerim*, *scriptūrum esse*, and *scriptūrum fuisse*, are of great importance in dependent discourse.

II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

A.—Of Future Relations.

240. The following periphrases are used both in Active and Passive, but more frequently in the Passive.

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Futūrum est, | <i>it is to be,</i> | } ut, that, with the subjunctive. |
| erat, | } was to be, | |
| fuit, | | |

This circumlocution is used:

1. Rarely in the Indicative.

2. Often in the Infinitive, and necessarily so, when the verb forms no Supine or Future Participle:

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Futūrum esse (fore), | } ut metuās, that you will fear. |
| | |

In the Passive it is more common than the Supine with īrī.

Spēro fore ut contingat id nōbis. CIC. *I hope that we shall have that good fortune.*

In fātis scriptum Vējentēs habēbant fore ut brevī ā Gallis Rōma aperētur. CIC. *The Vcientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls.*

REMARKS.—1. Fore ut . . . is used chiefly with Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; Perf. and Pluperf. are very rare. CIC. AD ATT. xvi. 16 E. 16.

2. The form futūrum fuisse ut . . . is used with Passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntii dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī, existimābant lērīque futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur. CAES. (662.)

3. Posse, to be able, and velle, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of posse are often used instead. (659.)

4. The Subjunctive forms futūrum sit, esset, fuerit, ut . . . are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic subjunctive of Passive and Supineless verbs. (See 512, R. 2.)

Warrant in real usage is scarce.

An utique futūrum sit ut Carthāginem superent Rōmānī? QUINT. I. O. II. 8. 7. (not merely periphrastic).

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 241. 2. In eō est, | <i>it is on the point,</i> | } ut, that (of), with the subjunctive. |
| erat, | } was (Impersonal), | |
| fuit, | | |

In eō erat ut Pausaniās comprehenderētur. NEP. *It was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of) being arrested.*

REMARK.—This phrase occurs in NEPOS and LIVY, seldom in earlier writers.

B.—Of Past Relations.

242. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with *sum*, *I am*, and *fui*, *I have been*, *I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. *Eram*, *I was*, and *fueram*, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and *ero*, *I shall be*, and *fuero*, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

REMARKS.—*Fui* is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: *convivium exornatum fuit*, *the banquet was furnished forth*; *fui* is the necessary form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: *amatus fui*, *I have been loved* (but I am loved no longer). The same principle applies to *fueram* and *fuero*, though not so regularly.

Simulacrum ē marmore in sepulcrō positum fuit; hoc quidam homo nobilis deportavit. Cic. *A marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off.*

Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt. Cic. *The arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground.*

Nec mater fuerō dicta nec orba diū. Ov. *I shall not have been called mother nor childless long.*

C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

243. The combination of the Tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in *-ndus*), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation. (See 150.)

REMARKS.—1. The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive, (*-ndus* for *-ntus*). Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. Compare 439, R.

As *amans* not only = *qui amat*, but also = *qui amet*, so *amandus* = *qui amētur*.

2. The Gerundive follows the law (205), and can be formed only from verbs that take the accusative. Otherwise the Impersonal form must be used.

Parcendum est victis. *The vanquished must be spared.*

TENSES IN LETTERS.

244. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase *Nihil erat quod scriberem*, “I have nothing to write.” This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

TABLE OF PERMUTATIONS.

<i>scribo,</i>	<i>I am writing,</i>	} becomes	<i>scribēbam,</i>
	<i>I write,</i>		<i>scripsī.</i>
<i>scripsī,</i>	<i>I have written,</i>	}	<i>scripseram,</i>
	<i>I wrote,</i>		<i>scripseram,</i>
		or remains unchanged.	
<i>scribam,</i>	<i>I shall write,</i>		<i>scriptūrus eram.</i>

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

Herī,	yesterday,	becomes	prīdiē.
hodiē,	to-day,	“	quō diē hās litterās dedī, dabam.
crās,	to-morrow,	“	posterō diē, postrīdiē.

Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam. CIC. *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiæ.*

Quum mihi Caecilius dixisset puerum sē Rōmam mittere, haec scripsi raptim. CIC. *As Cæcilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome, I write in a hurry.*

Litterās eram datūrus postrīdiē eī qui mihi primus obviam vēnisset. CIC. *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

MOODS.

245. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :


1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

REMARK.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

246. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

 The beginner may omit the Remarks.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts* ; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize*. Such expressions are : *dēbeo*, *I ought, it is my duty* ; *oportet*, *it behooves* ; *neesse est*, *it is absolutely necessary* ; *possum*, *I can, I have it in my power* ; *convenit*, *it is fitting* ; *pār. æquum est*, *it is fair* ; *infinitum*, *endless* ; *difficile*, *hard to do* ; *longum*, *tedious* ; and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation :

Possum persequi multa oblectāmenta rērum rūsticārum. CIC. *I might rehearse many delights of country life.*

Longum est utilitatēs persequi asinōrum. CIC. *It would be tedious to rehearse the useful qualities of asses (I will not do it).*

Ad mortem tē dūci oportēbat. CIC. *It behooved you to be led to execution (you were not), you ought to have been led off.*

Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōsior esse, et id ipsum, quod fēcit, potuit facere diligentius. CIC. *It was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you; and the little she did do (she had it in her power to do), she might have done more carefully*

Quae condicio nōn accipienda fuit pōtius quam patria relinquenda? CIC. *What terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?*

Nil mihi dēbuerat cum versibus amplius esse. OV. *Naught more should I have had (ere then) to do with verses.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect always refer to a special case.

2. The Imperfect as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: **dēbēbam**, *I ought* (but do not); **poterās**, *you could* (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

Poteram morbōs appellāre, sed nōn conveniret ad omnia. CIC. *I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases. (Poteram sī conveniret.)*

At poterās, inquis, melius mala ferre silendo. OV. "*But,*" you say, "*you could* (you do not) *bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent.*" (**Poterās sī silērēs.**)

3. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption.

The Indicative clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Imperfect the action is often really begun:

Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem. CIC. *I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself.*

Omninō erat supervacua doctrīna, sī nātūra sufficeret. QUINT. *Trainings were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice.*

Praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium. CIC. *We had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.*

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjunctive, which is disguised by coinciding with the Indicative in form except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, **quisquis**, *no matter who*, **quotquot**, *no matter how many*, and all forms in **-cunque**, *-ever*, the Indicative employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: **quisquis es**, *no matter who he is, be, may be*; **quālecunque est**, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*.

Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs. VIRG. *Whatever it may be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

247. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstract from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may, can, must, might, could, would, should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power, obligation* and *necessity*, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs: *may, can, might, could*, by the forms of **posse, to be able, licet, it is left free**; *will and would*, by **velle, to will, to be willing**; *must*, by **dēbēre** or **oportet** (of moral obligation), by **necesse est** (of absolute obligation).

Nōstrās injūriās nec potest nec possit alius ulciscī quam vōs. LIV. *Our wrongs no other than you has the power or can well have the power to avenge.* Here **potest** gives the simple affirmation, **possit**, the moral conviction of the speaker.

248. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive

is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses ; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.


REMARKS.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (*subjungo, I subjoin*), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.

2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed :

A. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (598, R. 2.)

B. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive. (510.)

249. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. Hence the division of the Subjunctive into the Potential and the Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone ; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

 The beginner may omit to 259.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

250. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from “may” and “might” to “must.” The negative is the negative of the Indicative *nōn*.

The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future ; the action may be present or future : with Perfect sometimes Past.

Velim, I should wish ; nōlim, I should be unwilling ; mālim, I should prefer ; dīcās, you would say ; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe ; dīcat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, go so far as to say.

Caedī discipulōs minimē velim. QUINT. I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.

Tū Platōnem nec nimis valdē unquam nec nimis saepe laudāverīs. CIC. You can't praise Plato too much nor too often.

251. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (464). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quī in virtūte dīvitiae sint ? CIC. Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue ? (No one).

Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditiōne querentēs ? JUV. Who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion ? (No one).

Apud exercitum fuerīs ? CIC. You were with the army ?

252. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Statement:

Crēderēs victōs. *You would, might, have thought them beaten.*

Haud facile dēcernerēs utrum Hannibal imperātōri an exercitui cārrior esset. LIV. *Not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army.*

Mirārētur quī tum cerneret. LIV. *Any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

Vellem, I should have wished; nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred (it is too late).

Question:

Hoc tantum bellum quis unquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre conficī posse? CIC. *Who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general?*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an Unreal Conditional Protasis. But the free Potential Subjunctive differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the first two sentences above with:

Eum quī palam est adversārius facile cavendō (sī caveās) vitāre possis. CIC. *An open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).*

Nil ego contulerim jūcundō sānus (= dum sānus ero) amicō. HOR. *There is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.*

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Imperfect is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Perfect Subj. is rarely used as the Ideal of the Past.

3. The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after **quanquam** (603, R. 1)

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

253. The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood.

The regular negative is **nē**. **Nōn** is used chiefly to negative a single word.

The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Imperfect and Pluperfect are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Perfect is rare and old.

Stet haec urbs. CIC. *May this city continue to stand!*

Dī faxint = fēcerint. *The gods grant!*

Nē istūc Jūppiter optimus maximus sirit (= siverit)! LIV. *May Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!*

254. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes **Utinam**, *ut* **nam nē**, **utinam nōn**—in poetry also **Ō sī**, *Oh if*.

Utinam modo cōnāta efficere possim. CIC. *May I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors.*

Utinam reviviscat frāter! GELL. *Would that my brother would come to life again!*

Utinam inserere jocōs mōris esset. QUINT. *Would that it were usual to introduce jokes!*

Illud utinam nē vērē scriberem. CIC. *Would that what I am writing were not true!*

Utinam susceptus nōn essem. CIC. *Would I had not been born!*

Ō mihi praeteritōs referat sī Jūppiter annōs. VERG. *O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!*

REMARKS.—1. **Utinam** was originally an interrogative, *How, pray?* and belongs partly to the potential. **Ō sī** is an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form. So in the example. VERG. Aen. viii. 560, 568.

2. For the wish with adverse decision **vellem**, **māllem**, and **nōllem** are often used with Imperf. and Pipf. Subj.

Vellem adesse posset Panaetius. CIC. *Would that Panaetius could be present!*

Nōllem dixissem. CIC. *Would that I had not said it!*

So **velim**, **nōlim**, etc., for the simple wish (546, R. 3).

255. The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations* :

Ita vivam ut maximōs sumptūs facio. CIC. *As I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay).*

256. The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative*—

1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form:

Amēmus patriam. CIC. *Let us love our country.*

Nē difficilia optēmus. CIC. *Let us not desire what is hard to do.*

2. In the Second Person—In the Present chiefly of an imaginary “you.”

Ūtāre, you may use it; **nē requirās**, you must not pine for it.

In the Perfect negatively:

Nē transierīs Hibērum. LIV. *Do not cross the Ebro.*

3. In the Third Person (regularly):

Amet, let him love; **nē amet**, let him not love. (See 265.)

257. The Subjunctive is used as a *concessive* :

Sit fūr. CIC. (*Granted that*) he be a thief.

Fēcerit, si ita vis. CIC. (*Suppose*) he have done it, if you will (have it so).

Other examples with **ut** and **nē**, see 606.

258. The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (*conjunctivus deliberativus*).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

Quid faciam? roger anne rogem? quid deinde rogābo? Ov. What shall I do? shall I ask or be asked? what then shall I ask him?

Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam irent hostibus. NEP. There was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nōs dēfendāmus an obviam eāmus?).

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.

Quō mē nunc vertam? Undique custōdior. CIC. Whither shall I now turn? Sentinels on every side.

Quid agerem? CIC. What was I to do?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

259. The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a prayer.

Abi in malam rem. PLAUT. Go (to the mischief), and be hanged.

Compesce mentem. HOR. Curb your temper.

Dā mihi hoc, mel meum! PLAUT. Give me this, honey dear!

260. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative. The First Imperative has only the Second person; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

Amēmus patriam. CIC. Let us love our country.

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification: so *scītō*, know thou; *mementō*, remember thou; and *habētō*, in the sense of know, remember.

261. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: Patent portae; proficiscere. CIC. Open stand the gates; depart.

General: Jūstitiam cole et pietātem. CIC. Cultivate justice and piety.

262. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

Rēgiō imperiō duo sūnto, *there shall be two (officers) with royal power.*

Consulēs appellātor, *they shall be called consuls.*

Nēmīnī pārento, *they are to obey no one.*

Illis salūs populī suprēma lex esto. CIC. *To them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law.*

Rem vōbis prōpōnam: vōs eam penditōte. CIC. *I will propound the matter to you; do you thereupon perpend it.*

Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est. HOR. *Avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

263. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē** (**nēve**, **neu**), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelīto nēve ūrito, *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.*

Impius nē audēto plācāre dōnīs iram deōrum. CIC. *The impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.*

Tū nē cōde malīs, sed contrā audentior itō. VERG. *Yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARK.—**Nōn** may be used to negative a single word.

Ā lēgibus nōn recedāmus. *Let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws.*

Opus poliat līma, nōn exerat. QUINT. *Let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.*

264. PERIPHRASES.—I. **Cūrā ut**, *take care that*; **fac ut**, *cause that*; **fac, do**, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam primum (317) veniās. CIC. *Manage to come as soon as possible.*

Fac cōgitēs. CIC. *Reflect!*

II. **Cavē nē**, *beware lest*, and **cavē**, with the subjunctive, and **ōlī**, *be unwilling*, with the Infinitive, for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive).

Cavē festinēs. CIC. *Do not be in a hurry.*

Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cavētō. OV. *Only, when you pretend, beware that you be not detected.*

Nōlī vexāre, quīescit. JUV. *Don't disturb her; she's sleeping.*

265. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:

1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

Faciēs, ut sciam, vivēs, *let me know; live on.*

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. OV. *Let a man give everything that he has to his lady-love.*

Quaedam cum primā resecentur crimina barbā. JUV. *Let certain faults be clipped off with the sprouting beard.*

266. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē**.

The Second Person of the Future, with **nōn**.

The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē**.

Hoc facito, hoc nē fecerīs. CIC. *This do, that leave undone.*

Nōn cessābis. CIC. *You must not be idle.*

Puer tēlum nē habeat. CIC. *A boy is not to have a deadly weapon.*

Nē metus quemquam cēperit. LIV. *Let not fear seize any one.*

Misericordiā commōtus nē sis. CIC. *Don't let yourself be moved by pity.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn** is often used in poetry for **nē**, and **neque, nec** for **nēve, neu**.

Aut nōn tentāris aut perface. OV. *Either do not try (at all), or effect (your object).*

Nec, si quem fallēs, tū perjūrāre timētō. OV. *Nor if you (shall try to) deceive a man, do you fear to forswear yourself.*

On the negative **nōn** with a single word, see 263 R. With the Perfect Subjunctive, **neque, nihil, nēmo, nullus** are freely used, as well as **nēve, neu, nēquis, nēquid**.

2. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on the *continuance of the action*; the Perfect, when stress is laid on the *completion*. Hence in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form.

3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

Dōtem darētis; alium quaereret virum. TER. *You should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.*

Crās irēs potius, hodiē hic cēnārēs. VALĒ. PLAUT. *You ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye. Anything decided is regarded as past.*

Nē poposcissētis librōs. CIC. *You ought not to have asked for the books.*

267. The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunc-

tive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("you"):

Corporis viribus utāre, dum adsint; cum absint nē requirās. CIC. *Enjoy your vigor of body while you have it; when it is gone, you must not pine for it.*

268. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

Nōn tacēs? *won't you hold your tongue?* **quīn tacēs?** *why don't you hold your tongue?*

Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae convīva recēdis? LUCR. *Why do you not withdraw as a guest satiated with life?*

269. SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Positive.

2d P. **Audī,** *hear thou;* **auditō** (legal or contingent); **audiēs** (familiar); **audiās** (ideal 2d Person).

3d P. **Auditō** (legal), *let him hear;* **audiat.**

Negative.

2d P. **Nē audī,** *hear not* (poetic); **nē auditō** (legal); **nōn audiēs** (familiar); **nē audiās** (ideal); **nē audiveris;** **nōlī audire.**

3d P. **Nē auditō** (legal), *let him not hear;* **nē audiat;** **nē audiverit.**

TENSES OF THE MOODS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

270. The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

271. 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat. *He may believe* (now or hereafter).

Crēdiderit. *Let him have had the belief* (heretofore), *he may have come to the belief* (now), *he may come to the belief* (hereafter).

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunc-

tive are Past Tenses. The notion of unreality lies in the past tense, rather than in the Subjunctive Mood. Compare 243, R. 2.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification; otherwise the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 510.)

272. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

273. The Infinitive has two uses:

1. Its use as a Noun.

2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

274. 1. As a Noun, the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect.

The Present Infinitive has to do with *continued* action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

The Present Infinitive is used as a subject.

Valēre est vīta, *Being well is life*.

The Present Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of creation (Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs that help the Infinitive into being). (424.)

Metuī quam amārī mālo, *I prefer being feared to being loved*.

275. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a noun.

1. As a Subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expression or in marked opposition to the Present.

Plūs prōderit dēmonstrāsse rectam prōtinus viam quam revocāre ab errōre jam lapsōs. QUINT. *It will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray*.

Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est. OV. *'Twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled*.

So by a kind of attraction with **dēbuit**, *ought*, **decurit**, *became*, and the like, especially in earlier and late Latin.

Tunc decuit flēsse. LIV. *That was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept)*.

2. As an Object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active: so after *velle*, *to wish*.

Nēminem notā strēnuī aut ignāvī militis notāsse voluī. LIV. *I wished to have marked (to mark finally) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

Otherwise it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive):

Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposuisse Olympō. HOR. *The brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus.*

In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment.

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

Dēmocritum nōllem (esse) vituperātum. CIC. *I should rather not have had Democritus abused.*

276. 2. As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

277. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

Dico eum venīre, *I say that he is coming; dicēbam eum venīre,* *I said that he was coming.*

The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense:

Dico eum vēnisse, *I say that he came, has come, used to come;* and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

Dixi eum vēnisse, *I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

REMARK.—**Memini,** *I remember*, when used of personal experience commonly takes the present.

Tum mē rēgem appellārī ā vōbīs memini, nunc tyrannum vocārī video. LIV. *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.* So also **memoriā teneo** and **recordor**, *I remember, I recall.* When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed:

Memineram Marius ad infimōrum hominum misericordiam confūgisse. CIC. *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.*

The peculiar construction with the Present arises from the liveliness of the recollec-

tion. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Perfect may be used even of personal experience :

Mē meminī irātum dominae turbāsse capillōs. Ov. *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.*

278. The Present Participle Active denotes *continuance*; the Perfect Passive, *completion* or *attainment*.

REMARK.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present : **ratus**, *thinking*; **complexus**, *embracing*; **hortātus**, *exhorting*.

279. The Future Participle (Active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum**, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

REMARK.—The so-called Future Participle Passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed. (243.)

SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

280. The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

A.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

Concord.

281. NUMBER: The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number :

Jūs et injūria nātūrā dijūdicantur. Cic. *Right and wrong are distinguished by nature.*

Pater et avus mortuī sunt. TER. *Father and grandfather are dead.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important : (“ My flesh and my heart *faileth*,” Psa. lxxiii. 26.)

Aetās et forma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit. LIV. *Your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.*

Nāvēs et praesidium excessit. LIV. *The fleet and garrison departed.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb : (“ When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you,” Prov. i. 27.)

Rēligio et fidēs antepōnātur amīcitiāe. CIC. *Let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union : (" Your gold and silver *is* cankered," Jas. v. 3.)

Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit. CIC. *The senate and people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives.)*

REMARKS.—1. **Neque—neque**, *neither—nor*, allows the Plural chiefly when the Persons are different :

Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus. TER. *Neither you nor I did this.*

2. A singular subject combined with another word by **cum**, *with*, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural :

Māgo cum omnibus ferē armātis refūgerat. LIV. *Mago with almost all the armed men had retreated.*

Taurus cum quinque vaccis unō ictū fulminis exanimāti sunt. LIV. *A bull with five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.*

282. GENDER: When the genders of combined subjects are different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gender or the nearest.

In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest ; in things without life, the neuter.

The strongest :

Pater et māter mortuī sunt. TER. *Father and mother are dead.*

Mūrus et porta dē caelō tacta. LIV. *Wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

The nearest :

Convicta est Messālina et Silius. TAC. *Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.*

Hippolochus Larissaeōrumque dēditum est praesidium. LIV. *Hippolochus and the Larissaeon garrison (were) surrendered.*

When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

Both as persons :

Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profecti sunt. LIV. *The king and the king's fleet set out.*

Both as things :

Nātūrā inimīca sunt libera civitās et rēx. LIV. *A free State and a king are natural enemies.*

REMARK.—On the neuter as a predicate see 199, R. 4.

Pāx et concordia victis ūtilia, victōribus tantum pulchra sunt. TAC. *Peace and harmony are useful (things) to the conquered, to the conquerors alone are they ornaments.*

283. PERSONS: When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:

Sī tū et Tullia, lūx nōstra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicero valēmus. CIC. *If Tullia, light of my eyes, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.*

REMARKS.—1. The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: **Ego et uxor mea.** *Wife and I.*

2. EXCEPTION.—In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject:

Ego sententiam, tū verba dēfendis. *I am the champion of the spirit, you of the letter.*

Et ego et Cicero meus flāgitābit. CIC. *My Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.*
So regularly with disjunctives. On **neque—neque**, see 281, R. 1.

2. QUALIFICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

284. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: **amicus certus**, *a sure friend.*

II. The substantive in apposition: **Cicero orātor**, *Cicero the orator.*

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns **hic**, *this*, **ille**, *that*, etc. 2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade*: **servus homo**, *a slave person*; **homo senex**, *an old fellow*; **homo gladiātor**, *a gladiator-fellow*; **mulier ancilla**, *a servant-wench*. 3. The genitive (357). 4. The ablative (402). 5. Preposition and case: **excessus ē vitā**, *departure from life*. 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: **rectē facta**, *good actions*. 7. Relative clauses (506).

I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

CONCORD.

285. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case:

GENDER.

Vir sapiens, *a wise man*,
Mulier pulchra, *a beautiful woman*,

Rēgium dōnum, *royal gift*,

NUMBER.

virī sapientēs, *wise men*.
mulierēs pulchrae, *beautiful women*.

rēgia dōna, *royal gifts*.

CASE.

Virī sapientis, *of a wise man.*Mulieri pulchrae, *for a beautiful woman.*Virum sapientem, *wise man.*bone fili! *good son!*rēgiō dōnō, *by royal gift.*mulierēs pulchrās, *beautiful women.*

286. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest:

Om n ē s agrī et maria, }
Agrī et maria om n i a, } *All lands and seas.*

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: *om n ē s agrī et om n i a maria*, *all lands and (all) seas*. Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: *M. et Q. Cicerōnēs*, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero*; *G., Gn., M. Carbōnēs*, *Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo*; otherwise, *M. Cicero et Q. Cicero*, *Marcus and Quintus Cicero*.

287. *Position of the Attribute.*—When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, ordinarily after it.

1. *Fugitivus servus*, *a runaway slave* (one complex).

2. *Servus fugitivus*, *a slave* (that is) *a runaway* (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as *civīs Rōmānus*, *Roman citizen*; *populus Rōmānus*, *people of Rome*.

REMARK.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: *summa aqua*, *the surface of the water*; *summus mons*, *the top of the mountain*; *vēre primō*, *primō vēre*, *in the beginning of spring*; *in mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city*. So also, *reliqua*, *cētera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece*.

288. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first.

All lands and seas, *om n ē s agrī et maria*; *agrī et maria om n i a*; *agrī om n ē s et maria*.

☞ The beginner may omit to 318.

PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

289. The following forms of the Adjective Attribute present important peculiarities.

1. Demonstrative Pronouns.

2. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Indefinite Pronouns.
5. Numerals.
6. Comparatives and Superlatives.

1. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

290. **Hic**, *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean :

1. The speaker himself : **hic homo** = *ego*.
2. The judges in a suit of law : **sī ego hōs nōvī**, *if I know these men* (= the jury).
3. The most important subject immediately in hand : **hic sapiens dē quō loquor**, *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking*.
4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested : **hoc studium**, *this pursuit of mine, of ours*.
5. That which has just been mentioned : **haec hātenus**, *these things thus far = so much for that*.
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned : **his conditionibus**, *on the following terms*.
7. The current period of time : **hic diēs**, *to-day* ; **haec nox**, *the night just past or just coming* ; **hic mēnsis**, *the current month*.

291. **Iste**, *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person) :

Perfer istam militiam. CIC. *Endure that military service of yours.*

Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt. CIC. *At your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

REMARK.—The supposed contemptuous character of **Iste** arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, “the person *at whom*.”

292. **Ille**, *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to **hic**, *this*.

Heu quantum haec Niobē Niobā distābat ab illā. OV. *Alas! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe.*

Ille may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**) : **illud quod initiō vōbīs prōposuī**, *that which I propounded to you at first*.
2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) :

testula illa, *that* (notorious) *potsherd* = *institution of ostracism*; **illud Solōnis**, *that* (famous saying) *of Solon's*.

3. That which is to be recalled: **illud imprimis mirābile**, *that* (which I am going to remind you of) *is especially wonderful*.

4. That which is expected:

Illā diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam. OV. *The day will come when I shall lay aside* (cease) *my mournful strains*.

REMARKS.—1. **Hic** and **ille** are used together in contrasts: as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter*.

When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: **hic**, *the latter*; **ille**, *the former*.

Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adulescentiam reddit. CELS. *Laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one* (the former) *hastens old age, the other* (the latter) *prolongs youth*.

When the former is the more important, **hic** is *the former*, **ille** *the latter*:

Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in nōstrā, illa in deōrum manū est. LIV. *Better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods*.

2. **Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille**, *this man and* (or) *that man* = *one or two*.

Nōn dicam hoc signum ablātum esse et illud; hoc dico, nullum tē signum reliquisse. CIC. *I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all*.

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of **hic, iste, ille**: **hic**, *here* (where I am); **hinc**, *hence* (from where I am); **hūc**, *hither* (where I am); **istic**, *there* (where you are); **illic**, *there* (where he is), etc.

4. The Demonstrative Pronouns **hic, iste, ille**, and the Determinative **is**, are often strengthened by **quidem**, *indeed*. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

Optāre hoc quidem est, nōn docēre. CIC. *That is a* (pious) *wish, not a* (logical) *proof*.

Nihil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satis istōs quidem constantēs sed adhūc sine auctōre. CIC. *Nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true but thus far not authoritative*.

2. DETERMINATIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

293. **Is, that**, is the determinative pronoun, and the regular antecedent of the relative.

Mihi obviam vēnit tuus puer; is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit. CIC. *I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you*.

Is minimō eget mortālis quī minimum cupit. SYRUS. *That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least*.

REMARKS.—1. **Is**, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case.

Bis dat quī cito dat. PROV. *He gives twice who gives in a trice*.

2. **Is**, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: **et is, atque is, isque**, and *he too, and that*

too; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed.

Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiq̄ua. CIC. *We are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.*

Epicūrus ūnā in domō et eā quidem angustā quam magnōs tenuit amīcōrum gregēs. CIC. *What shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and that a pinched-up one!*

3. **Is** does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English *that of*. In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Nōn jūdicīō discipulōrum dīcere dēbet magister sed discipulī magistrī. QUINT. *The master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils, but the pupils according to that of the master.*

Nulla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere. CIC. *There is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.*

M. Coelius tribūnal suum juxtā G. Trēbōnī sēllam collocāvit. CAES. *Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.*

Of course **Hic, Ille,** and **Iste** can be used with the Genitive in their proper sense.

294. REFLEXIVE: Akin to **is** is the Reflexive Pronoun **suī, sibi, sē**. Instead of the Genitives **ejus, eōrum, eārum, eōrum**, the Possessive of the Reflexive, **suus, sua, suum**, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence:

Alexander moriens ānulum s u u m dederat Perdiccae. NEP. *Alexander (when) dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne s u a e. OV. (265.)

On the other hand:

Deum agnōscis ex operibus ē j u s. *God you recognize by his works.*

The same principle applies to the other cases of **is** and of the Reflexive. Hence the general rule:

295. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence.

Ipse s ē quisque diligit. CIC. *Everybody loves himself.*

REMARKS.—1. **Suus**, when used in an emphatic sense (*own, peculiar, proper*), may refer to another case than that of the subject:

Hannibalem suī civēs ē civitāte ējēcērunt. CIC. *Hannibal's own countrymen exiled him.*

Jūstitia s u u m cuique distribuit. CIC. *Justice gives each man that is his own = his due.*

Inque s u ō s volūi cōgere verba pedēs. OV. *And I wished to force the words into their proper feet (places in the verse).*

Suō tempore, at the proper, fitting time. So suō locō:

Cōmoediae quem ūsum in pueris putem s u ō locō dīcam. QUINT. *What I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

2. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.

296. *Īdem*, *the same*, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing.

Īdem is often to be translated by *at the same time* ; *likewise*, *also* ; *yet*, *notwithstanding*.

Cimōn incidit in e a n d e m invidiam quam pater suus. NEP. *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.*

Quidquid honestum est i d e m est ūtile. CIC. *Whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful.*

Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit i d e m. OV. *Nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.*

Epicūrus, quum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram deī dicat esse, negat i d e m esse in deō grātiam. CIC. *Although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendently good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God.*

Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es i d e m. MART. *Crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. *The same as* is expressed by *īdem* with *quī*, with *atque* or *ac*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative :

Servī mōribus iisdem erant quibus dominus. CIC. *The servants had the same character as the master.*

Est animus ergā te i d e m a c fuit. TER. *Her feelings toward you are the same as they were.*

Disputātiōnem expōnimus iisdem ferē verbis ut actum disputātumque est. CIC. *We are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.*

Tibi mēcum in eōdem pistrinō vivendum. CIC. *You have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

Invitum quī servat i d e m facit occidentī. HON. *He who saves a man's life against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he killed him).*

2. *Īdem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

297. *Ipse*, *self*, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others :

Īpse fēcī, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.

Nunc ipsūm, at this very instant, at this precise moment.

Conōn nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tūtō viveret, sed unde praesidiō esse posset civibus suis. NEP. *Conon did not seek a place to live in safely himself, but a place from which he could be of assistance to his countrymen.*

Valvae subitō se ipsae aperuerunt. CIC. *The folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.*

Cato mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsis ante Cicerōnem cōsulem. CIC. *Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.*

REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*.

Eo quō mē ipsa misit. PLAUT. *I am going where mistress sent me.*

2. Et ipse, *likewise, as well*, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

Virtūtēs et ipsae taedium pariunt nisi grātiā varietātis adjūtae. QUINT. *Virtues likewise (as well as faults) produce weariness unless they are flavored with variety.*

Camillus ex Volscīs in Aequōs trānsiit et ipsōs bellum mōlientēs. LIV. *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.*

298. *Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

Sē ipse laudat, *he (and not another) praises himself.*

Sē ipsum laudat, *he praises himself (and not another).*

Piger ipse sibi obstat. PROV. *The lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

Nōn egeo medicīnā; mē ipse consolor. CIC. *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself (I am my only comforter).*

Omnibus potius quam ipsīs nōbīs consuluimus, *we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own.*

Exceptions are common:

Quīque aliīs cāvit nōn cavet ipse sibi. OV. *And he who took precautions for others takes none for himself.*

3. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

299. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

Manūs lavā et cēnā. CIC. *Wash (your) hands and dine.*

Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivo. CIC. *You are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

REMARK.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness*: *suū esse, to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.*

Tempore tuō pugnāstī. LIV. *You have fought at your own time (= when you wished).*

Ego annō meō consul factus sum. CIC. *I was made consul in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul).*

Pugna suū finem quum jacet hostis habet. OV. *A fight has reached its fit end when the foe is down.*

4. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

300. **Quidam** means *one, a, a certain one* (definite or indefinite to the speaker, not definitely designated to the hearer): **quidam rhētor**, *a certain rhetorician*.

In the plural, it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, without emphasis.

Quidam is often used with or without **quasi**, *as if*, to modify an expression:

Est quaedam virtūtum vitiōrumque vicinia. QUINT. *There is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

Nōn sunt istī audiendī quī virtūtem dūram et quasi ferream quandam esse volunt. CIC. *Those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that virtue is hard, and as it were made of iron.*

301. **Aliquis** (**aliquī**), means, *some one* (wholly indefinite), *some one or other*: **fēcit hoc aliquis tuī similis**, *some one or other like you did this*; **aliquī scrūpus**, *some scruple or other*.

In the predicate it is emphatic (by Litotēs, 448, R. 2): **sum aliquis**, **aliquid**, *I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight*, opposed to: **nullus sum**, **nihil sum**, *I am a nobody, nothing*.

Est aliquid fātāle malum per verba levāre. OV. *It is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words.*

302. **Quis** (**quī**), fainter than **aliquis**, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after **quum**, *when*, **sī**, *if*, **nē**, *lest*, **num**, *whether*, **quō the . . .** 400.

Nē quid nimis! *nothing in excess!*

Sī qua volet regnāre diū, dēlūdat amantem. OV. (231, R. 2.)

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. OV. (265.)

REMARK.—**Aliquis** is used after **sī**, and the rest when there is stress: **sī quis**, *if any*; **sī aliquis**, *if some*.

Sī aliquid dandum est voluptātī, modicis convīviis senectūs dēlectārī potest. CIC. *If something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities. Sī quid, if anything; sī quidquam, if anything at all.*

When used with negatives, the negative itself is commonly negated: **Verrēs nihil unquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū.** CIC. (445.)

303. **Quispiam** is rarer than **aliquis**, but not to be distinguished from it, except that **quispiam** is never found in negative sentences: **dixerit quispiam**, *some one may say*.

304. **Quisquam** and **ullus** (adjective) mean *any one* (at all),

and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

Jūstītia nūnqūam nocet cū ī qūa m. CIC. *Justice never hurts anybody.*

Quis unquam Græcōrum rhētorum ā Thūcŷdide quidquam dūxit? CIC. *What Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides?* [None].

Sī quī s quā m, ille sapiens fuit. CIC. *If any one at all (was) wise, he was.*

Est ulla rēs tantī, ut virī bonī et splendōrem et nōmen āmittās? CIC. *Is anything of such importance as that you should lose (for its sake) the splendid title of a good man?*

The negative of **quisquam** is **nēmo**, *nobody*; **nihil**, *nothing* (105). **Nēmo**, however, is sometimes used as an adjective:

Nēmo discipulus, *no scholar.*

The negative of **ullus** is **nullus**, *no, none*, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of **nēminis** and **nēmine**.

REMARKS.—1. On **neque quisquam** and **et nēmo**, see 479.

2. **Nullus** is used in familiar language instead of **nōn** (so sometimes in English): **Philippus nullus usquam.** LIV. *No Philip anywhere.*

305. **Quisque** (from **quisquis**) means *each one*.

Laudātī sunt omnēs dōnātique prō meritō quī s que. LIV. *All were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.*

Quam quisque nōrit artem in hāc sē exerceat. (618.)

With superlatives and ordinals **quisque** is loosely translated *every*:

Optimum quidque rārissimum est. CIC. *Every good thing is rare, more accurately, The better a thing, the rarer it is.* (645, R. 2.)

Quintō quōque annō Sicilia tōta censētur. CIC. *Every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.*

Prīmō quōque tempore, *The sooner the better, as soon as possible.*

REMARKS.—1. **Quisque** is commonly postpositive, almost invariably after the reflexive: **ipse sē quī s que diligit** (295); **suum cūique** (295, R. 1), except when the reflexive is especially emphatic.

2. Nāgelsbach's formulæ:

a. **Nōn omnia omnibus tribuenda sunt, sed suum cūique;**

b. **Omnēs idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimē;**

c. **Nōn omnibus annīs hoc fit, sed tertiō quōque annō;**

d. **Nōn omnēs idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.**

306. **Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other, another*, but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to diversity.

Sōlus aut cum alter ō, *alone or with (only) one other*; **alter Nero**, *a second Nero*.

Alter alterum quaerit, *one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person)*; **alius alium quaerit**, *one seeks one, another another*; **alteri—alteri**, *one party—another party (already defined)*; **alii—alii**, *some—others*. **Alter** often means *neighbor, brother, fellow-man*; **alius**, *third person*.

Alter:

Āgēsīlāūs claudus fuit alter ō pede. NĒP. *Agesilaüs was lame of one foot*.

Alter ā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alter ā. PLAUT. *In one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread*.

Mors nec ad vivōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs: alteri nulli (304, R. 2) **sunt, alter ōs nōn attinget**. CIC. *Death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not reach*.

Alius:

Fallācia alia aliam trūdit. TER. *One lie treads on the heels of another (indefinite series)*.

Divitiās alii praepōnunt, alii honōrēs. CIC. *Some prefer riches, others honors*.

Aliud alii nātūra iter ostendit. SALL. *Nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

Alter and alius:

Ab ali ō expectēs alteri quod fēceris. SYRUS. *You may look for from another what you've done unto your brother (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2)*.

5. NUMERALS.

307. Duo means simply *two, ambo, both* (two considered together), **uterque, either** (two considered apart, as, "They crucified two others with him, on either side one," John xix. 18):

Supplicatio a mb ōrum nōmine et triumphus utrique dēcrētus est. LIV. *A thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed*.

REMARK.—**Uterque** is seldom plural, except of sets:

Utri que [plēbis fautōrēs et senātus] victōriam crūdēliter exercēbant. SALL. *Either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory*.

Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs: utrae que in eā fugā periērunt. CAES. *Ariovistus's wives were two in number; both perished on that flight*.

On **uterque** with the Genitive, see 370 R. 2.

308. Mille, *a thousand*, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive: **mille militēs**, rather than **mille militum**, *a thousand soldiers*; in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive: **duo milia militum**, *two thousand(s) of soldiers = two regiments of soldiers*.

But if a smaller number comes between, the noun follows the smaller number :

3500 *cavalry*, { *tria mīlia quingentī equitēs,*
tria mīlia equitum et quingentī, but
equitēs tria mīlia quingentī, or
equitum tria mīlia quingentī.

309. The ordinals are used for the cardinals with a carelessness which gives rise to ambiguity :

Quattuor annī sunt, { *ex quō tē nōn vidī,*
It is four years, { *that I have not seen you (since I saw you).*
Quartus annus est, }
It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).

REMARK.—To avoid this ambiguity *inceptus*, *begun*, and *exactus*, *finished*, seem to have been used. GELLIUS, N. A. iii. 16.

310. The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

With *singulī* either cardinal or distributive may be used.

Antōnius [pollicitus est] dēnāriōs quingēnōs (or quingentōs) singulīs militibus datūrum. CIC. *Antonius promised to give 500 denarii to each soldier.*

Scriptum eculeum cum quinque pedibus, pullōs gallināceōs trēs cum ternis pedibus nātōs esse. LIV. *A letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).*

Carmen ab ternovēnis virginibus canī jussērunt. LIV. *They ordered a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins.*

REMARK.—The poets often use the distributive where the cardinal would be the rule, and the cardinals are sometimes found even in prose, where we should expect the distributives. *Bīnī* is not unfrequently used of a pair : *Bīnī scyphī, a pair of cups.* On the distributives with *Plūrālia tantum*, see 95, R. 2.

6. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

311. *Comparative*.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with *quam*, *than*, or in the Ablative :

Ignōrātiō futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia. CIC. *Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).*

Tullus Hostilius ferōcior etiam Rōmulo fuit. LIV. *Tullus Hostilius was even more mettlesome than Romulus.*

REMARKS.—1. The Ablative is used only when the word with *quam* would stand in the Nom. or Acc.

Caesar minor est { quam Pompējus, } Caesar is younger than Pompey.
 Pompējō.

Caesarem magis amāmus { quam Pompējum, } we love Caesar more than Pompey.
 Pompējō.

But—

Caesarī magis favēmus quam Pompējō, we favor Caesar more than Pompey (647).

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Nōn adeō cecidi quamvis dejectus ut infrā tē quoque sim, inferius quō nihil esse potest. Ov. I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be lower than you, than whom nothing can be lower.

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative, 397.

4. Quam is often omitted after plūs, amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction.

Hominī miserō plūs quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi. Ter. He has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear.

Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum. Caes. The space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.

More than thirty years old: 1. Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.

2. Nātus plūs trīgintā annīs (rare).

3. Mājor (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.

4. Mājor trīgintā annīs (nātus).

5. Mājor trīgintā annōrum.

Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Caes. A swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).

5. On the combination of the comparative with opiniōne, opinion, spēs, hope, and the like, see 399, R. 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

312. Standard of Comparison omitted.—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre. Cic. The kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].

2. By the proper standard:

Senectūs est nātūrā loquāciōr. Cic. Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.

3. By the opposite:

Sed melius nēscisse fuit. Ov. But it had been better not to have known (than to have known), ignorance had been bliss.

313. Disproportion.—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam prō, than for, and the Ablative, or with ut, that, or quī, who, and the subjunctive:

Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit. Liv. The loss was (too) small for so great a victory.

Mājor sum quam ut mancipium sim meī corporis. SEN. *I am too great to be the slave of my body.*

Mājor sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre. OV. *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

314. *Two Qualities compared.*—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive, or a double comparative:

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens. CIC. *Your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.*

Paullī cōntio fuit vērior quam grātor populō. LIV. *Paullus's speech was more true than agreeable to the people.*

REMARK.—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, mainly post-Ciceronian, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: **fortius quam fēlicius**, *with more bravery than good luck.*

315. *Restriction to the Comparative.*—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

Nātū mājor, *the eldest (of two), the elder*; **nātū minor**, *the youngest, the younger.*

Prior, *the first*; **posterior**, *the last.*

Posteriōrēs cōgitatiōnēs, ut ājunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. CIC. *After-thoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.*

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative **uter**, *which of two? (whether?)*:

Quæritur: ex duōbus uter dignior; ex plūribus, quis dignissimus. QUINT. *The question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more (than two), which is the worthiest. Exceptions are rare.*

316. *Superlative.*—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Maximus, *Quintus Fabius the Great.*

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima vellem. OV. *Would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.*

Maximō impetū, mājore fortūnā. LIV. *With great vigor, with greater luck.*

317. *Superlative strengthened.*—The superlative is strengthened by **longē**, *by far*; **multō**, *much*; **vel**, *even*; **ūnus**, **ūnus**

omnium, one above all others; quam, quantus—potuit, as—as possible.

Ex Britannīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt.

CAES. *Of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent.*

Prōtagorās sophistēs illīs temporibus v e l maximus. CIC. *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times.*

Urbem ūnam mihi amīcissimam dēclīnāvī. CIC. *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.*

Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit. CAES. *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.*

REMARK.—**Quam aequissimus locus = tam aequus quam aequissimus.** (For other expressions, see 645, R. 5.)

APPOSITION.

318. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.

Rhēnus flūmen, the river Rhine.

CONCORD.

319. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender:

Nom. **Hērodotus pater historiae, Herodotus the father of history;**

Gen. **Hērodotī patris historiae: D. Hērodotō patrī historiae.**

Aestus exēsor mūrōrum. LUCR. *Tide the devourer of walls.*

A t h ē n a e omnium doctrinārum i n v e n t r i c ē s. CIC. *Athens the inventor of all branches of learning.* (See 202.)

REMARKS.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition, especially in names of towns: **Coriolī oppidum captum est.** LIV. *Corioli-town was taken.*

Otherwise regular:

Pompējus, nostrī amōrēs, ipse sē afflixit. CIC. *Pompey, our bosom friend, has floored himself.*

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition:

T u u m, hominis simplicis, pectus vīdimus. CIC. *We have seen your bosom bared, you open-hearted creature!*

Urbs meā ūnius operā salva fuit. CIC. *The city was saved by my exertions alone.*

320. Partitive Apposition.—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole:

Cētera multītūdō sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt. LIV. (Of) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.* (Sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.)

321. *Distributive Apposition.*—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with **alter—alter, the one—the other; quisque, each one; alii—alii, some—others.** (Often called Partitive.)

Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est. CAES. (Of) *two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.*

REMARK.—The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

322. **Mihi nomen est.** Instead of the apposition with **nōmen, name,** the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

My name is Cicero, { 1. **Mihi Cicerōnī nōmen est;** most common.
2. **Mihi nōmen Cicero est;** less common.
3. **Mihi nōmen Cicerōnis est;** least common.

Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi. PLAUT. *My name is Arcturus.*

Tibi nōmen insānō posuēre. HOR. *They called you "cracked."*

Samnitēs Maleventum, cui nunc urbi Beneventum nōmen est, perfūgērunt. LIV. *The Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome).*

Nōmen Mercuriī est mihi. PLAUT. *My name is Mercury.*

323. *Apposition to a Sentence.*—Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence:

Admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rem nōn difficilem. CIC. *I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.*

REMARK.—This accusative may follow a Passive or Neuter verb as the object affected. Others regard such Neut. Accusatives as Nominatives.

PREDICATIVE ATTRIBUTION AND PREDICATIVE APPOSITION.

324. Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE: **Filius aegrōtus rediit.**

Ordinary Attribution: *The sick son returned.*

Predicative Attribution : *The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.*

Herculēs juvenis leōnem interfēcit.

Ordinary Apposition : *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

Predicative Apposition : *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

GENITIVE : Potestās ējus adhibendae uxōris, *The permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE : Amicō vivō nōn subvēnistī, *You did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

ACCUSATIVE : Herculēs cervam vivam cēpit.

Ordinary Attribution : *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution : *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE : Aere ūtuntur importāto, *They use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

REMARKS.—1. The vocative, not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

Quō, moritūre, ruis ? VERG. “*Whither dost thou rush to die ?*” = *Whither dost thou rush, thou doomed to die ?*

Notice here the old phrase :

Macte virtūte estō. VERG. *Increase in virtue = Heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

Macte is regarded by some as an old vocative, from the same stem as **magnus** ; by others as an adverb.

2. **Victōrēs rediērunt** may mean, *the conquerors returned, or they returned conquerors* ; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in **idem**, *the same*.

Idem abeunt quī vēnerant, *they go away just as they had come (literally, the same persons as they had come).*

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract noun :

Ego nōn eadem volo senex, quae puer volui, *I do not wish the same things (as an old man) in my old age, that I wished (as a boy) in my boyhood.*

So with prepositions :

Ante Cicerōnem cōnsulem, *before the consulship of Cicero ; ante urbem conditam,* *before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the “*as*” of apposition with the “*as*” of comparison—**ut, quasi, tanquam.** (645, R. 4).

Cicero ea quae nunc ūsū veniunt cecinit ut vātēs. NEP. *Cicero foretold all that is coming to pass now as (if he were) an inspired prophet.*

5. When especial stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements :

Themistoclēs ūnus restitit, *Themistocles alone withstood = Themistocles was the only one that withstood.*

Argonautae primī in Pontum Euxinum intrāvērunt, *the Argonauts first entered the Euxine (Black) Sea = were the first to enter the Black Sea.*

Un a salūs victīs nullam spērāre salutē. VERG. *The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none.*

Fragilem truē commisit pelagō ratem primus. HOR. *He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves.*

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *igno-*

rance, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally : libens, with pleasure ; volens, willing(ly) ; nōlens, unwilling(ly) ; invitus, against one's will ; prūdens, aware ; imprūdens, unawares ; sciens, knowing(ly) ; prīmus, prior, first ; ultimus, last ; medius, in, about the middle ; hodiernus, to-day ; mātūtīnus, in the morning ; frequens, frequent(ly) ; sublimis, aloft.

Ōdero sī poterō, si nōn, in vītus am ābo. Ov. (231, R. 2.)

Plūs hodiē bonī fecī imprūdens quam sciens ante hunc diem unquam. TER. I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before.

A dcurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur. TER. He runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.

Quī prior strinxerit ferrum ejus victōria erit. LIV. Who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory.

Vespertinus pete tectum. HOR. Seek thy dwelling at eventide.

Rārus venit in cēnācula miles. JUV. The soldiery rarely comes into the garret.

So also tōtus, wholly.

Philosophiae nōs tōtōs trādīmus, CIC. We give ourselves wholly to philosophy.

Sōlī hoc contingit sapientī. CIC. This good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of prīmus, and the adverbs prīmum, first, for the first time, and prīmō, at first.

Prīmus: Ego prīmus hanc orātiōnem lēgī, I was the first to read this speech.

Hanc prīmam orātiōnem lēgī, this was the first speech that I read.

Prīmum: Hanc orātiōnem prīmum lēgī deinde transcrīpsī. I first read (and then copied) this speech.

Hodiē hanc orātiōnem prīmum lēgī, I read this speech to-day for the first time.

Prīmō: Hanc orātiōnem prīmō libenter lēgī, posteā magis magisque mihi jējūna visa est, at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterward it seemed to me drier and drier.—Lattmann and Müller.

B.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

325. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

2. QUALIFICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

326. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object.

1. Direct object, Accusative.

2. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of

1. The Genitive case.

2. The Ablative.

3. Preposition with a case.

4. An Adverb.

REMARK.—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

I. EXTERNAL CHANGE.

ACCUSATIVE.

327. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

Deus mundum creāvit, *God made a creation—the universe.*

Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. CIC.

One ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.

Decem annōs Trōja oppugnāta est. LIV. *Ten years was Troy besieged.*

Maximam partem lacte vivunt. CAES. *For the most part they live on milk.*

From the Accusative of Extent arises the Accusative of the Outer Object (Object Affected) :

Deus mundum gubernat, *God steers the universe.*

REMARK.—The Accusative of the Inner Object is the characteristic use of the case; the Accusative of the Outer Object the most common use. It is sometimes impossible to determine which element preponderates; so in verbs compounded with prepositions. The so-called Terminal Accusative may be conceived as an Inner or an Outer Object. Hence the following table is only approximate :

GENERAL VIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

328. I. Inner Object : Object effected.

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

1. In Space.

2. In time.

3. Of Adverbial Relation.

Terminal Accusative

(Point Reached).

} Verbs com-
pounded with
Prepositions.

II. Outer Object : Object affected.

1. Whole.

2. Part (so-called Greek
Accusative).

} Verbs com-
pounded with
Prepositions.

III. Double Accusative: Asking and Teaching.
Making and Taking.

IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind):

In Exclamations.
Accusative and Infinitive.

329. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, *Romulus founded the City of Rome.*
(Object Effected.)

Mens regit corpus, *Mind governs body.* (Object Affected.)

REMARKS.—1. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin. **dolēre**, to grieve (for); **dēspērāre**, to despair (of); **horrēre**, to shudder (at); **mīrārī**, to wonder (at); **rīdēre**, to laugh (at). Especially to be noted is the wide scope of the Inner Object:

Honōrēs dēspērant, *Cic. They despair of honors (give them up in despair).*

Necāta est Vitia quod filii necem flēvisset (541). *Tac. Vitia was executed for having wept (for) her son's execution.*

Conscia mēns recti Fāmae mendācia rīsit, *Ov. Conscious of right, her soul (but laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.*

Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object:

Piscis ipsum mare sapit, *Sen. The fish tastes of the very sea.*

Nōn omnēs possunt olēre unguenta exōtica, *Plaut. It is not every one can smell of foreign ointments.*

2. The Accusative with Verbal nouns, such as **tactio**, touching, is comic.

330. Verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **praeter**, **sub**, **subter**, **super**, and **trans** become transitive, and take the accusative:

All with **circum**, **per**, **praeter**, **trans**, **super**, and **subter**.

Many with **ad** and **in**.

Some with **ante** and **con**.

Pŷthagorās Persārūm magōs adiit, *Cic. Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.*

Stella Veneris ante greditur sōlem, *Cic. The star Venus goes advance of the sun*

Tam mē circumstant densōrum turba malōrum, *Ov. So dense crowd of evils encompass(es) me.*

Eam, sī opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam, *Cic. I will go to see her myself, if it shall seem expedient.*

Consilium multae calliditātis init, *Ov. He engages in (devises) a plan deep cunning.*

Tanais Eurōpam et Asiam interfluit, *Curt. The Don flows between Europe and Asia.*

Mortem obiit, ē mediō abiit. TER. *She went to face Death (died), she left the world.*

Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit. CAES. *Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.*

Populus solet dignōs praeterire. CIC. *The people is wont to pass by the worthy.*

Epaminōndās paenam subiit. NEP. *Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.*

Flūminaque antiqūōs subterlābentia mūrōs. VERG. *And rivers gliding under ancient walls.*

Rōmānī ruīnas mūrī supervādēbant. LIV. *The Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.*

Crassus Euphrātem nullā bellī causā transiit. CIC. *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives :

Āgēsilāus Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit. NEP. *Agesilaüs threw his troops across the Hellespont*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated :

Cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trans Rhodanum, *He threw his troops across the Rhone.*

Sometimes with difference of signification :

Adire ad aliquem, *to go to a man ; adire aliquem,* *to apply to (to consult) a man.*

331. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative.

Faciam ut meī memineris dum vītam vivās. PLAUT. *I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.*

Servus est quī ut antiqūi dixērunt servitūtem servit. QUINT. *He is a slave who, as old-style people said, slaves a slavery = who is a slave that is a slave.*

REMARKS.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute :

Consimilem lūserat jam olim ille lūdum. TER. *He had long before played a like game.*

Cantilēnam eandem canis. TER. *You are singing the same song.*

Mirum atque inscitum somniāvi somnium. PLAUT. *A marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.*

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of nenter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives :

Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat. CIC. *Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.*

Equidem posse vellem idem glōriārī quod Cŷrus. CIC. *For my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.*

Quidquid dēlirant rēgēs plēctuntur Achivī. HOR. *Whatever mad freak the Kings play, the Achivī are punished for it.*

Quid lacrumās? TER. *What are you crying for?*

With transitive verbs an accusative of the person can be employed beside :

Discipulōs id ūnum moneo ut praeceptōrēs suōs nōn minus quam ipsa studia ament. QUINT. *I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers no less than their studies themselves.*

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb, such as **aliquantum**, somewhat ; **nihil**, nothing ("nothing loath") ; **summum**, at most. Especially to be noted are : **magnam partem**, to a great extent ; **id temporis**, at that time ; **id aetātis**, of that age ; **id genus**, of that kind ; **omne genus**, of every kind.

Haec vulnera vitae nōn minimam partem mortis formidine aluntur. LUCR. *These wounds of life are for not the least part fostered by the fear of death.*

Nōstram vicem ultus est ipse sēsē. CIC. *He took vengeance on himself in our stead.*

4. Instead of the Cognate Accusative the Ablative is occasionally found : **lapidibus pluere**, to rain stones ; **sanguine sudāre**, to sweat blood.

Herculis simulācrum multō sudōre mānāvit. CIC. *The statue of Hercules ran freely with sweat.*

332. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an adjective :

Tacitā cūrā animum incensus. LIV. *His soul on fire with silent care.*

Jam vulgātum actis quoque saucius pectus. QUINT. *Now-a-days "breast-wounded" is actually a common newspaper phrase.*

REMARKS.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, and is found chiefly in poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative.

Nēscoit stāre locō ; micat auribus et tremit artūs. VERG. *He cannot stand still ; he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.*

2. Somewhat different is the Accusative with **induor**, I don ; **exuor**, I doff ; **cingor**, I gird on myself ; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained :

Inūtile ferrum cingitur. VERG. *He girds on (himself) a useless blade.*

Lōricam induitur fidōque accingitur ense. VERG. *He dons a corslet and begirds himself with his trusty glaive.*

Arminius impetū equī pervāsit oblitus faciem suō cruōre nē nōscerētur. TAC. *Hermann got through, thanks to his fiery charger, having smeared his face with his own gore to keep from being recognized.*

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

333. When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the Inner, the other the Outer object.

Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and **cēlāre**, to conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

Pūsiōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica. CIC. *Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.*

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. CAES. *Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aedui.*

Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam? (258). CIC. *Why should I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?*

Iter omnēs cēlat. NEP. *He keeps all in the dark about his route, conceals his route from all.*

REMARKS.—1. The Passive form with the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing is sparingly used. **Discere** is more common than **doceri**.

Mōtūs docērī gaudet Iōnicōs mātūra virgō. HOR. *The rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances.*

Omnēs militiae artēs ēdoctus fuerat. LIV. *He had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.*

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

This then is not the only way,

For it is also right to say;

Docere and **cēlare dē.**

Interrogāre dē quā rē,

Posco, *I claim*, and **flāgito**,

And always **peto**, **postulo**:

Take **aliquid ab aliquō.**

While **quaero** takes **ex**, **ab**, **dē**, **quō.**

Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs miserat, quī senātum docērent dē caede fratris. SALL. *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.*

Bassus nōster mē dē hōc librō cēlāvit. CIC. *Our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book.* (So commonly in the Passive.)

Aquam ā pūmice nunc postulās. PLAUT. *You are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).*

3. With **doceo** the Abl. of the Instrument is also used: **docere fidibus, equō**, *to teach the lyre, to teach riding.* **Doctus** generally takes the Abl.: **Doctus Graecis litteris**, *a good Grecian.*

4. **Quid mē vis?** *what do you want of me? what do you want me for?* belongs to this general class.

5. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 330, R. 1; on the accus. neuter of the Inner Object, see 331, R. 2.

334. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae. CIC. *Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

Ancum Marcium rēgem populus creāvit. LIV. *The people made Ancus Marcius king.*

Cato Valerium Flaccum collēgam habuit. NEP. *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.*

Sōcratem Apollo sapientissimum jūdicāvit. CIC. *Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest.*

Athēniēnsibus Pŷthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent. NEP. *The Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.*

Praestā tē virum. CIC. *Show yourself a man.*

Quem intellegimus divitem? CIC. *Whom do we understand by the rich man?*

REMARK.—The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (197). *Reddo, I render*, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, *fiō, I become*.

Habeo, with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have*; in the sense of *hold, regard*, other turns are used:

Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā? PLAUT. *Do you look upon me as a maid-servant or a daughter?*

So *habēre servōrum locō*, (in) *numerō deōrum*, to *regard as slaves, as gods*.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME.

335. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without *per, through*.

1. With *per* to denote entire occupancy (*from one end to the other, all through*).

Sparsī per prōvinciam militēs, the soldiers scattered all through the province.

Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fēcit. NEP. *Phoebidas marched through Thebes*.

2. Without *per* to denote distance, *how far, how long*.

Trabēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs distābant. CAES. *The beams were two feet apart*.

Campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēniēnsium circiter mīlia passuum decem. NEP. *The plain (of) Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens*.

Ā rectā consciētiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. CIC. (327.)

REMARKS.—1. With *abesse* and *distāre*, an Ablative of measure may also be employed:

Milibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse, to be twenty-four miles off.

2. When the point of reference is taken for granted, *ab* (*ā*) with the Ablative may be used:

Hostēs ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuerunt. CAES. *The enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off*.

336. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives *longus, long*; *lātus, wide*; *altus, high* (deep).

Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep.

Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā extruxerunt. CAES. *The soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high*.

337. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without *per*, in answer to the question, *How long?*

Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annōs. QUINT. *Gorgias lived 109 years.*

Tenuisti prōvinciam per decem annōs. CIC. *You have held on to the province for 10 years (10 years long).*

Est mēcum per tōtum diem. PLIN. EP. *He is with me the livelong day.*

REMARK.—*Per* with the Accusative is frequently used like the Ablative of Time within which. *Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.*

So especially with the negative :

Nulla rēs per triennium nisi ad nūtum istius jūdicāta est. CIC. *No matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.*

338. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective *nātus*, *old* (born) :

Fuer decem annōs nātus est, *the boy is ten years old.*

Cyūs regnāvit ānnōs trīgintā; quadrāgintā ānnōs nātus regnāre coepit. CIC. *Cyrus reigned thirty years; (he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.*

ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

339. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an object created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative :

1. In Exclamations.
2. With the Infinitive.

340. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion :

Mē miserum, *poor me!*

Mē caecum quī haec ante nōn viderim. CIC. *Blind me! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions :

Quō mihi fortunam, sī nōn concēditur ūtī? HOR. *What (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?*

Interjections are used :

Heu mē miserum! Alis! poor me!

Ō miserās hominum mentēs, Ō pectora caeca. LUCR. *Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!*

REMARKS.—1. **Ō** with the Vocative is an^a address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Accus. an object of emotion.

2. **Ēn.** *Lo!* and **Ecce,** *Lo here!* take the Nominative:

Ēn Vārus, *Lo Varus!* **Ecce homo!** *Behold the man!*

In the earlier language the Accusative was used:

Ēn tibi hominem! PLAUT. *Here's your man!*

Ecce mē! PLAUT. *Here am I!*

So **Eccum.** *ellum, eccam, eccillam,* in comic poetry.

There seems to be some confusion between the interrogative **Ēn** and **Em** (**Hem**).

Prō takes the Vocative: **Prō dī immortalēs!** *Ye immortal gods!* The Accusative occurs in: **Prō deum** (**hominum, deum atque hominum**) **fidem!** *For heaven's sake.*

Hei! and **Vae!** take the Dative.

Hei mihi! *Ah me!* **Vae victis!** *Woe to the conquered!*

341. The Accusative as the most general form of the substantive, and the Infinitive as the most general form of the verb, are combined so as to present the general notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (537).

The Accusative with the Infinitive is used

1. In Exclamations:

Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī! *Hem, light of my eyes, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear.* (The idea of) *you(r) being so harassed!* So in idiomatic English, *Me write!*

2. As an Object. (See 527.)

3. As a Subject. (See 535.)

REMARK.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative-Locative, but almost every syntactical trace has vanished, and practically it has become an Accusative Neuter.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE LOCAL OBJECT.

Terminal Accusative.

342. The Accusative of the Local Object, *Whither?* commonly takes a preposition, such as: **in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward:**

In Graeciam proficiscī, *to set out for Greece.*

REMARKS.—1. The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical: **Italiam vēnit.** VERG. *He came to Italy.*

2. Names of Towns and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place *Whither?* without a preposition. So also **rūs,** *into the country;* **domum, domōs,** *home.*

For further explanations, see 410.

DATIVE.

343. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always implies an object effected which may be contained in the verb or expressed.

Nēmō errat ūnī sibi. SEN. *No one errs (makes mistakes) to, for himself alone.*

Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nullī. MART. *Fortune to many gives too much, enough to none.*

REMARKS.—1. In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct: "He shewed *me* (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed *me* (Acc.) to the priest. Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions.

2. When parts of the body and the like are involved, the English possessive is often a convenient though not an exact translation.

Tuō virō oculī dolent. TER. *Your husband's EYES ache.* Nearer: *Your husband has a pain in the eyes.* **Tuī virī oculī.** *Your HUSBAND'S eyes.*

DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.

344. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, *to, for, from.* This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive.

Active Form :

To : **Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, recta consilia aegrōtīs damus.** TER. *Readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.*

FOR : **Frangam tonsōrī crūra manūsque simul.** MART. *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.*

FROM : **Somnum mihi adēmit.** CIC. *It took my sleep away from me.*

Passive Form :

Perpetuus nullī datur ūsus. HOR. *Perpetual enjoyment (of a thing) is given to no one.*

Immerītīs franguntur crūra caballīs. JUV. *The innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.*

Arma adimuntur militibus. LIV. *The soldiers have their arms taken from them.*

Domus pulchra dominīs aedificātur nōn mūrībus. CIC. *A handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*

REMARKS.—1. *For* is nearer the Dative than *To*; but *for* (in defence of) is **prō**: **prō patriā morī, to die for one's country.** *To* (with a view to) is **ad** or **in**, and when the idea of motion is involved the preposition must be used, even with **dare**, which gives its name to the Dative :

Hostis est uxor invita quae ad virum nuptum datur. PLAUT. *An enemy is the wife who is given to a man in marriage against her will.*

Litterās alicuī dare, *to give one a letter (to carry or to have).*

Litterās ad aliquem dare, *to indite a letter to one.*

Rogās ut mea tibi scripta mittam. CIC. *You ask me to send you my writings (you wish to have them).*

Librōs jam pridem ad tē misissem si esse eēdendōs putāssem. CIC. *I should have sent the books to you long since if I had thought they ought to be published.*

2. *From* is allowable, and even then merely approximate, when the relation of Personal Interest is involved, otherwise the Ablative is used. Both combined in

Aegrōtō dominō (Dat.) dēduxit corpore (Abl.) febrēs. HOR. *From the sick master's body drained the ague (for the sick master from his body).*

3. The poets are more free in their use of the Dative, inasmuch as their personifications are bolder :

Karthāginī jam nōn ego nūntiōs mittam superbōs. HOR. *Carthage no more shall I send haughty tidings.*

Jam satis terrīs nivis atque dirae grandinis misit pater. HOR. *Full, full enough of snow and dire hail the Sire hath sent the land.*

The extreme is reached when the Dative follows *ire* and the like :

It caelō clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum. VERG. *Mounts to high heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

345. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, such as : **prōdesse,** *to do good* ; **nocēre,** *to do harm* ; **indulgēre,** *to give up* ; **cēdere,** *to yield* ; **servīre,** *to be a slave* ; **pārēre,** *oboedire,* *to be obedient* ; **crēdere,** *to lend belief* ; **ignōscere,** *to grant forgiveness* ; **placēre,** *to give pleasure* ; **imperāre,** *to give orders* ; **resistere,** *to make resistance.*

Nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs. OV. *And the arts which do good to all do none to their master.*

Verba nōbīs magis nocent, minus prōsunt nostra quam aliēna. QUINT. *Our own words do us more harm (and) less good than the words of others.*

Indulsit lacrimīs. OV. *She gave free course to her tears.*

Turpe servīre puellae. OV. *It is disgraceful to play the slave to a girl.*

Tū nē cēde malīs. VERG. *Yield not thou to misfortunes.*

Mundus deō pārēt et huīc oboediunt maria terraeque. CIC. *The universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.*

Nimium nē crēde colōri. VERG. *Trust not complexion all too much.*

Ignōsce timōrī. PROP. *Grant pardon to my fear.* (Be to my fear as you knew it not.)

Cuī placeō prōtinus ipsa placet. OV. *The girl I please straight pleases herself.*

Reliquum est ut tūte tibi imperēs. CIC. *It remains that you give orders yourself (have absolute command over yourself).*

Arbor resistit ventīs. OV. *The tree offers resistance to the winds.*

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are : **aequāre**, to be equal ; **debre** (to distinguish), to be becoming ; **dēficere**, to be wanting ; **juvāre**, to be a help ; **ibēre**, to order ; and **vetāre**, to forbid, which take the Accusative :

Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multī, aequāvit nēmo. PLIN. *That style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.*

Forma virōs neglecta decet. OV. *A careless beauty is becoming to men.*

Mēdiēs dēficiat. CIC. *The day would fail me.*

Fortēs fortūna adjuvat. TER. *Fortune favors the brave.*

On **jubeo** and **veto** see 424, R. 3. **Fīdo** and **confido** take the Ablative as well as the active.

2. The Dative use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So **ūbere alicuī**, to marry a man (to veil for him) ; **medēri alicuī**, to heal (to take one's easures for) a man ; **supplicō**, I beg (I bow the knee to) ; **persuādeo**, I persuade (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally : (8).

Quī invident egent, illī quibus invidētur rem habent. PLAUT. *Those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.*

DATIVE AND VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

346. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions

ad, ante, con, in, inter,
ob, post, prae, sub and super,

take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an accusative case besides.

Pelopidās omnibus periculīs adfuit. NEP. *Pelopidas was present to help) in all dangers.*

Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit. PLAUT. *Virtue goes before all things.*

Nōn omnis aetās, Lūde, lūdō convenit. PLAUT. *Not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.*

At lupus et turpēs instant morientibus ursī. OV. *But the wolf and foul bears press the dying hard.*

Probus invidet nēminī. CIC. *The upright man (looks hard at) envies no one.*

Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Salamīnem. NEP. *Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis.*

Obstā principiis. OV. *Oppose the beginnings.*

Hannibal Alexandrō Magnō nōn postpōnendus est. JUST. *Hannibal is not to be put below Alexander the Great.*

Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus. CAES. *At the head of all the Druids is one man.*

Blanda quiēs victis fūrtim subrēpsit ocellis. OV. *Caressing sleep crept stealthily o'er her vanquished eyes.*

Miseris succurrere discō. VERG. *I learn to succor the wretched.*

Anatum ōva gallinis saepe suppōnimus. CIC. *We often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).*

Lucumo superfuit patri. LIV. *Lucumo survived his father.*

So with Transitive Verbs, compounded with **dē** and **ex**.

Caesar Dējotarō tetrarchiam ēripuit, eidemque dētraxit Armeniam. CIC. *Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped from him Armenia.*

REMARKS.—1. When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated with its proper case:

Adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum, *the ship sticks to the rock.*

Ājāx incubuit in gladium, *Ajax fell on his sword.*

Congredī cum hoste, *to engage the enemy.*

Dētrahere ānulum dē digitō, *to draw a ring from one's finger.*

The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period is not rigidly observed. Compounds with **cum** (**con-**) commonly repeat the preposition: always **commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō,** *to communicate something to a man* (share it with him).

2. The analogy of this class of verbs, which imply Nearness, is followed in poetry and later prose by **haereo**, **misceo**, **jungo**, and others.

Haeret laterī lētālis arundō. VERG. *Sticks to the side the lethal shaft.*

Quod haerēre in equō senex posset (542) **admīrārī solēbāmus.** CIC. *We used to wonder that the old man could stick to his horse.*

Miscē stultitiam consiliis brevem. HOR. *Mix with sense a little nonsense (add to sense a little spice of nonsense).*

Nōn potest amor cum timōre miscēri. SEN. *Love cannot mingle with fear.*

Jungitur Ursidīō. JUV. *She is yoked to Orson.*

Junctus is found in Cicero with the Dative.

VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

347. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and with the Dative.

Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference; sometimes the Dative emphasizes the personal relation.

Comitor aliquem, *I accompany a man;* **comitor alicuī,** *I act as com-*

panion to a man; **adūlor**, generally Accusative, *I fawn on*; **aemulor**, *I rival, I am a rival*; **praestōlor**, *I wait for*.

Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case :

Cavēre alicuī, *to take precautions for* } *some one.*
aliquem, *against* }

Quique aliīs cāvīt nōn cavet ipse sibi. OV. (298.)

Hīc niger est, hunc tū, Rōmāne, cavētō. HOR. *He is a black fellow* ;
against him be thou on thy guard, oh Roman !

Metuere alicuī, *to fear for* } *some one.*
aliquem, *to dread* }

So all Verbs of Fearing.

Consulere alicuī, *to take measures for, consult the interest of* } *some one.*
aliquem, *to consult* }

Convenire alicuī, *to be suitable for* } *some one.*
aliquem, *to meet* }

Moderārī } **alicuī rei**, *to moderate* } *a matter.*
Temperāre } *to set bounds to* }
aliquid, *to manage* }

To be noticed are the constructions of **invideo**, *I envy*.

Invidēre alicuī aliquid (CIC.) } *to begrudge a man a thing.*
 (in) **aliquā rē** }

alicūjus rei (once in Horace).

alicūjus alicuī rei, *to envy something belonging to a man.*

Nōn invīdērunt laudēs suās mulieribus virī Rōmānī. LIV. *The men of Rome did not begrudge the women the honors that were due them.*

Invidet igne rogi miseris. LUCAN. *Begrudges the hapless men the funeral fire.*

Vacāre rei } *to be at leisure for*
 } *to attend to* } *a matter.*

Vacāre rē, ā rē, *to be at leisure from* }

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF GIVING AND PUTTING.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

Dōno tibi librum, *I present (to) you a book.*

Dōno tē librō, *I present you with a book.*

Circumdo } **urbī mūrū**, *I put round the city a wall.*
 } **urbeīm mūrō**, *I surround the city with a wall.*

So also **aspergere**, *to besprinkle and to sprinkle on* ; **impertire**, *to endow*

and *to give*; *induere*, *to clothe* and *to put on*; *exuere*, *to strip off* and *to strip off*; *miscēre*, *to mix* and *to mix in*.

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

349. *Esse*, *to be*, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb *to have*:

Mihi est amīcus, *I have a friend*.

An nēscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs? OV. *Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?*

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of *esse* with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner:

Caesar amīcus est mihi, *Caesar is a friend to me* (*amīcus meus*, MY friend, friend of MINE).

2. The Dative is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dative is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Genitive characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic.

Latīni concēdunt Rōmam caput Latīō esse. LIV. *The Latins concede that Latium has its capital in ROME.* (*Latīi*: that LATIUM's capital was Rome.)

3. On the attraction of the Dative with *nōmen esse* (322).

4. The possession of qualities is expressed by *in* and the Ablative or some other turn:
In Cicerōne magna fuit ēloquentia, *Cicero had great eloquence*.

Cimon habēbat satis ēloquentiae. NEP. *Cimon had eloquence enough*.

DATIVE OF THE OBJECT FOR WHICH.

350. Certain verbs take the Dative of the *Object for Which* (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the *Personal Object For Whom*, or *To Whom*, as in the legal phrase, *cui bonō?* *To whom is it (for) an advantage? = who is advantaged?**

Nimia fidūcia magnaē cala mitātī solet esse. NEP. *Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity*.

Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur. SALL. *Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present*.

Paupertās prob rō habērī coepit. SALL. *Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace*.

Pausaniās rēx Lacedaemoniōrum vēnit Atticīs auxiliō. NEP. *Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Attics*.

Vitiō mihi dant quod hominis necessāriū mortem graviter fero.

* Such verbs are: *esse*, *to be*; *fiērī*, *to become*, *to turn out*; *dare*, *to put*; *mittere*, *to send*; *accipere*, *to receive*; *venire*, *to come*; *relinquere*, *to leave*; *habēre*, *to hold*; *vertere*, *to interpret*; *dūcere*, *to count*, and the like.

MATIUS ap. Cic. *They charge it to me as a fault that I resent the murder of me so near to me.*

Caesar receptuī canī jussit. CAES. *Caesar ordered a retreat to be ounded.*

REMARK.—The origin of this usage seems to be mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons.

Quem fors diērum eumque dabit lucrū appōne. HOR. *“Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit.”*

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 430.

ETHICAL DATIVE.

351. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and Old English) is confined to the personal pronouns.

Tū mihi Antōnii exemplō istius audāciam dēfendis? CIC. *Do you defend me (to my face) by Antony's example that fellow's audacity?*

Ecce tibi Sēbōsus! CIC. *Here's your Sebosus!* “She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss *you* morning nor evening prayer.”—SHAKESPEARE.

Et quōscunque meō fēcisti nōmine versūs, ūre mihi, laudēs dēsine labēre meās. PROP. *And whatever verses you have made on my account, turn them me (I beg); cease to keep praises of me.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is **sibi velle**, *to want, to mean*: **Quid tibi vis, mulier?** HOR. *What do you want, woman?* **Quid sibi vult haec oratio?** *What does this speech mean?*

DATIVE OF THE AGENT.

352. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 206.)

Rēs mihi tōta prōvīsa est. CIC. *I have had the whole matter provided for.*

Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. OV. *I have no poems written, (therefore) have written no poems.*

REMARK.—Instances of this Dative with the Tenses of continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation:

Barbarus hic ego sum quia nōn intellegor ulli. OV. *I am a barbarian here because I can't make myself understood to any one.*

Whenever an Adjective or an equivalent is used, the Dative Plural may be an Ablative:

Sic dissimillimis bestiolis communiter cibus quaeritur. CIC. *So, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common.*

Carmina quae scribuntur aquae pōtōribus. HOR. *Poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.*

Cēna ministrātur pueris tribus. HOR. *Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.*

353. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative.

Hoc mihi faciendum est, *I have this to be done (this is to be done by me, I must do this).*

Est mala sed cūctis ista terenda via. PROP. *That is a bad road, but one all have to travel.*

Dēspēranda tibi salvā concordia socrū. JUV. *You must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

Compare the Dative with verbals in **-bilis : mihi amābilis,** *lovable in my eyes.*

REMARK.—When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with **ab (ā)** is employed for the sake of clearness :

Cīvibus ā vōbis consulendum. CIC. *The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.*

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of **ab.**

Linguae moderandum est tibi. PLAUT. *You must put bounds to your tongue.*

DATIVE OF PARTICIPLES.

354. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes.

Phasēlis conspicitur p̄ma terrārum Rhodum ā Ciliciā petentibus. LIV. *Phaselis is the first land sighted as you make for Rhodes from Cilicia (to people as they make for Rhodes).*

In ūniversum aestimanti (= Sī aestimēs) plūs penes peditem rōboris. TAC. *If you look at it as a whole, there is more real strength in the infantry.*

REMARK.—Notice the Greekish phrase : **mihi volentī est,** *I am willing for it to be so.*

DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

355. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives :

Jūstitia est obtemperātio lēgibus. CIC. *Justice is obedience to the laws.*

REMARK.—Otherwise the Dative must have a verb to produce the Object Effected.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

356. Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative :

Rāra avis in terrīs nigrōque simillima cyncnō. JUV. *A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.*

Nōn ego sum laudī nōn nātus idōneus armīs. PROP. *I am not fitted by nature for glory, not fitted for arms.*

Ūtilis urbī. HOR. *Useful to the city.*

Amīca lutō sūs. HOR. *A hog, devoted to the mire.*

Semper, tū scīto, flamma fūmō est proximā. PLAUT. *Bear thou in mind, that fire is aye next door to smoke.*

Testis id dicit quod illī causae maximē est aliēnum. CIC. *The witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: **amicus**, friend; **affinis**, connection; **aequālis**, contemporary; **aliēnus**, foreign, strange; **cognātus**, kinsman; **commūnis**, common; **contrārius**, opposite; **pār**, match; **proprius**, **pecūliāris**, own, peculiar; **similis**, like; ("we ne'er shall look upon his like again"), especially of gods and men; **sacer**, set apart, sacred; **superstes**, survivor.

Dominī similis es. TER. *You are like your master.*

Virtūte sis pār dispār fortūnis patris. ATTIIUS. *Be thou thy father's match in valor, not in luck.*

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Accusative with **in**, **ergā**, **adversus**:

Manlius fuit severus in filium. CIC. *Manlius was severe toward his son.*

Mē esse scit ergā sē benevolū. PLAUT. *He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.*

Adversus deōs immortālēs impiī jūdicandī sunt. CIC. *They are to be judged impious toward the immortal gods.*

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Accusative with **ad**, to:

Homo ad nullam rem ūtilis. CIC. *A good-for-nothing fellow.*

This is the more common construction with adjectives of fitness.

4. **Propior**, nearer, **proximus**, next, are construed also (like **prope**, near) with the Accusative and the Ablative with **ab**, off:

Propius est fidem, it is nearer belief, i. e., more likely.

Quī tē proximus est, he who is next to you.

Proximus ā tectis ignis dēfenditur aegrē. OV. *A fire next door is kept off with difficulty (is hard to keep off).*

5. **Aliēnus**, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without **ab** (ā):

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum puto. TER. *I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.*

6. In poetry, **idem**, the same, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative.

Invitū quī servat idem facit occidentī. HOR. (296, R. 1.)

7. Derived adverbs take the Dative.

II. INTERNAL CHANGE.

GENITIVE.

357. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are :

The Possessive case :

Domus rēgis, *the king's palace.*

The Objective case with *of* :

Domus rēgis, *the palace of the king.*

Substantives used as adjectives or in composition :

Arbor abietis, *fir-tree.*

REMARKS.—1. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (361, R. 1.)

Patriae quis exsul sē quoque fūgit? HOR. *What exile from his country ever fled himself as well?*

Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgae reliquit. LIV. *He left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague.*

Via mortis. LIV. *The death-path, the way to death.* Elsewhere : **via ad mortem.**

2. An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute :

Vernī temporis suāvitās, *the sweet spring-time.*

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with *of* :

Ante Rōmam conditam, *before the founding of Rome.* (324, R. 3.)

Notice also **hīc metus**, *this fear = fear of this*, and kindred expressions.

358. The Genitive is employed :

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

REMARK.—The Locative of the Second Declension coincides in form with the Genitive, and is generally treated under the head of the Genitive. (See 412.)

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

359. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case :

Vitium nimiae tarditātis. QUINT. *The fault of excessive slowness.*

Virtūs continentiae. CIC. *The virtue of self-control.*

So especially with **vōx**, *expression* ; **nōmen**, *name* ; **verbum**, *word, verb* : **vōx voluptātis**, *the word "pleasure,"* **nōmen rēgis**, *the name or title of king.*

Sulla nōmen Fēlicis assumpsit. VELL. *Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky."*

REMARK.—So also occasionally other words, such as :

Urbs Rōmae, *the city of Rome.*

Arbor abietis, *fir-tree.*

Sprētae injūria formae. VERG. *The insult of despised beauty.*

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

Genitive of Property.

360. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel :

Domus rēgis = domus rēgia, *the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace.*

REMARKS.—1. The adjective form is often preferred. So always with the possessive pronoun : amicus meus, *a friend of mine* ; canis aliēnus, *a strange dog, another man's dog* ; filius herilis, *master's son*. So of cities : Thalēs Milēsius, *Thales of Miletus*.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. Statua Myrōnis, *Myron's statue*, may mean : 1. A statue which Myron owns ; 2. Which Myron has made ; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Observe the brief expressions : Ventum erat ad Vestae, *We (they) had come to Vesta's (i. e., temple, aedem)* ; Hasdrubal Gisgōnis, *Gisgo's Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal Gisgo's son* (as it were, *Hasdrubal O' Gisgo*) ; Flaccus Claudiī, *Claudius's Flaccus = Flaccus the slave or freedman of Claudius*.

4. The chorographic (geographic) Genitive is rare and late :

Rēx Chalcidem Euboeae vēnit. LIV. *The king came to Chalcis of (in) Euboea.*

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE GENITIVE.

361. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive : amor Deī, *the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves).

2. Passive or Objective Genitive : amor Deī, *love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively* : *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin :

Voluntās prōvinciae ergā Caesarem, *the good-will of the province toward Caesar*.

Odiū in hominum ūniversum genus, *Hate toward all mankind*.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive :

Quanta sit aviditās hominum tālis victōriae scio. CIC. *How great the eagerness of men for such a victory is, I know.*

362. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns, except nōstrum and vestrum, is used as the Passive Genitive :

Amor meī, *love to me.*

Dēsiderium tuī, *longing for thee.*

Memoria nostrī, *memory of us (our memory).*

REMARK.—**Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as Partitive Genitives :

Magna pars nostrum, *a great part of us ; uterque vestrum*, *either (both) of you.*

Nostrī melior pars means *the better part of our being, our better part.*

With **omnium**, the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** must be used.

363. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive.

Amor meus, *my love (the love which I feel).*

Dēsiderium tuum, *your longing (the longing which you feel).*

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive :

Hoc negōtium meā ipsius (sōlius, ūnius) operā perfectum est. *This business was finished by my exertions alone.*

REMARK.—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: **dēsiderium tuum**, *longing for thee ; injūria tua*, *your wrong* (“The deep damnation of *his* taking off”).

GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

364. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent :

Mitis ingenii juvenis. LIV. *A youth of mild disposition.*

Homo nihili (= nullius pretii). PLAUT. *A fellow of no account.*

Trīdūi via. CAES. *A three days' journey.*

Nōn multī cibi hospitem accipiēs, multī joci. CIC. *You will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.*

REMARK.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being found chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space ; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (402.)

GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

365. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates :

Domus est rēgis, *the house is the king's.*

Vir est magnī ingenii, *the man is (one) of great genius.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

Hūjus erō vivus. mortuus hūjus erō. PROP. *Hers I shall be, living ; dead, hers I shall be.*

Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt viri fiunt. CIC. *All that was the wife's (property) becomes the husband's.*

Is [Herculēs] dicēbātur esse Myrōnis. CIC. *That (statue of Hercules) was said to be Myron's (work).*

Nōlae senātus Rōmānorum, plēbs Hannibalis erat. LIV. *At Nola the senate was on the side of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal's.*

Damnatio est iudicium, paena legis, *Condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's.*

Est animi ingenui cui multum debeas eidem plurimum velle debere, CIC. *It shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him to whom you already owe much.*

Pauperis est numerare pecus. *'Tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('Tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).*

Stultitiae est, it is folly; Moris est, it is customary.

So also with **facere, to make** (cause to be): **Rōmānae diciōnis facere, to bring under the Roman sway.**

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form :

Amentis est superstitiōne praecceptorum contra ratiōnem causae trahi. QUINT. *It is madness to let oneself be carried by a superstitious regard for rules counter to the requirements of the case.*

Sometimes the Nom. of the Third Declension is used in combination with the Nom. of the Second.

Pigrum et iners videtur sudore acquirere quod possis sanguine parare. TAC. *It is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine"): **meum est, it is my property, business, way.**

Nōn est meum mentiri. TER. *Lying is not my way (I do not lie).*

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

366. The Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs :

Magna vis militum, *a great number of soldiers.*

Centum militum, *a hundred (of the) soldiers.*

Hi militum, *those (of the) soldiers.*

Fortissimi militum, *the bravest (of the) soldiers.*

Satis militum, *enough (of) soldiers (soldiers enough).*

367. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight :

Modius tritici, *a measure of wheat.*

Libra farris, *a pound of spelt.*

Ala equitum, *a squadron of cavalry.*

REMARK.—This is sometimes called the Genitivus Generis. Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

Medimnus tritici, *a medimnus of wheat may be a medimnus of WHEAT (Genitivus Generis) or a MEDIMNUS of wheat (Partitive).*

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both special and general :

Special:

Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.

(Centum militēs, a, the hundred soldiers.)

Quintus rēgum, the fifth (of the) king(s).

(Quintus rēx, the fifth king.)

General:

Multi militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.

(Multi militēs, many soldiers.)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:

Quot civium adsunt? How many CITIZENS are present? Quot civēs adsunt? How MANY are the citizens present?

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition:

Nōs trecentī conjūrāvīmus, three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.

Amicōs quōs multōs habet, friends whom he has in great number (of whom he has many).

Quī omnēs, all of whom.

Quot estis? How many are (there of) you?

Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.

On mille and milia see 303.

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns:

II militum, those (of the) soldiers.

II militēs, those soldiers.

III Graecōrum, those (of the) Greeks.

370. The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:

Prior hōrum. LIV. The former of these.

Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum. JUV. The last of the good kings.

REMARKS.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (315.)

2. Uterque, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque consul, either consul = both consuls; as a substantive with pronouns: uterque hōrum, both of these.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 202, R. 2.

371. The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative:

tantum, so much, quantum, as (how much), aliquantum, somewhat.

multum, much, plūs, more, plūrimum, most.

paulum, little, minus, less, minimum, least.

satis, enough, parum, too little, nihil, nothing.

hoc, this, id, illud, istud, that, idem, the same.

quod and quid, which and what? with their compounds.

Carnis plūs habet Aeschinēs, minus lacertōrum. QUINT. *Aeschines as more flesh, less muscle.*

Cimōn habēbat satis ēloquentiæ. NEP. (349, R. 4.)

Surgit amārī aliquid, quod in ipsīs flōribus angat. LUCR. *Uprises something bitter to choke us mid the very flowers.*

Nihil reliquī facere. 1. *To leave nothing (not a thing).* 2. (Occasionally), *leave nothing undone.*

REMARKS.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. As we see in **Scelus puerī es.** PLACT. *You are a rascal of a boy*—where the boy is the rascal. **Quodcumque hoc regnī.** VERG. *This realm, what (little) there is of it (what little alm I have).*

2. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Genitive; not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the Second: **aliquid bonum, or bonī, something good; aliquid memorābile, something memorable; aliquid bonī et memorābilis, something good and memorable.**

Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl lacrimābile cernit. OV. *And scarce restrains her tears, because she descries naught to shed tears for.*

3. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: **ad tantum studium, to so much zeal.** (Exceptions are late: **ad multum diēi, far into the day.**)

4. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent: **arborum affatim, abundance of arms; ubi terrarum gentium? where in the world? ic. eō arrogantiae prōcessit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption.** (Later Latin, **in temporis, at that time**). Notice especially the phrase: **quoad ē jus facere possum, as far as I can do so.**

5. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Ablative may be employed with **ex, out of, dē, from** (especially with proper names and singulars), or the Accusative with **inter, among**: **Gallus prōvocatum ex Rōmānis, The Gaul challenges one of the Romans; ūnus dē multis, one of many (the masses); Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings;** (but in a series: **quōrum ūnus, alter, tertius.**)

6. On the Attribute used partitively, see 287, R.

7. Qualitative Adjectives are combined with the Genitive in later Latin:

Dēgenerēs canum caudam sub alvum flectunt. PLIN. *Currish dogs curl the tail under the belly.*

In poetry and silver prose the Neuter of Qualitative Adjectives is frequently used before the Genitive:

Ardua dum metuunt āmittunt vēra viā. (27, R. 1.) LUCR. *The while they fear steeper road, they miss the true.*

So **amāra cūrārum, bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strāta viārum, strātae, the paved streets.**

8. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish:

Fies nōbilitium tū quoque fontium. HOR. *Thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.*

GENITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONAL SUBSTANTIVES.

372. **Causā, grātiā, ergō, and instar,** are construed with the Genitive:

Causā and grātiā, for the sake, commonly follow the Genitive. So also

ergō, *on account* (in old formulae). **Instar** is an old Accusative, as it were, an "instead."

Sophistae quaestūs causā philosophābantur. CIC. *The professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.*

Tū mē amōris magis quam honōris servāvisti grātiā. ENN. *Thou didst save me more for love's (sake) than (thou didst) for honor's sake.*

Virtūtis ergō, *On account of valor.*

Instar montis equus. VERG. *A horse to stand in mountain's stead (a horse that stood a mountain high).*

Plato mihi ūnus instar est omnium. CIC. *Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.*

REMARK.—So **meā, tuā, suā causā**, seldom **grātiā**.

II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

373. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive:

Plēnus rīmārum, *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel").

Particeps cōnsiliī, *a sharer in the plan.*

Compos mentis, *in possession of (one's) mind.*

Peritus bellī, *versed in war.*

Cupidus glōriæ, *grasping after glory.*

Fastidiōsus Latinārum literārum, *too dainty for Latin.*

Omnium rērum inscius, *a universal ignoramus.*

Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitæ conviva recēdis? LUCR. (268.)

Sitque memor nōstri necne, referte mihi. OV. (195, R. 7.)

Conscia mens rectī Fāmae mendācia risit. OV. (329, R. 1.)

Agricolam laudat jūris lēgumque peritus. HOR. *The husbandman's lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law.*

Vēnātor teneræ conjugis immemor. HOR. *The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful.*

Vis cōnsiliī expers mōle ruit suā. HOR. *Force void of counsels tumbles by its own mass.*

Mentis inops gelidā formīdine lōra remisit. OV. *Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins.*

REMARKS.—1. The following adjectives—**refertus**, *stuffed*; **praeditus**, *endowed*; **contentus**, *satisfied*; **frētus**, *supported*—show their participial nature by being construed with the Ablative:

Vita referta bonis, *a life filled to overflowing with blessings.*

Membris hūmānis esse praeditum, *to be endowed with human limbs.*

Frētus opulentiā, *trusting in wealth.*

Uxor contenta est quæ bona est ūnō virō. PLAUT. *A wife who is good is contented with one husband.*

2. **Plēnus**, *full*, sometimes takes the Ablative :

Maxima quaeque domus servīs est plēna superbīs. JUV. *Every great house is led with overbearing slaves.*

3. **Dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, are construed with the Ablative :

Digne puer meliōre flammā. HOR. *Boy worthy of a better flame.*

Vitā tua dignior aetās. VERG. *Your age is worthier of life.*

The Genitive is rare.

4. **Liber**, *free*, and **vacuus**, *empty*, take the Ablative with or without **ab** (**ā**) (388) :

Liberum (vacuum) esse metū (ā metū), *to be free from (void of) fear.*

5. On **aliēnus**, *strange*, see 356, R. 5.

On **aequālis**, **commūnis**, **consciūs**, **contrāriūs**, **pār**, **similis**, **superstes**, and the like, see 356, R. 1.

6. Verbs of Filling sometimes follow the analogy of **plēnus**, *full*, and take the Genitive.

On **egēre** and **indigēre** with the Gen., see 389, R. 2.

The poets carry the analogy of Plenty and Want very far.

Ditissimus agrī. VERG. *Rich of domain.*

Solutus operum. HOR. *Loosed of (released from) work.*

Thus the Genitive in poetry comes near the Ablative or Whence case :

Dēsine mollium tandem querēlarum. HOR. *Cease at last from womanish complainings.*

GENITIVE WITH VERBALS.

374. Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature ; and so do verbals in **-āx** in poetry and later prose :

Epaminōndās adeō vērītātis erat diligēns ut nē jocō quidem entirētur. NEP. *Epaminondas was so careful of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.*

Omnium consensū capāx imperiī nisi imperāset. TAC. *By general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.*

REMARKS.—1. The participle is transient ; the adjective permanent. The simple test is the substitution of the relative and the verb : **amans** (participle), *loving (who is loving)* ; **amans** (adjective), *fond*, (substantive), *lover* ; **patiens** (part.), *bearing (who is bearing)* ; **patiens** (adjective), *enduring*, (substantive), *a sufferer*.

2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the mind take a Genitive of the Thing to which the affection refers : **aeger timōris**, *sick of fear* ; **ambiguus cōsiliī**, *doubtful of purpose* ; **vītae dubius**, *doubtful of life*.

Here model prose requires the Ablative or a Preposition.

The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Genitive becomes a complement to the adjective just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

Integer vītae. HOR. *Spotless of life* ; like **Integritās vītae.** (**Fāmā et fortunīs teger.** SALL. *In fame and fortunes intact.*)

3. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive, chiefly with **animī** (which is expected of being a Locative). **Aeger animī**, *sick at heart, heartsick* ; **audāx ingeniī**, *ring of disposition*.

III.—GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF MEMORY.

375. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive :

Tē veteris amicitiae commōnēfacio. [CIC.] *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, obliviscī suōrum. CIC. *The fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.*

Ipse jubet mortis tē meminisse Deus. MART. *God himself bids you remember death.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding also take the Ablative with **dē** (so regularly **moneo**), and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numeral Adjective :

Ōro ut Terentiam moneātis dē testāmētō. CIC. *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.*

Discipulōs id ūnum moneo. QUINT. (331, R. 2.)

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Accusative, especially of things :

Haec ōlim meminisse juvābit. VERG. *To remember these things one day will give us pleasure.*

Dulcēs moriens reminiscitur Argōs. VERG. *Dying, he remembers sweet Argos.*

Obliviscī nihil solēs nisi injūriās. CIC. *You are wont to forget nothing except injuries.*

Recordor (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is commonly construed with the Acc.

Et vōcem Anchisae magni vultumque recordor. VERG. *And I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.* With persons, **dē**.

Memini, *I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember*, takes the Accusative :

Antipatrum tū probē meministi. CIC. *You remember Antipater very well.*

3. **Venit mihi in mentem**, *it comes into (up to) my mind*, may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject :

Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis. CIC. (or Plato.) *Plato rises before my mind's eye*

Certiōrem aliquem facere, *to inform*, follows the analogy of Verbs of Reminding.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

376. **Misereor** and **miseresco**, *I pity*, take the Genitive, and **miseret**, *it moves to pity*, **paenitet**, *it repents*, **piget**, *it irks*, **pudet**, *it makes ashamed*, **taedet** and **pertaesum est**, *it tires*, take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause :

Miserēre sorōris. VERG. *Pity thy sister!*

Suae quemque fortunae paenitet. CIC. *Each man is discontented with his lot.*

Miseret tē aliōrum, tui tē nec miseret nec pudet. PLAUT.
You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed.

Pudet is also used with the Genitive of the Person whose Presence excites the shame :

Pudet deōrum hominumque. LIV. *It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*

REMARK.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun :

Nōn tē haec pudet? TER. *Do not these things put you to the blush?*

Other constructions follow from general rules :

Nōn mē paenitet vixisse. CIC. (540.)

Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. CIC. *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*

GENITIVE WITH JUDICIAL VERBS.

377. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge :

Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditiōnis. NEP. *Miltiades was accused of treason.*

Cannensem exercitum quis pavōris insimulāre potest? LIV. *Who can charge the army of Cannae with craven fear?*

Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupīdo. OV. *Be slow to condemn thy bard of crime, O Cupid!*

Absolvere improbitātis, to acquit of dishonesty.

So also kindred expressions : **reum facere**, (to make a party) *to indict, to bring an action against* ; **sacrilegiī compertum esse**, *to be found (guilty) of sacrilege.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Ablative of the Fine :

Accūsāre capitis, or capite, to bring a capital charge.

Damnāre capitis, or capite, to condemn to death.

Damnāri decem milibus, to be fined 10,000.

Multāre, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative :

Multāre pecūniā, to mulct in (of) money.

Manlius virtūtem filii morte multāvī. QUINT. *Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.*

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also instead of the Genitive the Ablative with **dē** : **accūsāre dē vi, of violence** (no Genitive) ; **dē venēficiō, of poisoning** ; **dē rēbus repetundīs, of extortion.**

3. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by **ad** or **in** : **damnāri ad bestiās, to be condemned** (to be thrown) *to wild beasts* ; **ad (in) metalla, to the mines** ; **ad (in) opus publicum, to hard labor.** **Vōtī damnāri, to be bound to fulfil a vow.**

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF RATING AND BUYING.

378. Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the

Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are : *aestimāre*, to value ; *putāre*, to reckon ; *dūcere*, to take ; *habēre*, to hold ; *pendere*, to weigh ; *facere*, to make, put ; *esse*, to be (worth).

Verbs of Buying are : *emere*, to buy ; *vēdere*, to sell ; *vēnire*, to be for sale ; *stāre* and *constāre*, to cost, to come to ; *prōstāre*, *licēre*, to be exposed, left (for sale) ; *condūcere*, to hire ; *locāre*, to let.

379. Verbs of Rating take :

Magnī , much,	plūris , more,	plūrimī , maximī, most.
Parvī , little,	minōris , less,	minimī , least.
Tantī , so much,	quantī , how much,	nihilī , naught.

Equivalents of *nihilī*, nothing, are *flocci*, a lock of wool, *nauci*, a trifle, *assis*, a copper, and the like, and so also *hūjus*, that (a snap of the finger), with the negative, which is omitted only in the earlier times.

Tantī is often used in the sense of *operae pretium est* = it is worth while.

Dum nē ob malefacta peream parvī [id] *aestimo*. **PLAUT.** So long as I be not killed for my misdeeds little do I care.

Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit. **CIC.** Virtue makes little account of the pleasure of the senses.

Jūdicēs repūblicam flocci nōn faciunt. **CIC.** The judges do not care a fig for the State.

Nōn habeo nauci Marsum augurem. **ENNIUS.** I do not value a Marsian augur a baubee.

Est mihi tantī hūjus invidiae tempestātem subīre. **CIC.** It is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

380. Verbs of Buying take **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris**. The rest are put in the Ablative :

Vēdo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam ceterī, fortasse etiam minōris. **CIC.** I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.

Magis illa juvant quae plūris emuntur. **JUV.** Things give more pleasure which are bought for more.

Ēmit Canius hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthius voluit. **CIC.** Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

Quantī cēnās? What do you give for your dinner?

Quantī habitās? What is the rent of your lodgings?

But :

Parvō famēs cōnstat, magnō fastidium. **SEN.** Hunger costs little, daintiness much.

REMARKS.—1. **Aestimo** is found with the Ablative as well as with the Genitive. So **aestimāre magnō** and **magnī**, to value highly.

2. Observe the phrases : **bonī (aequī bonīque) facio**, **bonī cōsulo**, I put up with, take in good part.

3. **Bene emere**, to buy cheap ; **bene vĕndere**, to sell dear ; **male emere**, to buy dear ; **male vĕndere**, to sell cheap.

GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND RĒFERT.

381. **Interest** and **Rĕfert** take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Clōdii interest. CIC. *It is Clodius's interest.*

Rĕfert compositiōnis quae quibus antepōnās. QUINT. *It is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

Instead of the Genitive of the Possessive Pronouns the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessives is employed :

Meā interest, meā rĕfert, I am concerned.

REMARKS.—1. **Rĕfert** is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with **meā**, etc., seldom with the Genitive.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative :

Vehementer intererat vestrā, quī patrēs estis, liberōs vestrōs hīc potissimum discere. PLIN. EP. *It were vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.*

3. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. **Meā** seems to be an adverbial form like **quā, hāc, eā.** (Madvig.)

382. 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value :

Multum (nihil) interest. *It makes much (no) difference.*

Quid interest? *What difference does it make?*

Magnī interest meā unā nōs esse CIC. *It is of great importance to me that we be together.*

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, **ut** or **nē**, with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium? CIC. *What interest had Milo in Clodius' being killed.*

Caesar dicere solēbat nōn tam suā quam reipublicae interesse ut salvus esset. SUET. *Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared.*

Vestrā interest nē imperātōrem pessimī faciant. TAC. *It is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor.*

Quid rēfert tālēs versūs quā vōce legantur. JUV. *What matters it what voice such verses are recited with?*

Occasionally by the Nominative of a Neuter Pronoun :

Quid (Acc.) tuā id (Nom.) rēfert? TER. *What business is that of yours?*

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Acc. with **ad** :

Magnī ad honōrem nōstrum interest quam primum nōs ad urbem venire. CIC. *It makes a great difference touching our honor that we should come to the city as soon as possible.*

ABLATIVE.

383. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements :

A. Where? B. Whence? C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as :

1. The Ablative of Origin.
2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as :

1. The Ablative of Manner.
2. The Ablative of Quality.
3. The Ablative of Means.

REMARK.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add :

D. The Ablative of Cause :

E. The Ablative Absolute.

I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

Ablātīvus locālis.

384. The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes a rule the preposition **IN** :

In portū nāvigo. TER. *I am sailing IN harbor.*

Pons in Hibērō prope effectus erat. CAES. *The bridge OVER the Ebro was nearly finished.*

Histrīo in scēnā est. PLAUT. *The actor is ON the stage.*

Haeret in equō senex. CIC. *The old man sticks TO his horse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Ablative with **IN**, to designate the result of the motion: **pōnere**, to place; **collocāre**, to put; **statuere**, **constituere**, to set; **considere**, to settle; **dēfigere**, to plant; **dēmergere**, to plunge; **imprimere**, to press upon; **inscribere**, to write upon; **incidere**, to carve upon.

Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit, iram in pectore locāvit. CIC. *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.*

Lūcrētia cultrum in corde dēfigit. LIV. *Lucretia plants a knife in (thrusts a knife down into) her heart.*

Philosophī in iis ipsīs librīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā sua nōmina inscribunt. CIC. *Philosophers write their own names on (the titles of) the very books which they write about contempt of glory.*

Index inciditur in aēneīs tabulis. SUET. *An index is engraved on tablets of bronze.*

The same observation applies to **sub**:

Pōne sub currū nimium propinquī sōlis in terrā domibus negātā. HOR. *Put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*

So humī, which is a Where-case: **humī prōsternere**, to throw flat on the ground.

2. The poets are free in omitting **in**, but regard must be had to 387.

3. On the Locative Ablative of Towns and Small Islands, see 412.

385. In citations from books and in enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without **in**:

Librō tertiō, third book; **versu decimō**, tenth verse; **aliō locō**, elsewhere.

REMARK.—**Locus**, place, used metaphorically, generally omits **in**: **hōc locō**, in this position, situation; **in hōc locō** (or **hōc locō**), in this place, part of the country. **Librō** is used when the whole book, **in librō**, when merely a passage in the book, is devoted to the subject in hand.

386. In designations of place with **tōtus**, whole, and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without **in**:

Menippus disertissimus tōtā Asiā fuit. *Menippus was the most eloquent man in all Asia (Minor).*

Battiadēs tōtō semper cantābitur orbe. OV. *Battiades (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world.*

387. In all such Designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition:

Ut terrā Thermopylārum angustiae Graeciam ita marī fretum Eurīpī claudit. LIV. *As the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea.*

Nēmo ire quēquam pūblicā prohibet viā. PLAUT. *No man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.*

Mātris cinerēs Tiberī subvectī sunt. SUET. *His mother's ashes were brought up by the Tiber.*

Imperātor militēs (in) castrīs tenēbat (intrā castra). CAES. *The general kept the soldiers in camp.*

Recipere aliquem tectō, oppidō, portū. *To receive a man into one's house, town, harbor.*

B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

Ablātivus Sēparātivus.

388. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* with or without the prepositions **ex**, *out of*, **dē**, *from*, **ab**, *off*:

Eum exturbāstī ex aedibus. PLAUT. *You hustled him out of the house.*

Arāneās dējiciam dē pariete. PLAUT. *I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.*

Nōn ex eō locō sed ab eō locō mē dējēcit. CIC. *It was not OUT OF that place, but FROM that place that he dislodged me.*

The prepositions are omitted chiefly with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding, but with Persons a preposition (chiefly **ab**) must be used.

Aliēnō manūs abstineat. CATO. *Let him keep his hands from other people's property.* But:

Alexander vix ā sē manūs abstinuit. CIC. *Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).*

Populus Athēniensis Phōciōnem patriā pepulit. NEP. *The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country.* But:

Illum aemulum ab eā pellito. TER. *Drive that rival from her.*

Multōs fortūna liberat paenā, metū nēminem. SEN. *Fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear.* But:

Tē ab eō libero. CIC. *I rid you of him.*

Amicitia nullō locō excluditur. CIC. *Friendship is shut out from no place.* But:

Ab illā excludor, hūc concludor. TER. *I am shut out from her (and) shut up here (to this, to live with her).*

Alcibiadem Athēniensēs ē civitāte expulērunt. NEP. *The Athenians banished Alcibiades from the State.*

Hannibal ex Italiā dēcēdere coactus est. CIC. *Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.*

Crēde mihi, mōrēs distant ā carmine nostrō. OV. *Believe me, far my conduct differs from my song.*

Cōnsulēs sē abdicant magistrātū. CIC. *The consuls abdicate their office.*

So also kindred Adjectives :

Animus excelsus omnī est liber cūrā. CIC. *A lofty mind is free from all care.*

Cato, omnibus hūmānīs vitiīs immūnis, semper fortūnam in suā potestāte habuit. VELL. *Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power.*

REMARKS.—1. Compounds with **dī** (**dis**) also take the Dative (in poetry) :

Paullum sepultae distat inertiae cēlāta virtūs. HOR. *Little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth.*

2. The Place Whence gives the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily : **ā tergō**, *in the rear* ; **ex parte dextrā**, *on the right side* ; **ab oriente**, *on the east* ; **ā tantō spatiō**, *at such a distance* ; **ex fugā**, *on the flight* ; **ā rē frūmentāriā labōrāre**, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.*

3. The poets are free in the use of the Ablative as a Whence-case without a preposition. On the difference of conception between Dative and Ablative, see 344, R. 2. On the Genitive, see 373, R. 6.

4. On the Ablative as a Whence-case in Names of Towns and Small Islands, see 411.

389. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative :

Dēmocritus dicitur oculīs sē privāsse. CIC. *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.*

Deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum. CIC. *God has filled the universe with all blessings.*

Abundant dulcibus vitiīs. QUINT. *They abound in charming faults.*

Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duō. OV. *What two have resolved on never lacks execution.*

Amor vacat metū. OV. *Love is void of fear.*

Sapiens eget nullā rē. SEN. *The sage stands in need of nothing.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Filling are commonly referred to the Instrumental Ablative rather than to the Ablative of the Source, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But observe that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. **Egeo** and (more frequently) **indigeo** also take the Genitive.

Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris. CIC. *They are not so much in need of skill as of industry.*

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (373, R. 1) :

Asellus onustus aurō. CIC. *A donkey laden with gold.*

Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest. OV. *Anybody can be rich in promises.*

Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus. FLAUT. *Love is very fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).*

390. *Opus* and *Ūsus* take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject and *opus* the predicate:

Opus est mihi librō, librīs, I want a book, books.

Liber mihi opus est, a book is a want to me (is what I want).

Librī mihi opus sunt, books are a want to me (are what I want).

Quid opus est speculō tibi? PLAUT. What do you want to do with a mirror?

Emās nōn quod opus est sed quod necesse est; quod nōn opus est asse cārum est. CATO. Buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive:

Quod parātō opus est parā. TER. What must be got ready, get ready.

Vicinō opus est conventō. PLAUT. The neighbor must be called on.

Ūsus est pecūniā or pecūniā. PLAUT. Money is wanted (is, would be (246, R. 1) useful).

Nōn factō est ūsus. PLAUT. It were better let alone.

REMARK.—This construction belongs to the Instrumental, and is put here for convenience of reference:

Opus est, there is work to be done with.

Ūsus est, there is making use of (like ūtor, 405).

The Genitive is of rare occurrence. Other constructions are the Infinitive and *ut*. The Neuter Accusative is often adverbial (331, R. 3):

Quid (Acc.) digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō? Ov. What is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stilus?

Opus est tē animō valēre ut corpore possis. CIC. You must be well in mind in order to be well in body.

An cuiquam est ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet? TER. Of what good is it to any man to torture himself?

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātivus Sociātivus.

391. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition *cum*, *with*:

Cum baculō pērāque senex. MART. An old man with stick and wallet.

Nec tēcum possum vivere nec sine tē. MART. I can't live either with you or without you.

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without *cum*; generally without *cum* when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with *cum* when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance):

Rēx Hellēspontum cum exercitū transiit, The king crossed the Hellespont with an army.

Dictātor (cum) ingentī exercitū ab urbe profectus est. *The dictator set out from the city with a great army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

Nāvibus proficisci, *to set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

Hostēs sagittāriis et funditōribus terrēbat, *he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers.*

Armātus ipse et armātis saeptus. *Liv. Armed himself and hedged about with armed men.*

Nil actum est nisi Poenō milite portās frangimus. *Juv. Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).*

II.—THE FIGURATIVE MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time.

392. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

Quā nocte nātus est Alexander eādē Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit. *Cic. On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground.*

Sātūrnī stella trīgintā ferē annīs cursum suum conficit. *Cic. The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

Many adverbial forms of time are really locative ablatives :

So **hodiē**, *to-day* ; **herī(e)**, *yesterday* ; **māne**, *in the morning*.

REMARKS.—1. Time within which may be expressed by **per** and the accusative :

Per eōs ipsōs diēs quibus Philippus in Achāiā fuit, Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis transcendit. *Liv. During those very days, while Philip was in Achaia, Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities ; so with **tōtus**, *all, whole* :

Tōtā nocte pluit. redeunt spectācula māne. *VERG. All night (Jupiter) rains ; back come the shows in the morning.*

So with definite numbers (chiefly later) :

Apud P̄thagoram discipulis quinque annīs erat tacendum. *SEN. In the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.*

3. When the Notion is Negative the English *Time For Which* is the Latin *Within Which* :

Quadrienniō (or per quadriennium) nōn militāvit. *LIV. For four years he did not serve as a soldier (during, at any time within, four years).*

4. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of Time with **hīc**, *this* ; **ille**, *that* :

Ego ad tē his duōbus mensibus nōn scripseram (244). *Cic. I have not written to you these two months (at any time within the last two months).*

Hanc urbem hōc bienniō ēvertēs. *Cic. This city you will overturn in the next two years.*

Transferred to **Ōrātio Oblīqua**, **hīc** becomes **ille** (663, 3) :

Diodōrus respondit illud argentum sē paucis illis diēbus misisse Lilybaeum. *Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).*

393. The Ablative with the preposition **in** is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time:

Bis in diē, *twice a day*; **in pueritiā**, *in boyhood*; **in adolescentiā**, *in youth*.

Nullō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fierī. CIC. *It did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.*

Sometimes, however, **bis diē**, as **diēs = ūnus diēs**.

Fēci ego istaec itidem in adolescentiā. PLAUT. *I did those things too in my youth.*

In may be omitted, chiefly with an adjective or in phrases:

Primā pueritiā, *in early boyhood*; **illō tempore**, *at that time*; **in illō tempore**, *in those circumstances, at that crisis*; **in tempore** or **tempore = at the right time**; **bellō Persicō**, *at the time of the Persian war*; **in bellō**, *in war times*; **in pāce**, *in peace times*.

REMARK.—**Dē** is also used in designations of time:

Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs. HOR. *To kill people, highwaymen rise by night, i. e., while it is yet night.*

Inter, *between*: **Quot prandia inter continuum perdidī triennium.** PLAUT. *How many luncheons I have lost during three years together!*

Intrā, *within*: **Subēgit sōlus intrā vīginti diēs.** PLAUT. *He quelled them all alone in less than twenty days.*

On **per**, *through*, see 337, R.

Cum, *with*; **cum primā lūce**, *with daybreak*.

394. B. The Place Whence is transferred:

1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

1. Ablative of Origin.

395. Participles which designate Birth take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions **ex** and **dē**:

Tanaquil summō locō nāta. LIV. *Tanaquil born (by birth) of high degree.*

Numae Pompiliī rēgis nepōs, filiā ortus, Ancus Marcius erat. LIV. *King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's son, was Ancus Marcius.*

Maecēnās atavis ēdite rēgibus. HOR. *Maecenas, offshoot of great-grand-sire kings.*

Dīs genite et genitūre deōs. VERG. *Begetten of gods and destined to beget gods!*

Sate sanguine dīvūm! VERG. *Seed of blood divine!*

Ex mē atque hōc nātus es. TER. *You are his son and mine.*

Ōdērunt nātōs dē pellice. JUV. *They hate the offspring of the concubine*

Ab is employed of remote progenitors :

Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs. CAES. *Belgians are mostly of German descent.*

396. The Ablative of Material commonly takes **ex**: **constāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition :

Animō constāmus et corpore, constāmus ex animō et corpore. CIC. *We consist of mind and body.*

Medicīna tōta constat experimentis. QUINT. *All medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).*

But: Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta, *a statue made of gold, of bronze.*
Often an adjective is used: aureus, *golden*, ligneus, *wooden.*

REMARKS.—1. A remnant of the old usage is found with **fio** and **facio** :

Quid fecisti scipiōne? *What have you done with the wand?*

Quid mē fiet? *What will become of me?*

Quid mē futurum est? *What is to become of me?*

Quid faciēs hōc homine? *How will you dispose of this man?*

Huic hominī? *What will you do to this man?* Dē hōc homine, *in this man's case.*

Fīēs dē rhētoře consul. JUV. *From (having been) rhetorician you will become consul.*

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late :

Māvors caelātus ferrō. VERG. *Mars carven of iron.*

Meliōre lutō finxit. JUV. *He fashioned him of better clay.*

2. Ablative of Measure.

397. The Ablative gives the Point from which a thing is measured or treated: Ablative of Measure or Reference.

398. The Ablative is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

Magnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā. NEP. *We measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

Sonīs hominēs dignōscimus ut aera tinnītū. QUINT. *We distinguish men by sound as coppers by ring.*

Dēscriptus erat populus Rōmānus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus. CIC. *The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.*

Ennius ingeniō maximus arte rudis. OV. *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.*

Animō prāvus, procāx ōre. TAC. *Crooked of soul, saucy of tongue.*

Crīne ruber, *red-haired*; captus oculis (literally, caught in the eyes),

blind; *captus mente, insane*; *meā sententiā, according to my opinion*; *jūre, by right*; *lēge, by law*; and the Supines in -ū (437).

REMARKS.—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception:

Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestitūs cognitus est. CAES. *The arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.*

Dē gestū intelligo quid respondeās. CIC. *I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.*

Ex lēge, according to law; *ex pactō, according to agreement*; *ex (dē) mōre, according to custom*; *ex animī sententiā, according to (my) heart's desire*; *ex ūsū, useful.*

Ab animō aeger fui. PLAUT. *At heart I was sick.*

Ōtiosum esse ab animō. TER. *To be easy in mind.*

2. *Dignus (distinguished), worthy, and indignus, unworthy,* are most conveniently referred to this head. (Examples, see 373, R. 3.)

So also *dignor, I deem worthy.*

399. The Ablative of Measure is used with the Comparative instead of *quam, than*, with the Nominative or Accusative:

Tunica propior palliō. PROV. *The shirt is nearer than the cloak.*

Phidiae simulācris (= quam simulācra) cōgitāre possumus pulchriōra. CIC. *We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias.*

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

Nemo est quī tibi sapientius suādēre possit tē ipsō. CIC. *There is no one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself.*

Pulchrum ornātum turpēs mōrēs pējus caenō collinunt. PLAUT. *Foul behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.*

REMARKS.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract substantives and adjectives used as substantives:

Consul sērius spē (= quam spēs fuerat) Rōmam vēnit. LIV. *The consul came to Rome later than was hoped.*

Amnis solitō citātior. LIV. *The river running faster than usual.*

2. *Alius, other than*, with the Ablative, is poetic.

400. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative:

Turrēs dēnis pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt. CURT. *The towers are (by) ten feet higher than the wall.*

Tantō est accūsāre quam dēfendere quantō facere quam sārāre vulnēra facilius. QUINT. *It is as much easier to accuse than to defend as it is easier to inflict wounds than to cure them.*

Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulisti. OV. *Endure to the end and be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.*

Quōque minor spēs est, hōc magis ille cupit. OV. *And the less his hope, the greater his desire.*

REMARKS.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives:

Aesculāpiī templum quinque millibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat. LIV. *The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.*

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed. (See 335.)

3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with *ante*, *before*, and *post*, *after* :

Paucis ante diebus, Paucis diebus ante, a few days before.

Paucis post diebus, Paucis diebus post, a few days after, afterward.

Duobus annis postquam Rōma condita est, Two years after Rome was founded.

Paulo post Trōjam captam, A little while after the taking of Troy.

The Accusative can also be employed : *post paucos annos, after a few years ; ante paucos annos, a few years before ;* and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers : *two hundred years after(ward)* may be :

Ducentis annis post
Post ducentos annos

or
"

Ducentesimo anno post,
Post ducentimum annum.

Ante hos sex menses, six months ago (comp. 392. R. 2), more frequently *abhinc sex menses : abhinc sex mensibus*, means *six months before* (Madvig).

With a relative sentence the Ablative may be used alone :

Rosciī mors quatrīduo quō is occisus est, Chrysogonō nūntiātur. CIC. *The death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed).* See 392.

Hence is ad : ad sex menses, six months hence.

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablativus sociativus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. Ablative of Manner.

401. The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How ?* and is used with the Preposition *cum* when it has no Adjective ; with or without *cum* when it has an Adjective :

Miltiadēs summā aequitate rēs constituit Chersonēsī. NEP. *Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness.*

Nōn facile est aequā comoda mentē pati. OV. *It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper.*

Cum cūrā scribere, to write with care.

Magnā cūrā,

Cum magnā cūrā, } *with great care.*

Magnā cum cūrā, }

REMARK.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition : *ordine, in an orderly manner ; silentiō, silently ; cāsū, by chance, accidentally ; viā et ratiōne, methodically ; dolō, fraude, fraudulently.* It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument : *vī, violently and by violence ; vī et armīs, by force of arms ; pedibus, afoot ; nāvibus, by ship.* Notice, also, the use of *per, through*, with the Accusative : *per vim, by violence ; per litterās, by letter.*

2. Ablative of Quality.

(*Descriptive Ablative.*)

402. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent :

Āgēsīlāus statūrā fuit humili. NEP. *Agēsīlāus was (a man) of low stature.*

Cato singulārī fuit prūdentiā et industriā. NEP. *Cato was (a man) of unique foresight and energy.*

Ista turpiculō puella nāsō. CAT. *That girl of yours with the ugly nose.*

Clāvī ferreī digitī pollicis crassitūdine. CAES. *Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space, are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions **cum** may be used: **agnus cum suillō capite.** LIV. *A lamb with a swine's head.*

3. Ablative of Means.

403. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition **ab** (**ā**):

The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with **per**:

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est, *Pyrrhus was killed by a stone.*

Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est, *Pyrrhus was killed by a woman.*

Pyrrhus ā muliere lapide interfectus est, *Pyrrhus was killed by a woman with a stone.*

Xerxēs certior factus est, <i>Xerxes was informed,</i>	}	1. nūntiō, <i>by a message.</i>
		2. ā nūntiō, <i>by a messenger.</i>
		3. per nūntium, <i>by means of a messenger.</i>

Nec bene prōmeritīs capitur neque tangitur irā. LUCR. (218, R. 3.)

Ipsē docet quid agam : fās est et ab hoste docērī. OV. (210.)

Discite sārārī per quem didicistis amāre. OV. *Learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an Adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful, 352, R.

So **jacēt suis testibus.** CIC. *They are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. Especially worthy of note under this head are **assuesco** and **assuēfacio**: **assuētus labōre,** *accustomed to toil, familiar with toil* (the Dative is more rare); **doctus Graecis litteris,** *learned in Greek*; and the various words for *sacrifice*:

Quinquāgintā capris sacrificāvērunt. LIV. *They sacrificed fifty she-goats.*

Afficere, *to treat,* with the Ablative, is a favorite term; see the Lexicons.

3. **Nitor,** *I stay myself,* is construed with the Ablative, with or without **in**: **Hastī nixus,** *leaning on a spear* (stayed by a spear).

[Pompēi] in vitā nitēbātur salūs civitātis. CIC. *The weal of the State depended on Pompey's life.*

Notice also stāre, with the Abl. : stāre condiōnibus, *to abide by the terms.*

4. Ablative of Price.

404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative :

Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocratēs vendidit. PLIN. *Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.*

Emittit morte immortalitatem. QUINT. *He purchased deathlessness with death.*

Nimium risus pretium est si probitatis impendit constat. QUINT. *The price of a laugh is too high, if it costs the outlay of a man's uprightness.*

Argentum accēpi; dote imperium vendidi. PLAUT. *The cash I took ; (and) for a dowry sold my sway.*

REMARK.—Mūtāre, *to exchange*, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get ; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy :

Pax misera vel bello bene mūtātur. TAC. *A wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.*

Durus qui potuit lucro mūtāre puellam. PROP. *Hard (is the soul of the) man who could sell his sweetheart for lucre.*

Cūr valle permūtem Sabīnā divitiās operōsiōrēs. HOR. *Why should I exchange my Sabine vale for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble ?*

5. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

405. The Deponent Verbs Ūtor, Abūtor, Fruor, Fungor, Potior, and Vescor, take the Ablative :

Victoriā uti nescis. LIV. *How to make use of victory you know not.*

Quōdusque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā. CIC. *How long, tell me, will you abuse our patience ?*

Lux quā fruimur a Deō nobis datur. CIC. *The light which we enjoy is given to us by God.*

Fungor vice cōtis. HOR. *I discharge the office of a whetstone.*

Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ullō vulnere victoriā potiri. CAES. *They thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.*

Numidae lacte vescēbantur. SALL. *The Numidians made their food of milk (fed on milk).*

REMARKS.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument ; but fruor, *I get fruit*, and vescor, *I feed myself from* (vē-ed-scor), and perhaps fungor seem to take the Ablative as a Whence-case. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a Gerundive :

Iūstitia dicit tē esse injūstum quum graviter ferās tē quod utendum accē-

peris reddidisse. CIC. *Justice will say that you are unjust since you resent having restored what you have received (but) to use.*

2. **Ūti** is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation :

Ūti aliquō amicō, to avail oneself of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him).

Ūti consiliō, to follow advice ; **Ūti bonō patre**, to have the advantage of having a good father ; **Ūti lēgibus**, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

3. **Vivo** is construed like **vescor** : **aliēnā misericordiā vivo**, I live on the charity of others.

Potior, I possess myself, sometimes takes the Genitive ; always **potīri rērum**, to possess the supreme power.

D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

406. The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

407. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion :

Castor gaudet equis. HOR. *Castor rejoices in horses.*

Quidam vitiis suis glōriantur. SEN. *Some make a boast of their vices.*

Pecūniā fidens nōn dubitābat. NEP. *Trusting in his money, he had no doubts.*

In culpā sunt quī officia dēserunt mollitiā animi. CIC. *They are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.*

Ōdērunt peccāre boni virtūtis amōre. HOR. *The good hate to sin from a love of virtue.*

So also **jussū cīvium**, at the bidding of the citizens ; **meō rogātū**, at my request, and other verbal Ablatives. On **causā** and **grātiā**, for the sake of see 372.

REMARKS.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Ablative **adductus**, led ; **ardens**, fired ; **commōtus**, stirred up ; **incitātus**, egged on ; **incensus**, inflamed ; **impulsus**, driven on ; **irā**, by anger ; **odiō**, by hate ; **metū**, from fear ; **meti perterritus**, sore frightened ; **propter metum**, on account of, (by reason of) fear.

2. The preventing cause is expressed by **prae**, for :

Prae gaudiō ubi sim nēscio. TER. *I know not where I am for joy.*

E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

408. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicative of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

REMARK.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local.

409. The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English Objective Absolute, which is a close equivalent: but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract noun.

Xerxe regnante (= **Quum Xerxēs regnāret**), *Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.*

Xerxe victō (= **Quum Xerxēs victus esset**), *Xerxes being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.*

Xerxe rēge (= **Quum Xerxēs rēx esset**), *Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.*

Patre vivō, *WHILE father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

Maximās virtūtēs jacere omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante. **CIC.** *All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (or WHEN) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine rōndum expertā. **LIV.** *The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (BECAUSE they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit :

PASSIVE FORM : *The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

ACTIVE FORM : *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

ABSTRACT FORM : *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English:

Tunc juvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perunxērunt. **CIC.** *Then the youths, having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil: or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

2. The Ablative Absolute, though often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence, for convenience' sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

Lysander suadet Lacedaemoniis ut regiā potestāte dissolutā ex omnibus dux dēligātur ad bellum gerendum. **NEP.** *Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, AND a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war. Here the one is necessary to the other.*

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace,* is to be rendered: **Manlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.**

The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive:

Jugurtha frātre meō interfectō regnum ē jus sceleris suī praedam fecit. **SALL.** *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

4. On the Ablative of the simple participle, see 438, R. 2.

NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS.

410. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—
In the Accusative of the Place Whither.

So also *rūs, into the country, domum, domōs, home.*

Lēgātī Athēnās missī sunt. LIV. *Envoys were sent to Athens.*

Lātōna confūgit Dēlum. CIC. *Latona took refuge in Delos.*

Laelius et Scīpio rūs ēvolābant. CIC. *Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country.*

Innumerābilēs philosophī nunquam domum revertēre. CIC. *Innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

So verbals : *domum reditus, a return home.*

REMARKS.—1. *Domum, house,* with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have *in* before it : *domum meam* or *in domum meam, to my house* ; *domum Pompējī* or *in domum Pompējī, to Pompey's house* ; also *domum ad Pompējum*. Otherwise : *in magnificam domum venire, to come into a grand house.*

2. When *urbem, city,* or *oppidum, town,* precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition *in* or *ad* is prefixed ; if *urbem* or *oppidum* follows, *in* or *ad* may be omitted : *in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.*

Jugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum magnum et opulentum. SALL. *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. *Ad* means *to the neighborhood of,* often *before,* of military operations. *Ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).*

4. Observe that there must be *motion,* not merely *extent,* which requires a preposition.

Ā Salōnis ad Ōricum portūs. CAES. *The harbors from Salona to Oricus.*

5. Motion To a Place embraces all the local designations :

Phalara in sinum Māliacum prōcesserant. LIV. *They had advanced to Phalara on the Maliac Gulf.*

Tarentum in Italiam inferiōrem proficiscī, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy

411. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—
In the Ablative of the Place Whence :

Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō. LIV. *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

Dolābella Dēlō proficiscitur. CIC. *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

So also *domō, from home* ; *humō, from the ground* ; *rūre, from the country.*

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions *ab (ā)* and *ex (ē)* are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. So regularly *ab* with the Place from which distance is measured :

Aesculāpiī templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurō distat. LUC. (400, R. 1.)

When the common nouns *urbe, city,* and *oppidō, town,* are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule :

Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.

Ex Apollōniā Pontī urbe, from Apollonia, a city of Pontus.

Ex oppidō Gergoviā, from the town of Gergovia.

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations :

Agrigentō ex Aesculāpiī fānō, whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.*

Unde domō ? VERG. *From what home ?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

4. The poets are free in using the Ablative as a Whence-case.

412. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put
In the Locative of the Place Where.

The Locative coincides in the Singular with the Genitive of the Second Declension, with the Dative of the First and Third. In the Plural, Dative, Locative, and Ablative coincide, and the Ablative is blended with the Locative in Syntax and in the Third Declension, often in form. (See 23, R. 1.)

Locative	S. 1. Rōmae (Rōmāi)	Pl. 1. Athēnīs
	2. Corinthī	2. Delphīs
	3. Sulmōnī(e)	3. Cūribus.

Ut Rōmae consulēs sic Karthāginī (Carthāgine) quotannis binī rēgēs creābantur. NEP. *As at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.*

Artemisia nōbile fēcit Halicarnassī sepulcrum. CIC. *Artemisia built a famous sepulchre at Halicarnassus.*

Tarquinius Superbus mortuus est Cūmīs. LIV. *Tarquin the Overbearing died at Cumae.*

Timotheus Lesbī vixit. NEP. *Timotheus lived in Lesbos.*

REMARKS.—1. Other locative forms are, domī, at home, (Genitive, domūs) humī, on the ground, and also bellī and militiae, in combination with domī:

Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium d o m i. CIC. *Of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

Humī jacēre, to lie on the ground.

Humī prōsternere, to throw flat on the ground.

Domī militiaeque, bellī domīque, in peace and in war, in war and in peace, at home and in the field.

Rūrī, in the country, is also generally considered a locative form (but rure meō, on my farm).

On animī, see 374, R. 3.

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with in :

Militēs Albae constitērunt in urbe opportūnā, the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.

Archias Antiochiaē nātus est celebrī quondam urbe, Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.

Neāpolī in celeberrimō oppidō, at Naples, a very populous town—in the populous, celebrated town of Naples.

When urbe, city, oppidō, town, or insulā, island, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

In urbe Rōmā, in the city (of) Rome.

In oppidō Neāpolī, in the town of Naples.

In insulā Samō, in the island (of) Samos.

3. Domī takes the Possessive Pronoun in the Genitive :

Marcus Drūsus occisus est domī suae, M. Drusus was killed at his own house.

Also domī aliēnae, in a strange house.

Metuis ut domī meae cūrētur diligenter. TER. *You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house ; otherwise, in domō castā, in a pure house.*

In domō Periclis, in the house(hold) of Pericles.

In domō, in the house (not, at home).

PREPOSITIONS.

413. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

REMARKS.—1. In Verbs of Motion, the result of the motion is often considered a Rest in a place (where):

Pōnere in locō, *to put in a place.*

2. In Verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of motion (whither):

Habēre in potestātem, *to have (got) in (to) one's power.*

In carcerem asservāre, *to keep in jail.*

3. Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called *improper prepositions*. The prefixes **amb-** (**am-** **an-**), **dīs** (**dī**), **red-** (**re-**) **sēd-** (**sē-**) and **vī-** are sometimes called *inseparable prepositions*.

414. *Position of the Preposition.* The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. **Versus**, *-ward*, and **tenus**, *as far as*, are postpositive, and so is **cum** *with*, in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative:

Mēcum, *with me.*

Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine te. MART. (391.)

Sēcum, *with oneself.*

Quōcum (also **quīcum**), *with whom* (likewise, **cum quō**).

Quibuscum, *with whom, wherewith* (also, **cum quibus**).

2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: **quem contrā,** *against whom*; **quōs inter,** *among whom*; **quō dē,** *from whom*.

3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

415. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute and the Case:

Magnō cum metū, *with great fear.*

Whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case:

Post vērō Sullae victōriam, *but after Sulla's victory.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the position of **per**, *through* (by), in adjuration **Lydīa dīc per omnēs Tē deōs ōrō,** HOR. *Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.*

416. *Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.*—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so always after *et—et, nec—nec: et ex urbe et ex agris, both from (the) city and from (the) country.* Otherwise it is omitted; so always with *que.*

Clōdīus ā Milōne candidātō consulātūs jugulātus est. VELL. *Clodius was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship.*

Cimōn in eandem invidiam incidit (in) quam pater suus. NEP. (296).

Discite s̄nārī per quem (= per eum per quem) didicistis amāre. Ov. 403).

REMARK.—Several Prepositions, such as *contrā, on the other hand, extrā, outside, infrā, below, suprā, above, ultrā, beyond,* are used also as adverbs without a case:

Īliacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā. HOR. *Inside the walls of Ilium sin is wrought, and outside (too).*

Otherwise two Prepositions cannot be used with one case: *For and against Scipio, Prō Scipiōne et adversus Scipiōnem. Before and after the battle, ante pugnam et post eam.*

I.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

417. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:

ante,	apud,	ad,	adversus,
circum,	circā,	citrā,	cis,
ergā,	contrā,	inter,	extrā,
infrā,	intrā,	juxtā,	ob,
penes,	pōne,	post and	praeter,
prope,	propter,	per,	secundum,
suprā,	versus,	ultrā,	trans.

REMARKS.—1. To these we may add *clam, unknown to, hidden from (cēl-o, oc-cul-o)* which is commonly used as an adverb *secretly* and according to some MSS. is construed with the Ablative as well as with the Accusative.

2. The detailed consideration of the Prepositions belongs to the Dictionary.

Ad, at, to (comp. ad-do, I put to), up to—opposed to Ab.	Circum, } Circā, } around, about.
Adversus, } [turned to], towards, Adversum, } over against, against.	Circiter, about (seldom of place, sometimes of time, chiefly with numerals).
Ante [over against, facing], before (most frequently of time).	Cis, } this side, short of, correlative Citrā, } of ultrā.
Apud (chiefly of persons), at, near, in the presence of (official), with (French, chez), at the house of, in the view of.	Contrā (= cum + tra), opposite to, over against, opposed to, against. Ergā, opposite, towards, seldom of

- place; generally of friendly relations.
- Extrā**, *without, outside of, beside*, (opposed to **intrā**).
- Infrā**, *beneath, lower down, later*.
- Inter**, *between* (reaching from one to the other), *among, during*.
- Intrā**, *within*.
- Juxtā** [*adjoining*], *hard by, near, next to*.
- Ob** (*over against, op-posite to*), *right before, with a view to, for*.
- Penes**, *with = in the hands of*.
- Penes eum est potestās**, *The power lies with him.* [to, by.]
- Per** (*along*), *through, by way of, owing*
- Pōne**, *behind* (rare).
- Post**, *behind, after*.
- Praeter**, *on before, past, beyond, besides, contrary to*.
- Prope**, *near*.
- Propter**, *near, on account of*.
- Secundum** [*following*], *next to, immediately behind, after, along, according to*.
- Suprā**, *above, higher up (earlier)*.
- Trans**, *on the other side, beyond, across*.
- Ultrā**, *on that side, beyond* (opp. to **citrā**).
- Versus**, *-ward* (always postponed).
- Rōmam versus**, *Romeward*.

II.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ABLATIVE.

418. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are:

- Ā, ab, and abs**, *off, of, from, by* (opposed to **ad**).
- Before vowels and **h, ab**; before consonants, **ā** or **ab**; **abs**, used chiefly before **tē**, *thee*.
- Absque** (*off*), *without* (antiquated).
- Cōram**, *face to face with, in the presence of* (accidental).
- Cum**, *with*.
- Dē**, *down from, from, of = about*.
- Ex, Ē**, *out of, from* (opposed to **in**).
- Before vowels and consonants, **ex** (so chiefly in the model period); before consonants, **ē**.
- Prae**, *in front of, side by side with, for* (preventive cause).
- Prō**, *before, for*.
- Sine**, *without*, opposed to **cum**.
- Tenus** (*to the extent of*), *as far as* (occasionally with the Genitive).

REMARK.—In poetry and later prose **palam**, *openly*, takes the Ablative; **procul**, *afar* follows the analogy of **ab**; **simul**, *at the same time*, that of **cum**.

III.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

419. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are:

	ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
In , <i>in</i> ,	<i>into, for</i> (purpose),	<i>in</i> .
Sub , <i>under</i> ,	<i>about</i> (of time),	<i>about</i> (of time) [rarely]
Super , <i>over</i> ,	<i>over, above,</i>	<i>about = dē</i> .
	<i>over and above,</i>	<i>over</i> [in prose rarely]
Subter , <i>under</i> ,	<i>under, beneath,</i>	<i>under, beneath</i> [rarely].

THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.

420. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

REMARK.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb :

Amāre, to love ; **valdē amāre**, to love hugely ; **amārī**, to be loved ; **amāvīsse**, to have loved ; **amāre aliquem**, to love a man ; **nocēre alicuī**, to hurt a man.

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involution of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject ; the subject is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

421. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

Rēgem esse, To be king.

Bonum esse, To be good.

So in the paradigm of the verb :

Amātūrum esse, To be about to love.

REMARK.—On the Nominative with the Infinitive by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

422. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its case is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

423. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive :

Errāre hūmānum est. To err is human (that man should err is human),
Incipere multō est quam impetrāre facilius. **PLAUT.** *Beginning is much easier (work) than winning.*

Nōn tam turpe fuit vinci quam contendisse decōrum est. **OV.** (275.)
Esse bonam facile est quum quod vetet esse remōtum est.
V. *Be a good woman—'tis easy when what would prevent it is distant.*

THE INFINITIVE AS AN OBJECT.

424. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs help the Infinitive into existence.

Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites :

Ēmori cupio. TER. *I want to die.*

Cato esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat. SALL. *Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good.*

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. OV. *And I pray that I may be more safely wretched.*

Vincere scīs, Hannibal; victōriā ūti nēs'cis. LIV. *How to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.*

Quī mori didicit, servire dēdidicit. SEN. *He who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave.*

Maledictis dēterrere nē scribat parat. TER. *He is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.*

So parātus, ready.

Quī mentiri solet, pējerare consuēvit. CIC. *He who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.*

Vulnera quae fecit dēbuit ipse pati. OV. *The wounds he gave himself should himself have suffered.*

Vereor tē laudare praesentem. CIC. *I feel a delicacy about praising you to your face.*

Rēligiōnum animum nōdis exsolvere pergo. LUCR. *I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds.*

Atque ut vivāmus vivere dēsini mus. MART. *And that we may live, we cease to live.*

So habeo, I have (it in my power).

Tantum habeo pollicēri mē tibi cumulātē satisfactūrum. CIC. *As much I can promise that I will give you abundant satisfaction.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice that **coepī**, *I have begun*, and **dēsino**, *I cease*, have Passive Perfects with Passive Infinitives :

Athēniensēs undique premī bellō sunt coeptī. NEP. *The Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.*

Veterēs orātiōnēs legi sunt dēsitae. CIC. *The old speeches have ceased to be read.*
When the Passives are really Reflexives or Neuter, the active forms may be used.

2. Verbs of Will and Desire take **ut** as well as the Inf. So regularly **opto**, *I choose*.

3. Verbs which denote Hope and Promise take the Accusative and Future Infinitive (occasionally as in English) :

Spēro mē hōc adeptūrum esse, *I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.*

Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, *he kept promising that he would come (to come).*

Doceo, *I teach*, **jubeo**, *I bid*, **veto**, *I forbid*, **sino**, *I let*, take the Infinitive as a Secondary Accusative :

Dionysius nē collum tonsōri committeret tondēre filiās suās docuit. CIC. *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving).*

Ipse jubet mortis tē meminisse Deus. MART. (375.)

Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam. HOR. *Life's brief and forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.*

Neu Mēdōs sinās equitāre inultōs. HOR. *Nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.*

4. POETICAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE: The poets use the Infinitive as an Object with great freedom:

1.) After many verbs which are not auxiliary in Prose:

Ardet ruere. OV. *He glows (he burns) to rush.*

Quid sit futūrum crās fuge quaerere. HOR. *What will be to-morrow, fly the question.*

Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupidō. OV. (377.)

2.) For the Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive, see 429, R. 4.

3.) For the Accusative of the Gerundive:

Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācri tibiā sūmēs celebrāre, Clīo? HOR. *What man or hero will thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Clío? (sūmēs celebrandum.)*

But **dare** is used with the Infin. even in prose, in familiar phrases: **dare bibere**, *to give to drink.*

4.) For **ut**, of purpose; **ad** with the Gerund, or Gerundive; or Supine:

Tunc ego: nōn oculōs sed ventrem pascere vēni. MART. *Then I: I'm come to feed my belly, not my eyes.*

Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās. PROP. *She is always sending me to the ocean to look for pearls.*

5.) For the Supine in -ū, **ad** with Gerund, or the like:

Rōma capī facilis. LUCAN. *Rome is easy to be taken, to take (facile capitur).*

6.) In fine, the Infinitive is often used because the word or phrase is considered an equivalent to a verb of creation. In all these points the Post-republican prose follows poetry more or less closely.

INFINITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

425. The Infinitive, as a verbal Substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula **esse**, *to be*, and the like:

Doctō hominī et ērudītō vivere est cōgitāre. CIC. *To a learned and cultivated man to live is to think.*

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

426. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

REMARK.—Of course the Infinitive may be quoted as an abstract notion:

Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere." SEN. *There is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."*

NOM. **Legere difficile est**, *reading (to read) is hard to do.*

GEN. **Ars legendī**, *the art of reading.*

Puer studiōsus est legendī, *the boy is zealous of reading.*

DAT. **Puer operam dat legendō**, *the boy devotes himself to reading.*

ACC. **Puer cupit legere**, *the boy is desirous to read.*

Puer prōpensus est ad legendum, *the boy has a bent toward reading.*

ABL. **Puer discit legendō**, *the boy learns by reading.*

427. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Studium obtemperandī lēgibus. *Zeal for obedience to the laws.*

REMARKS.—1. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive. (243, R. 1.) The signification of necessity comes mainly from its use as a predicate. Verbal Nouns are Active or Passive according to the point of view. (Compare 361.) Worthy of note is the fact that the leading form of the Greek Active Infinitive is ultimately a Present Participle Passive.

2. Gerundive and Perfect Participle Passive are often translated alike; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātē restituere cōnāsunt. *By the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country's freedom to her.*

Caesare interfectō, Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātem nōn restituērunt. *By murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country's freedom to her.*

428. *Gerundive for Gerund.*—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

GEN. **Plācandī Deī**, *of appeasing God.*

DAT. **Plācandō Deō**, *for appeasing God.*

ABL. **Plācandō Deō**, *by appeasing God.*

In the model period this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

Ad plācandōs Deōs, *for appeasing the gods.*

In plācandīs Deīs, *in appeasing the gods.*

REMARKS.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive Form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference. Liv. xxi. 5; xxv. 40; xxviii. 37; xxx. 26. The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Perf. Pass. Participle in preference to an Abstract Noun (357, R. 2.)

2. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are not attracted: **studium agendī aliqui** *desire of doing something*; **cupiditās plūra habendī** *greed for having more*. But when the Neuter Adjective has become a substantive (195, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: **modus investigandī vēri**, *the method of investigating the truth*.

3. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from Accusative. Hence the impersonal form must be used with all verbs that do not take an Accusative.

Valētudinī parcendum est, *the health must be spared.*

EXCEPTIONS.—**Ūtendus**, *to be used*; **fruendus**, *to be enjoyed*; **potiendus**, *to be pressed*; **fungendus**, *to be discharged*; **vescendus**, *to be eaten* (405); which, however,

used only * in the oblique cases. Further, *medendus*, to be healed; *paenitendus*, to be regretted.

Expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs. CIC. *Riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures.* But :

Ūtendum est aetāte, citō pede lābitur aetās. OV. *Life's season is to be enjoyed, swift-footed glides that season.*

The Impersonal Nominative with the Accus. is rare and antiquated :

Aeternās quoniam paenās in morte timendum est. LUCR. *Since we must fear eternal punishments in death.*

GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

429. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

Sapientia ars vīvendī putanda est. CIC. *Philosophy is to be considered the art of living.*

Et propter vītam vīvendī perdere causās. JUV. *And on account of life, to lose the reasons for living.*

Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendī. OV. *And hoarse flatness, and a monstrous love of talking.*

Triste est ipsum nōmen carendī. CIC. *Dismal is the mere word "carere" (go without).*

Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nulla Deī. OV. *I am not without hope of appeasing God.*

Ignōrant cupidī maledīcendī plūs invidiam quam convīcium posse. QUINT. *Those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.*

Titus equitandī perītissimus fuit. SUET. *Titus was exceedingly skillful riding.*

Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor erat. LIV. *Neither thought of yielding his own body.*

Quī hīc mōs obsidendī viās et virōs aliēnōs appellandī? LIV. *What sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands?*

Summa ēlūdendī occāsio est mihi nunc senēs. TER. *I have a tip-top chance to fool the old folks now.*

REMARKS.—1. As *meī, tuī, suī, nōstri, vestri*, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, *meum, my being; tuum, thy being; suum, one's being*, etc., the Gerundive is put the same form: *conservandī suī, of preserving themselves; vestri adhortandī, of exhorting you.*

Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī. OV. *Let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).*

Similar constructions are also found with other words: *exemplōrum ēligendī potētās, power of choosing examples.*

* In Cic. Fin. 1, 1, 3, *fruenda* (Nom.) is used for the sake of *paranda*.

Agitur utrum Antōniō facultās dētur agrōrum suis latrōnibus condōnand.
CIC. *The question is whether Antony shall be empowered to give away lands to his highwaymen.*

2. Very common in causā (with the Gen. of Gerund and Gerundive), for the sake of to express design: dōlōr um effugiendōrum causā, for the sake of escaping sufferings; but sometimes the Genitive alone is used:

Lepidus arma cōpit libertātis subvertendae. SALL. *Lepidus took up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.*

More commonly ad. rarely ob. See 433.

Esse with this Genitive may be translated by *serve to*.

Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae sunt. LIV. *All such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord).*

Comp. CAES. B. G. v. 8: Nāvēs quās suī quisque commodi fecerat. *Ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter) of personal convenience.*

3. Tempus est. it is (high) time: consilium est. it is my (your, his) plan; and a few others, may be used with the Infinitive: Tempus abire tibi est, *It is time for you to go away.*

But when tempus is used in the sense of *season* ("a time to weep and a time to laugh"), the Gerund. or Gerundive, is retained:

Lysander tempus rei gerendae nō dimisit. NEP. *Lysander did not let the opportunity of action slip.*

4. The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund. inasmuch as they construe the Adjective or Substantive like the Cognate Verb.

(At) sēcūra quies et nēscia fallere (= quae nēsciat fallere) vita. VER. *Quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignorant of disappointment).*

DATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

430. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation:

Aqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendō. PLIN. *Alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink).*

Lignum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendis ignibus. SEN. *Wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).*

Referundae ego habeo linguam nātam grātiaē. PLAUT. *I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness.*

Rarer is the Dative in combination with the Accusative.

Consul plācandis diis dat operam. LIV. *The consul does his endeavor to appease the gods.*

Especially to be noticed is the Dative with esse, and in names of Boards:

Solvendō civitatēs nōn erant. CIC. *The communities were not equal (ready for) payment (were not solvent).*

Sapiens virēs suās nōvit, scit sē esse onerī ferendō. SEN. *The man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.*

Decemvirī lēgibus scribūndīs, Decemvirs for (charged with) drawing up laws.

REMARK.—Later writers treat the Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive as if equivalent ad.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

431. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such Verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving.

Diviti hominī id aurum servandum dedit. PLAUT. *He gave that gold to a rich man to keep.*

Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat. NEP. *Conon has the walls rebuilt.*

Patriam diripiendam relinquimus. CIC. *We leave our country to be plundered.*

Carvilius aedem faciendam locāvit. LIV. *Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.*

Of course the Passive form has the Nominative :

Filius Philippī Dēmōtrius ad patrem redūcendus lēgātis datus est. V. *The son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.*

ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

Ūnus homō nōbīs cunctandō restituit rem. ENNIUS. *One man by arguing raised our cause again.*

Cēde repugnantī, cēdendō victor abībīs. OV. *Yield to her when she insists ; you'll come off victor by yielding.*

Quid digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenendō ? OV. (390, R.)

Exercendō quotidiē milite hostem opperiēbātur. LIV. *Drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy.*

Occasionally with the Comparative.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

433. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions **ad** and **inter**, seldom **ante**, **circā**, **in**, **ob**.

Nulla rēs tantum ad dicendum prōficīt quantum scriptio. CIC. *Nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.*

Atticus philosophōrum praeceptis ad vitam agendam nōn ad ostentationem utēbatur. NEP. *Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display.*

Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspirāvit. LIV. *While in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

434. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions *ab, dē, ex*, often *in*, seldom *cum* and *prō*, and *sine* never.

Prohibenda maximē est ira in pūniendō. CIC. *Especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing.*

Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus. CIC. *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.*

Philosophī in iis ipsis librīs quōs scribunt dē contemnendā glōriā suā nōmina inscribunt. CIC. (384, R. 1.)

Ex discendō capimus voluptātem. CIC. *We receive pleasure from learning.*

SUPINE.

435. The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

THE ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.

436. The Accusative Supine (Supine in *-um*) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion :

Gallī gallinācei cum sōle eunt cubitum. PLIN. *Cocks go to roost at sunset.*

Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. OV. *They come to see the show, they come to be themselves a show.*

Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invitās canēs. PLAUT. *'Tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.*

Hostis est uxōr invita quae ad virum nuptum datur. PLAUT. (344, R. 1.)

REMARKS.—1. The Accusative Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common :

Hannibal patriam dēfensum (more usual : ad dēfendendam patriam) revocātus est. NEP. *Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.*

2. Especially common is the use of the Supine after the verb *ire*, *to go* :

Cūr tē is perditum ? TER. *Why are you going to ruin yourself ?*

Turpissimī virī bonōrum praemia ēreptum eunt. SALL. *The scoundrels are going to take away by force the rewards of the better classes.*

The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of *ire*, *go*, *irī*, and the Supine :

Dicunt reum damnatum iri. *They say that the defendant will be condemned, (that they are going (iri from itur, 199. R. 1.), that there is a movement, to condemn the accused).*
The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nominative (528).

Reus damnatum iri vidēbatur, QUINT. *The accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

THE ABLATIVE SUPINE.

437. The Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū) is used chiefly with adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which:

Mirabile dictū, *Wonderful (in the telling) to tell, visū,* to behold.

Hoc dictū quam rē facilius est. LIV. *This is easier in the saying than the fact (easier said than done).*

REMARKS.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly: **ctū,** to tell; **factū,** to do; **audītū,** to hear; **visū,** to see; **cognitū,** to know. Authors vary much. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong.

2. **Ad,** with the Gerundive, is often used instead:

Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum, *food (that is) very easy to digest.*

The Infinitive, **facilis concoqui,** is poetical.

3. The local use of the Ablative Supine is very rare:

Vilicus primus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat. CATO. *The steward is the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.*

4. The Supine in -ū never takes an object.

PARTICIPLE.

438. The Participle may be used as a Substantive, but even when generally retains something of its predicative nature.

Nihil est magnum somniantī. CIC. *Nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).*

Rēgia, crēde mihī, rēs est succurrere lapsis. OV. *It is a kingly thing, believe me (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.*

REMARKS.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: **rectē facta,** right actions; **facētē dictum,** a witty remark.

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a Substantive: **ditō,** it having been heard; **compertō,** it having been found out.

So also an adjective used predicatively: the Substantive is commonly supplied by a sentence. The construction is of limited use.

Alexander auditō Dārēum mōvisse ab Ecbatanis fugientem insequi pergit. PLUT. *Alexander, (it) having (been) heard that Darius had decamped from Ecbatana, proceeds to follow him up on his flight.*

439. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic:

Epaminōndās erat temporibus sapienter ūtens, *Epaminondas was a man who used to use opportunities wisely (= is qui ūteretur).*

REMARK.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the Participle or Adjective with the Relative and Subjunctive:

Rēs parva dictū, sed quae studiis in magnum certāmen excesserit. LIV. *A small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest.*

ADVERB.

440. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.

2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations:

Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; ferē omnēs, almost all nimis saepe, too often; admodum adulescens, a mere youth, quite a youth lātē rēx (VERG.), *wide-ruling; bis consul, twice consul; duo simul bella two simultaneous wars.*

REMARK.—The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

441. *Position of the Adverb.*—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

Injūstē facit, he acts unwisely.

Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome.

Valdē diligenter, very carefully.

Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry:

Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.

Vixit dum vixit bene. TER. *He lived while he lived (and lived well.*

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

442. There are two original negatives in Latin, *Nē* and *Haud* (*haut, hau*). From *nē* is derived *nōn* (*nē-oinom (ūnum)*, *no-when not*). *Nē* is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in *nē—quider*. *Nōn* is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive *haud*, mainly with Adjectives and Adverbs.

NEGATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.

443. 1. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is **nōn**, the absolute *not*.

Quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat, *Whom he likes, he likes; whom he does not like, he does not like.*

Nōn ausim, *I should not venture.*

REMARK.—**Nōn** as the emphatic, specific negative may negative anything. (See 263, R.)

2. **Haud** in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: **haud magnus,** *not great*; **haud male,** *not badly*.

Haud scio (Hauscio), in **haud scio an,** is the chief exception (459, R.)

In antitheses **nōn** is used, and not **haud**:

Nōn est vivere sed valēre vīta. MARTIAL. *Not living, but being well, is life.*

REMARK.—Other negative expressions are: **haudquāquam, nēquāquam, neutiquam,** *by no means*; **nihil,** *nothing*. (“Adam, with such counsel *nothing* swayed.”) On **nullus,** see 304, R. 2.

444. *Subdivision of the Negative.*—A general negative may be subdivided by **neque—neque,** as well as by **aut—aut,** or strengthened by **nē—quidem,** *not even*:

Nihil unquam neque insolens neque glōriōsum ex ore Timoleonis prōcessit. NEP. *Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.*

Consciōrum nēmo aut latuit aut fūgit. LIV. *Of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.*

Nunquam Scīpiōnem nē minimā quidem rē offendī. CIC. *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.*

(“I will give no thousand crowns *neither*.”—SHAKES.)

REMARK.—In the same way **nego,** *I say no,* is continued by **neque—neque (nec—nec)**:

Negant nec virtūtēs nec vitia crēscere. CIC. *They deny that either virtues or vices increase.*

445. *Negative Combinations.*—In English, we say either *no one ever,* or, *never any one*; *nothing ever,* or, *never anything*; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: **nēmo unquam,** *no one ever*:

Verrēs nihil unquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū. CIC. *Verres never did anything without some profit or other.*

REMARK.—*No one yet* is **nōndum quisquam.**

446. **Nego** (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of **dico nōn**, *I say—not*.

Negant quemquam virum bonum esse nisi sapientem. CIC. *They say that no one is a good man except the sage.*

REMARK.—The positive (**ājo**, *I say*) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause. CAES. B. G. i. 19. The same thing happens with the other negatives.

POSITION OF THE NEGATIVE.

447. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words :

Potes nōn revertī. SEN. *Possibly you may not return.*

Nōn potes revertī, *You cannot possibly return.*

Saepe virī fallunt; tenerae nōn saepe puellae. OV. *Often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.*

Nōn omnis aetās, Lūde, lūdō convenit. PLAUT. (346.)

REMARKS.—1. As the Copula **esse**, *to be*, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice : **fēlix nōn erat**, *he wasn't happy*; **nōn fēlix erat**, *he was NOT happy, he was FAR FROM happy*.

2. **Nē—quidem** bestrides the emphatic word or emphatic group (444).

448. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative :

Nōn nego, *I do not deny (I admit).*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn possum nōn**, *I cannot but, (I must).*

Quī mortem in malīs pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre. CIC. *He who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive :

Nōn indoctus, *a highly-educated man*; **nōn sum nēscius,** *I am well aware.*

Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī. HOR. *Swart (soiled) with (no dis)honorable dust.*

Nōn ignāra malī miseris succurrere discō. VERG. *Not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

This figure, which has a very wide application, is called **Litotēs** (*Λιτότης*), or *Understatement*.

3. It follows from R. 2. that **nec nōn** is not simply equivalent to **et, and** : **nec** belongs to the sentence, **nōn** to the particular word :

Nec hōc Zēno nōn vīdit. CIC. *Nor did Zeno fail to see this.*

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations :

Indefinite Affirmative.

nōnnihil,	<i>somewhat;</i>
nōnnēmo,	<i>some one, some;</i>
nōnnulli,	<i>some people;</i>
nōnnumquam,	<i>sometimes;</i>
nōnnusquam.	<i>somewhere;</i>

General Affirmative.

nihil nōn,	<i>every thing;</i>
nēmo nōn,	<i>everybody;</i>
nulli nōn,	<i>all;</i>
numquam nōn,	<i>always;</i>
nusquam nōn,	<i>everywhere.</i>

In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmo hostis est. CIC. *In the senate-house itself there are enemies*
nēmo nōn hostis est, everybody is an enemy).

Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī. OV. *I have some hope of appeasing*
god (nulla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).

Nēmo nōn didicisse māvult quam discere. QUINT. *Everybody prefers having*
learned to learning.

NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

449. **Nē** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive:

Nē cēde malīs. VERG. *Yield not thou to misfortunes.*

Nē transieris Hībērum. LIV. *Do not cross the Ebro.*

Nē vīvam, *May I cease to live.*

REMARK.—The Negative **nōn** is sometimes used instead of **nē**, when contrast is emphasized:

Aut nōn tentāris aut perſice. OV. *Either attempt not, or achieve.*

450. **Nē** is continued by **nēve** or **neu**:

Nē illam vēndās neu mē perdās hominem amantem. PLAUT. *Don't*
sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.

INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

451. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

452. A question may relate:

I. To the existence or non-existence of the Predicate: Predicate Question:

Vivitne pater? *Is my father alive?*

II. To some undetermined integrant of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier: Nominal Question:

Quis est? *Who is it?* **Quid ais?** *What do you say?* **Quī hīc mōs?**
What sort of way is this? **Cūr nōn discēdis?** *Why do you not depart?*

For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

REMARKS.—1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (464).

2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

Quid interest inter perjūrum et mendācem? CIC. *What is the difference between a perjured man and a liar?*

All questions of this kind are called *Rhetorical*.

453. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I?* (simple); *Am I, or am I not?* (disjunctive).

REMARK.—Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

454. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I?* (direct) *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

455. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

Infēlix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit? SEN. *Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible!)

Heus, inquit, linguam vīs meam praeclūdere? PHAEDR. *Ho! ho! ho! you wish to shut my mouth, you do.* (You shall not.)

Quod dicis tē nōn fēcisse, ego fēcī? QUINT. *Because you say you did not do it, I did?* (Absurd!)

REMARK.—When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or -**ne**. Repeated questioning is passionate.

456. *Interrogative Particles*.—**Ne** (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker:

Omnisne pecūnia solūta est? CIC. *Is ALL the money paid?*

Estne omnis pecūnia solūta? *Is all the money paid?*

REMARKS.—1. **Ne** is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and **ne** is not always strictly impartial.

2. **Ne** sometimes cuts off a preceding -s, and shortens the long vowel of the same, and often drops its own e. **Viden?** *Seest?* **Tūn?** *You?*

457. **Nōnne** expects the answer *Yes*:

Nōnne meministi? CIC. *Do you not remember?*

Nōnne is generōsissimus quī optimus? QUINT. *Is he not the true gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with **ne**: **nēmōne**, **nihilne**, and the like,

458. *Num* expects the answer *No* :

Num quis hīc alius praeter mē atque tē ? Nēmo est. PLAUT. *Is any body here besides you and me ? No.*

Num tibi quum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcula ? HOR. *When thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups ? [No.]*

459. *An* (*or*) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or rather involved. The second alternative with *an* serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (*or, then*) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

Nōn manum abstinēs ? An tibi jam māvis cerebrum dispergam hīc ? TER. *Are you not going to keep your hands off ? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now ?*

(*Vir custōdit absens.*) (*My husband keeps guard, though absent.*)

(*Is it not so ?*) *An nēscīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ?* OV. *Or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted, in connection with *an*, are the phrases, *nēscio an*, *haud scio an*, *I do not know but* ; *dubito an*, *I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think* ; which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation :

Haud scio an ita sit. CIC. *I do not know but it is so.*

Haud scio an nulla senectūs beātiōr esse possit. CIC. *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier.*

Dubito an Thrasybūlum primum omnium pōnam. NEP. *I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.*

So *forsitan*, *perhaps*, regularly with the Potential Subjunctive :

Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās. VERG. *Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.*

In later Latin *an* is used as a simple interrogative, and *nēscio an* = *nēscio num*.

DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

460. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

First Clause.

Second and Subsequent Clauses.

utrum, whether,

an, (anne), or

utrumne,

an,

-ne,

an,

an (anne),

ne (chiefly in indirect questions).

Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderit, a n id prō nihilō habēs? CIC. *Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?*

Vōs ne Lūcium Domitium a n vōs Lūcius Domitius dēseruit? CAES. *Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you?*

Ēloquar an sileam? VERG. *Shall I speak, or hold my peace?*

Utrum hōc tū parum meministī, a n ego nōn satis intellexī, a n mūtāstī sententiam? CIC. *Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?*

Sunt haec tua verba necne? CIC. *Are these your words, or no?*

REMARK.—**Aut** (*or*), in questions, is not to be confounded with **an**. **Aut** gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (*or in other words*).

Voluptās meliōremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? CIC. *Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man?* (Answer: *neither*.)

Tibi ego an tū mihi servus es? PLAUT. *Am I slave to you or you to me—which?* (The MS. reading **aut** would expect the answer: *neither*).

461. In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necne**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**:

Is ne est quem quaero, a n nōn? *Is that the man I am looking for, or not?*

Sitque memor nōstrī n e c n e, referte mihi. OV. (195, R. 7.)

REMARK.—**Utrum** is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for *whether or no?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

462. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:

1. **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*:

Speculārī jussī sunt n u m sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent. LIV. *They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.*

2. **Sī**, *if*, is used for *whether*, chiefly after verbs and sentences, implying trial:

Tentāta rēs est sī primō impetū capī Ardea posset. LIV. *An attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see), if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main). Compare Ō sī (254).*

3. **An** is sometimes used for **num** and **ne**, but never in model prose:

Consuluit deinde Alexander a n tōtius orbis imperium sibi dēstinā-
et pater. CURT. *Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father des-
ned for him the empire of the whole world.*

4. The form ——— ne is found chiefly in the indirect ques-
tion :

Tarquinius Prisci Tarquinii regis filius neposne fuerit parum liquet.
IV. *Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder,
oes not appear.*

REMARK.—The form ne—ne is poetical.

SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

463. Direct :

Is the last syllable short or long?

Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est a n longa ?
brevis ne est a n longa ?

Indirect :

In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long :

In versū nihil rēfert	{	utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit a n longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevis ne sit a n longa.
		postrēma syllaba brevis a n longa sit. CIC. postrēma syllaba brevis sit longa n e.

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

I. IN DIRECT QUESTIONS.

464. The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected
r anticipated answer.

465. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when
he question is *genuine*.

A. *Quis homo est?* B. *Ego sum.* TER. *Who is that? It is I.*

A. *Vivitne [pater?]* B. *Vivum liquimus.* PLAUT. *Is father alive? We
eft him alive.*

466. Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer
with the negative when the question is *rhetorical*.

Quis paupertātem nōn extimescit? CIC. *Who does not dread poverty?*

REMARK.—**Nōnne** and **num** in the direct question are really rhetorical. With **nōnne** a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 452, R. 2.

467. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative or anticipate Potential answers. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative answers, chiefly in the First Person.

A. **Abeam?** B. **Abī.** PLAUT. *Shall I go away? Go.*

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse. (258.)

468. The Subjunctive is used in rhetorical questions, which imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker:

Quis hōc crēdat? *Who would believe this?* [No one.] **Quid faceret aliud?** *What else was he to do?* [Nothing.]

Quis tulerit Gracchōs de sēditōne quarentēs? JUV. (251.)

REMARK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 560.

II. IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

469. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative:

Considerābimus quid fēcerit (Ind. **fēcit**), **quid faciat** (Ind. **facit**), **quid factūrus sit** (Ind. **faciet** or **factūrus est**). CIC. *We will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

Epaminōndās quaesivī salvasne esset clipeus. CIC. *Epaminonda asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvasne est?)*

The Subjunctive may be original:

Ipsē docet quid agam (210); **fās est et ab hoste docērī.** OV. (**Quid agam, what I am to do; not, what I am doing**). See 258.

REMARKS.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed:

So often with **dīc**, *say*, **vidē**, *see*, **quaere**, *ask*. **Dīc. quid est?** *Tell me, what is it (Dīc quid sit, Tell me what it is.)*

Quīn tū ūnō verbō dīc: quid est quod mē velis? TER. *Won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me?*

Dīc mihi quid fecī nisi nōn sapienter amāvī. OV. *Tell me what have I done, say that I have loved unwisely.*

The early poets go even further than this.

2. **Nēscio quis**, **nēscio quid**, **nēscio quī**, **nēscio quod**, *I know not who, what, which*, are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction.

So also, *nēscio quōmodo*, *I know not how = strangely*; and *mīrum quantum*, *it (is) marvellous how much = wonderfully*, are used as adverbs;

Mīrum quantum prōfuit ad concordiam. LIV. *It served wonderfully to promote harmony.*

Nēscio quid mājus nāscitur Īliade. PROP. *Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Iliad.*

Nēscio quō pactō vel magis hominēs juvat glōria lāta quam magna. PLIN. EP. *Somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a wide-spread reputation than a grand one.*

The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

3. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative *quis?* except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (612, R. 2.)

Interrogative: dic quid rogem, *Tell me what it is I am asking.*

Relative: dic quod rogo. TER. *Tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).*

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized:

Dicam quod sentio, *I will tell you my real opinion.*

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interrogatives:

Quaerāmus ubi (=ibi ubi) maleficium inveniri potest. CIC. *Let us look for the misdeed in the place where it can be found.*

PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

470. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause (*Prolēpsis*):

Nōsti Marcellum quam tardus sit. CIC. *You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.*

471. Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a causal sentence becomes consecutive:

Quam ūtilitātem petentēs scire cupimus illa quae occulta nōbīs sunt? CIC. *What advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?*

Solōn Pisistratō tyrannō quaerenti quā tandem spē frētus sibi tam audāciter resisteret respondisse dicitur, senectūte. SEN. *Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what earthly hope relying (= on what hope he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered "old age."*

472. Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English:

Sessum it praetor. Quid ut iudicetur? CIC. *The judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)*

REMARK.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause.

YES AND NO.

473. *Yes* is represented :

1. By **sānē**, (literally) *soundly*, **sānē quidem**, *yes indeed*, **etiam**, *even (so)*, **vērō**, *of a truth, ita, so*, **omnīnō**, *by all means*, **certē**, *surely*, **certō**, *for certain*, **admodum**, *to a degree*.

2. By **immo** or **īmo**, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—*yes indeed, nay rather*.

Ecquid placeant aedēs mē rogās? Immo. PLAUT. *Do I like the house, you ask me? Yes, indeed.*

Causa igitur nōn bona est? Immo optima. CIC. *The cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.*

3. By **cēnseo**, *I think so*.

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles :

Estisne? Sumus. *Are you? We are.*

Dāsne? Dō sānē. *Do you grant? I do indeed.*

No is represented :

1. By **nōn**, **nōn vērō**, **nōn ita**, **minimē**, *by no means*, **nihil**, *nothing*, **minimē vērō**, **nihil sānē**, **nihil minus**.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :

Nōn irāta es? Nōn sum irāta, *You are not angry? I am not.*

REMARK.—*Yes, for*, and *no, for*, are often expressed simply by **nam** and **enim** :

Tum Antōnius: Herī e n i m; inquit, hoc mihi prōposueram. CIC. *Then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

474. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

He became poor and we became rich, is a coördinate sentence.

He became poor that we might be rich, is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause.

“*He became poor*” is the Principal Clause, “*that we might be rich*” is the Subordinate Clause.

REMARK.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, *vivam si vivet*, *let me live if she lives*, my living depends on her living; yet “*vivam*” is the principal, “*si vivet*” the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

COÖRDINATION.

475. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

REMARK.—Co-ordinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.

COPULATIVE SENTENCES.

476. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: *et*, *-que*, *atque (ac)*, *etiam*, *quoque*.

477. *Et* is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes:

Pānem et aquam nātūra dēsīderat. SEN. *Bread and water* (is what nature calls for).

Probitās laudātur et alget. JUV. *Honesty is bepraised and—freezes*.

478. *-Que* (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first:

Senātus populus que Rōmānus, *The Senate and people of Rome*.

Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander. LIV. *There Alexander died and was buried*.

Combinations: *et — et*;

-que — et;

et — que (only for two words);

-que — que, chiefly in poetry (also LIV. and SALL.)

Et dominō satis et nimium fūrīque lupōque. TIB. *Enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf*.

479. **Atque** (compounded of **ad** and **-que**) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (**-que**). **Ac** (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than **atque**, and almost equivalent to **et**:

Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs. SALL. *Within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.*

A. **Ego servōs?** (29.) B. **Atque meus.** PLAUT. *I—a slave? And mine to boot.*

Atque or **ac** is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which **et** has been already employed:

Et potentēs sequitur invidia et humilēs abjectōsque contemptus et turpēs ac nocentēs odium. QUINT. *The powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred.*

REMARKS.—1. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** or **ac**. See 645.

2. On the Latin proneness to subordination by means of the participle, see 409, R. 2, and 667, R. 1.

480. **Etiam**, *even (now), yet, still*, exaggerates (heightens) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs:

Nōbīs rēs familiāris e t i a m ad necessāria deest, *We lack means even for necessaries of life.*

Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat e t i a m ut caecus esset. CIC. (558.)

Of time:

Nōn satis pernōstī mē e t i a m quālis sim. TER. *You still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am.*

REMARK.—**Et** is sometimes used for **etiam**, but sparingly. So **et ipse**, and kindred expressions.

481. **Quoque**, *so also*, complements (compare **-que**) and always follows the words to which it belongs:

Quum patri Timothei populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dedit. NEP. *The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise).*

REMARK.—The difference between **etiam** and **quoque** is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

Grande et conspicuum nōstrō quoque tempore monstrum. JUV. *A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

482. *Copulation by means of the Negative.*—Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is the rule in Latin:

Opiniōne vulgī rapimur in errōrem nec vĕra cernimus. CIC. *By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

Caesar substitit neque hostem lacessivit. CAES. *Caesar halted and did not harass the enemy (without harassing the enemy).*

REMARKS.—1. *Et—nōn*, and . . . *not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic:

Et militāvī nōn sine glōriā. HOR. *And I have been a soldier not without glory.*
On *nec nōn*, the opposite of *et nōn*, see 448, R. 3.

2. Combinations: *Neque — neque*; *nec — nec*. *neque — nec.*
neque — que. (nec — neque.)
et — neque.

3. Paradigms: *And no one,* *neque quisquam,* *nor any one.*
And no— *neque ullus,* *nor any.*
And nothing, *neque quidquam,* *nor any thing.*
And never, *neque unquam,* *nor ever.*

Neque amet quemquam nec amētur ab ullō. JUV. *May he love no one, and be loved by none.*

4. *Nec* is often nearly equivalent to *nec tamen*, and yet not:

Extrā invidiam nec extrā glōriam erat, TAC. *He was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory.*

483. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When *multus*, *much*, *many*, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds*, *multa et praeclāra facinora*; *many good qualities*, *multae bonaeque artēs*.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take *et* throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration:

Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs; or, *Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs*, *Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.*

3. *Et* is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulae*:

Virī nōn est dēbilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere. CIC. *It is unmanly to allow oneself to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.*

Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es idem. MART. (296.)

Patrēs Conscriptī, *Fathers* (and) *Conscript* (Senators).

Jūpiter Optimus Maximus, *Father Jove, supremely good* (and) *great.*

OTHER PARTICLES EMPLOYED.

484. Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal: **Tum — tum,** *then — then*; **nunc — nunc, modo — modo,** *now — now*; **simul — simul,** *at the same time.* **Tum Graecē — tum Latinē,** *partly in Greek, partly in Latin.*

Horātius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnes. LIV. *Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.*

Modo hūc, modo illūc, *now hither, now thither* (*hither and thither*).

Simul spernēbant, simul metuēbant, *they despised and feared at the same time* (*they at once despised and feared*).

On **Quum — tum,** see 589.

2. Comparative: **ut — ita,** *as — so*:

Dolābellam ut Tarsensēs ita Lāodicēnī ultrō arcessiērunt, *As the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea* (= Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) *sent for Dolabella of their own accord.*

Often, however, there is an adversative idea:

Haec omnia ut invitīs ita nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsacta. LIV. *All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing* (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

3. Adversative: **Nōn modo, nōn solum, nōn tantum,** *not only*: **sed etiam, vērū etiam,** *but even, but also* (sometimes simply *sed*):

Urbēs maritimae nōn solum multis periculis oppositae sunt sed etiam caecis. CIC. *Cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones).*

Nōn docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt. QUINT. *They wish not merely to be taught but to be tickled to boot.*

In the negative form, **nōn modo nōn,** *not only not*; **sed nē . . . quidem** *but not even*; **sed vix,** *but hardly.*

Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor sed nē reprehendo quidem factum tuum. CIC. *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of **nōn modo (solum) nōn—sed nē—quidem,** the latter **nō** is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second:

Pisōne consule senātūi nōn sōlum juvāre rempublicam sed nē lūgēre quidem licēbat. CIC. *When Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate (= the senate was not only not free) to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn (for her).*

2. **Nēdum**, *not* (to speak of) *yet, much less*, is also used, either with or without a verb in the subjunctive:

Satrapa nunquam sufferre ējus sumptūs queat, nēdum tū possis. TER. *A nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.*

Nēdum from Livy on is used after affirmative clauses as well.

ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

485. The adversative particles are: **autem**, **sed**, **vērūm**, **vērō**, **at**, **atquē**, **tamen**, **cēterum**. Of these only **sed** and **tamen** are really adversative.

486. **Autem** (postpositive) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*. It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover, furthermore, now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*), and is often used in syllogisms:

Rūmōribus mēcum pugnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requīro. CIC. *You fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.*

Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est. CIC. *Everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.*

REMARK.—**Autem** commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic **est** or **sunt** occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So **igitur** and **enim**.

487. **Sed** (**set**) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, *to introduce a new thought*, or *to revive an old one*:

Nōn est vīvere s e d valēre vīta. MART. (443.)

Domitius nullā ille quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat. CIC. *Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.*

488. **Vērūm**, *it is true, true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to **sed** in its stronger sense:

Sī certum est facere, faciās; v ē r u m n ē post conferās culpam in nē. TER. *If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

489. *Vērō*, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement:

Platōnem Diōn adeō admirātus est ut sē tōtum eī trāderet. Neque vērō minus Plato dēlectātus est Diōne. NEP. *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

490. *At* (another form of *ad* = *in addition to*) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation:

Sī gravis dolor, brevis. At Philoctēta jam decimum annum in spē luncā jacet. CIC. *If pain is sharp, it is short. But Philoctetes has been lying in his cave going on ten years.*

“*At multis malis affectus?*” *Quis negat?* CIC. “*But he has suffered much?*” *Who denies it?*

Sī scelestus est at mī infidēlis nōn est. TER. *If he is a scamp, yet (at least) he is not unfaithful to me.*

At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam! CIC. *Well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!*

At vōbis male sit! CAT. *And ill luck to you!*

REMARK.—*Ast* = *at* + *set* (*sed*) is antiquated and poetic.

491. *Atquī* (*But how?* = *But what of that?*) is still stronger than *at*, and is used chiefly in argument:

Atquī perspicuum est hominem ē corpore animōque constāre. C. *But it is clear that man consists of body and soul; igitur, therefore.*

492. *Tamen* (literally, *even thus*), *nevertheless*, is often combined with *at*, *vērūm*, *sed*.

It is commonly prepositive, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic:

Nātūrā expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret. HOR. *You may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat (487).

493. *Cēterum*, *for the rest*, is used by the historians as adversative particle.

REMARK.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

494. The disjunctive particles are *aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, *sive* (*seu*).

495. **Aut, or,** denotes absolute exclusion or substitution :

Vinceris a u t vincis. PROP. *You are conquered or conquering.*

Aut is often = *or at least (aut saltem)* :

Cūnctī a u t magna pars fidem mūtāvissent. SALL. *All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

Duo a u t summum trēs juvenēs. LIV. *Two, or at most three, youths.*

Aut—aut, either—or :

Quaedam terrae partēs aut frīgore rigent aut ūruntur calōre. CIC. *Some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

A u t dic a u t accipe calcem. JUV. *Either speak or take a kick.*

496. **Vel** (literally, *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiam, even, potius, rather** :

Ego v e l Cluviēnus. JUV. *I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus.*

Per mē v e l stertās licet, nōn modo quiēscās. CIC. *For all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely sleep.*

Satis v e l etiam nimium multa. CIC. *Enough, or even too much.*

Epicūrus homo minimē malus v e l potius vir optimus, Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

Vel—vel, either—or (whether—or) :

Miltiadēs dixit ponte rescissō rēgem v e l hostium ferrō v e l inopiā paucīs diēbus interitūrum. NEP. *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

497. **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of **vel** (with numerals, *at most*) :

Cūr timeam dubitem v e locum dēfendere? JUV. *Why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?*

Bis terve, twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).

498. **Sive, (seu), if you choos,** gives a choice between two designations of the same object :

Urbem mātī seu novercae reliquit. LIV. *He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

499. **Sive—sive (seu—seu) whether—or (indifference) :**

Sive tū medicum adhibueris **sive** nōn adhibueris nōn convalēscēs. CIC. *Whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.*

Seu vīsa est catulis cerva fidēlibus **seu** rūpit teretēs Marsus aper plagās. HOR. *Whether a doe hath appeared to the faithful hounds, or a Marsian boar hath burst the tightly-twisted toils.*

CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE SENTENCES.

500. A. The *causal* particles are **nam**, **enim**, **namque**, and **etenim**, *for*.

Sensūs mirificē collocāti sunt. **Nam** oculi tanquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent. CIC. *The senses are admirably situated. For eyes, like the watchmen, occupy the highest post.*

Themistoclēs mūrōs Athēniensium restituit suō periculō. **Namque** Lacedaemonii prohibēre cōnāti sunt. NEP. *Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself. For the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.*

Piscēs ōva relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur. CIC. *Fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nam** is always put at the beginning of a sentence; **enim** is always postpositive (486, R.): **namque** and **etenim** are commonly put in the first place:

For what can you do? Nam quid agās? Quid enim agās? Namque quid agās? Etenim quid agās?

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (*as for instance*). **Quid enim agās** *What, for instance, can you do?* This is especially true of **enim**, but a broad difference between **nam** and **enim** (which is derived from **nam**) cannot be proved. **Etenim** is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground. **Nempe** (from **nam**) *namely, to wit, that is, of course*, is often used ironically.

Sed quālis rediit? **Nempe** ūnā nāve. JUV. *But in what style did he return? Wit one ship, forsooth.*

3. In **atenim**, **sed enim**, **vērumenim**, **enimvērō**, **vērumenimvērō**, as in **etenim enim** gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and **enim** is best left untranslated:

A. **Audī** quid dicam. B. **At enim** taedet jam audire eadem milliēs. TER. A. *Hear what I say. B. But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.*

501. B. *Illative* particles are **itaque**, **igitur**, **ergō**, **ideō**, **idcirco** **proinde**.

502. **Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement:

Nēmo ausus est liber Phōciōnem sepelire. **Itaque** ā servis sepultus

est. NEP. *No free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

503. *Igitur, therefore*, is generally postpositive, and is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement:

Mihi nōn satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiæ; falli igitur possumus. CIC. *ME it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

REMARK.—In historical writers, **igitur** is used both in position and signification as **itaque**. When emphatic, **igitur** is found even in the best authors at the head of the sentence.

504. *Ergō* denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than **igitur**. *Ideō, idcirco*, means *on that account*; *proinde, accordingly*, is employed in *exhortations, appeals*, and the like:

Negat haec filiam mē suam esse; nōn ergō haec māter mea est. PLAUT. *She says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

Quod praeceptum (nōsce tē ipsum) quia mājus erat quam ut ab homine vidērētur idcirco adsignātum est deō. CIC. *This precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.*

Proinde aut exeant aut quiēscant. CIC. *Let them then either depart or be quiet.*

SUBORDINATION.

505. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into *Adjective* and *Substantive* sentences, according as they represent *adjective* and *substantive* relations.

506. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form:

Uxor quae bona est (625) = uxor bona.

507. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for this class, and the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:

508. A. Substantive sentences.

I. Object sentences.

II. Adverbial sentences :

1. Of Cause. (Causal.)

2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and consecutive.)

3. Of Time. (Temporal.)

4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and concessive.)

B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

509. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by *Ōrātio Oblīqua*.

2. *Ōrātio Oblīqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to *Ōrātio Rectā*, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. *Ōrātio Oblīqua*, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :

Ō. R. *Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.*

Ō. R. *Socrates used to say : "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

Ō. O. *Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis esse ēloquentēs.*

Ō. O. *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity* :

Ō. R. *Nova nupta dicit : Fleo quod ire necesse est.* *The bride says : weep because I must needs go.*

Ō. O. *Nova nupta dicit sē flēre quod ire necesse sit.* *The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*

Ō. R. *Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse est.* **CAT.**
The bride weeps because she must go.

P. O. *Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse sit.*

The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).

4. Akin to \bar{O} . \bar{O} . is the so-called Attraction of Mood by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (666.)

Nōn dubito quīn nova nupta fleat quod ire necesse sit. *I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*

REMARK.—The full discussion of \bar{O} . \bar{O} . must, of course, be reserved for a later period, See 650.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

510. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause. Principal Tenses are followed by Principal; Historical, by Historical.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (Principal Tenses)	} are followed by	{	the Present Subjunctive (for continued action); the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past (Historical Tenses)	} are followed by	{	the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action); the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I have been doing, I had been doing.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511. PRES.	cognōsco,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{	quid faciās,
PURE PF.,	cognōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>		quid fēceris,
FUTURE,	cognōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		quid fēcissēs,
FUT. PERF.,	cognōvero,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		quid fēcissēs,
IMPERF.,	cognōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>	{	quid fēcissēs,
PLUPERF.,	cognōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>		quid fēcissēs,

*what you are doing ;
what you have done,
what you have been doing (what you did),
what you were doing (before).*

*what you were doing ;
what you had done, what you had been doing, what you were doing (before).*

HIST. PERF., Caesar cognōvit, *Caesar found out,* { *quid facerent hostēs,*
what the enemy was
doing ;
quid fēcissent hostēs,
what the enemy had
done.

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Nihil rēfert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit. CIC. (463.)

Nēmo adeō ferus est ut nōn mītescere possit. HOR. (556.)

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis. HOR. (574.)

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuum malī. PLAUT. (634.)

Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amanti. JUV. (609.)

Utrum nescis quam altē ascenderis an id prō nihilō habēs? CIC. (460.)

Laudat Panaetius Africānum quod fuerit abstinent. CIC. (542.)

Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitudine revocārit. CIC. (556.)

Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus ego. OV. (633.)

Sim licet extrēmum sicut sum missus in orbem. OV. (609.)

Multi fuērunt quī tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negōtiis publicis sē remōverint. CIC. (634.)

Nec mea quī digitis lūmina condatur erit. OV. (634.)

HISTORICAL TENSES.

Epaminōndās quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus. CIC. (469.)

Noctū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset. CIC. (541.)

Ad Appiū Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. (558.)

Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut jam nōn terrās solum sed mare etiam famā nōminis suī implēsset. LIV. *So great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land but even the sea with the reputation of her name.*

Quum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant. CAES. (587.)

Accidit ut unā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur. NEP. (513, R. 2.)

Āgēsilāus quum ex Aegyptō reverteretur dēcessit. NEP. (586.)

Dēlētā est Ausonum gēns perinde ac si internecivō bellō certāset. LIV. (603.)

Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pugnā erat expertus. LIV. (579.)

REMARKS.—1. The Historical Present is treated according to its Tense, or according to its Sense. Final sentences more commonly follow the Sense.

Caesar cognōscit	quid hostēs	{ 1. <i>faciant, fēcerint, is doing, has done, etc.</i> 2. <i>facerent, fēcissent, was doing, had done, etc.</i>
<i>Caesar finds out (found out)</i>	<i>what the enemy</i>	

Tense: *Ubiī Caesarem ōrant ut sibi parcant. CAES. The Ubiī beg Caesar to spare them.*

Sense: *Athēniēnsēs creant decem praetōrēs quī exercitū praeesent. NEP. The Athenians make ten generals to command their army.*

Sense and Tense: *Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur. CAES. They return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.*

So of authors :

Chrēsippus disputat aethera esse eum quem hominēs Jovem appellārent. CIC. Chrēsippus maintains that to be aether which men call Jove.

2. The Pure Perfect is often treated as an Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence :
Hodiē expertus sum quam cadūca fēlicitās esset. CURT. This day have I found out how perishable happiness is.

512. *Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.*—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

PRESENT,	<i>edunt, they are eating,</i>	{ ut <i>vivant,</i> <i>that they may live (to live).</i>
PURE PERF.,	<i>ēderunt, they have eaten,</i>	
FUTURE,	<i>edent, they will eat,</i>	
FUT. PERF.,	<i>ēderint, they will have eaten,</i>	
IMPERFECT,	<i>edēbant, they were eating,</i>	{ ut <i>viverent,</i> <i>that they might live (to live).</i>
PLUPERFECT,	<i>ēderant, they had eaten,</i>	
HIST. PER.,	<i>ēderunt, they ate,</i>	

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Atque ut vivāmus vivere dēsiniimus. MART. (424.)

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. OV. (424.)

Gallinae pennis fovent pullōs nē frigore laedantur. CIC. (545.)

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur. SEN. (545.)

Mē praemisit domum haec ut nuntiem uxōri suae. PLAUT. He has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.

Oculōs effodiam tibi nē observāre possis. PLAUT. I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me.

HISTORICAL TENSES.

Laelius veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsideria nātūrae. CIC. Laelius used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature.

Phaethōn ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. CIC. (546.)

REMARK.—The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin, when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in: *Ut sic dixerim, if I may be allowed to use the expression.*

Id agendum est ut satis vixerimus. SEN. *We must aim at having lived enough.*

Affirmare audeo me omni ope adnissurum ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conciperitis. LIV. *I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain.* (After a past tense, *ne concēpissētis.*)

513. *Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences).* In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or the Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense:

Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit. CIC. *Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.*

Perfect Tense (Pure):

Mūrēna Asiam sic obiit ut in eā neque avāritiæ neque luxuriæ vestigium reliquerit. CIC. *Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery.* (There is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist):

Equitēs hostium ācrit̄er cum equitatū nōstrō conflixerunt tamen ut nōstrī eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint. CAES. *The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills.*

Neque vērō tam remissō ac languidō animō quisquam omnium fuit qui eā nocte conquiēverit. CAES. *And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night.*

REMARKS.—1. Authors vary much in the use of this Perfect. Cicero uses it very rarely some abuse it.

2. After *accidit*, *contigit*, and other Verbs of Happening, the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form.

Accidit ut unā nocte omnēs Hermae dējicerentur. NEP. *It happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

REPRESENTATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which

are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

RULE I.—After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

<p>Cognōscam, <i>I shall (try to) find out,</i></p> <p>Cognōvero, <i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i></p>	}	<p>quid faciās, <i>what you are doing (will be doing).</i></p> <p>quid fēceris, <i>what you have done (will have done).</i></p>
---	---	---

But whenever the dependent future is subsequent to the leading future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

<p>Cognōscam, <i>I shall (try to) find out,</i></p> <p>Cognōvero, <i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i></p>	}	<p>quid factūrus sīs, <i>what you are going to do (what you will do).</i></p>
---	---	--

[**Considerābimus**], [*we shall consider*],

A. **Quid fēcerit aut quid ipsī acciderit aut quid dixerit,**
What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.

B. **Aut quid faciat, quid ipsī accidat, quid dicat,** *Or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. **Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsī cāsūrum sit, quā sit isūrus orātiōne.** **CIC.** *Or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

Tū quid sis actūrus sī ad mē scripseris pergrātum erit.
CIC. *It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.*

REMARK.—In some of these forms, ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real perfect, B a real present.

515. RULE II.—After the other tenses, the future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

<p>Cognōsco, <i>I am finding out,</i></p> <p>Cognōvī, <i>I have found out (know),</i></p> <p>Cognōscēbam, <i>I was trying to find out,</i></p> <p>Cognōveram, <i>I had found out,</i></p>	}	<p>quid factūrus sīs, (<i>what you are going to do</i>), <i>what you will do.</i></p> <p>quid factūrus essēs, (<i>what you were going to do</i>), <i>what you would do.</i></p>
---	---	---

Incertum est quam longa cūjusque nōstrum vīta futūra sit. **CIC.**
It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).

Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs. CIC. *Before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no).*

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quā ventūrae nōn sint. CIC. *Now I have no doubt that they will not come.*

REMARKS.—1. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

Cognōsco, **Cognōvī,** **quid factūrus fueris.** (what you have been going to do),
I am finding out, I have found out (know), what you would have done.

Cognōscēbam, **Cognōveram,** **[quid factūrus fuissēs,** (what you had been going to do),
I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have done, rare].

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Future Perfect Active, no Periphrastic for Passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammarians make up a periphrastic for all these from **futūrum sit, esset ut, as:**

Nōn dubito quā futūrum sit { **ut redierit,** *I do not doubt that he will have returned.*
ut maereat, *that he will grieve.*
ut necētur, *that he will be killed.*

For the dependent Fut. Perf. Pass. Cicero says (Att. ix. 7, 2):

Nōn dubito quā confecta jam rēs futūra sit, *I do not doubt but the matter will have been settled by this time.*

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of **posse.** (240, R. 3.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient:

Gallī nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī sī rem obtinuerint finem omnium labōrum exspectant. CAES. *The Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).*

Vēnērunt querentēs spem nullam esse resistendī nisi praesidium Rōmānus mīsisset. LIV. *They came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them.*

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future: Examples, 258.

516. *Sequence of Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua:* In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [scytalā] erat scriptum nisi domum revertētur sē capitis eum damnātūrōs, *It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* NEP. (**Ōrātiō Recta: Nisi domum revertēris tē capitis damnābimus,** *unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.*)

Pŷthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id sī fēcissent incepta prōspēra futūra. NEP. *The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.* (**Ōrātiō Recta: sī id fēcēritis, incepta prōspēra erunt.**)

Lacedaemoniī, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnā-

entur (Ō. R., cōnābiminī) prohibītūrūm, quaesivērunt num sē esset
tiam morī prohibītūrus. (Ō. R., prohibēbis). CIC. *The Lacedaemo-
nians, when Philip threatened them by letter, that he would prevent everything
they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) pre-
vent them from dying too.*

517. *Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.*—The Imper-
tive and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Se-
quences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect
have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nē] compōne comās quia sis ventūrū ad illam. OV. *Do not
arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.*

Excellentibus ingenīis citius dēfuerit ars quā civem regant quam
uā hostem superent. LIV. *Great geniuses would be more likely to lack the
skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.*

Quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae ille dīceret?
CIC. *What would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what
he said (says)?*

Tum ego tē primus hortārer diū pensitārēs quem potissimum ēligerēs.
PLIN. EP. *In that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom
you should choose above all others.*

Quae vīta Priamō fuisset, sī ab adolescentiā scīss et quōs ēventūs
enectūtis esset habitūrus? CIC. *What sort of life would Priam
have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing
scenes of his old age?*

REMARKS.—1. Of course when the Perf. Subj. represents the Historical Perf. it takes
the historical Sequence:

Magna culpa Pelopis quī nōn docuerit filium quātenus esset quidque cūran-
im. CIC. *Greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing
was to be cared for.*

So also in the conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception,
see CIC. Off. iii. 24.

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive, being used in opposition to the Present, might be
treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual:

Verērē nē immodicam orātiōnem putārēs nisi esset generis ejus ut saepe in-
perere saepe dēsinerē videātur. PLIN. EP. *I should be afraid of your thinking the
speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often be-
ginning often ending.*

518. *Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.*—
When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle,
Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the
sequences of the Finite verb.

Cupio scire, <i>I am desirous of knowing,</i>	{	quid agās, quid ēgeris, quid actūrus sis,	{	<i>what you are doing.</i> <i>what you have done.</i> <i>what you are going to do</i> <i>(will do).</i>
--	---	---	---	--

Cupiēbam scire, <i>I was desirous of knowing,</i>	{	quid agerēs, quid ēgissēs, quid actūrus essēs,	{	<i>what you were doing.</i> <i>what you had done.</i> <i>what you were going to do</i> <i>(would do).</i>
--	---	--	---	--

Mihi interrogantī, <i>when I ask him,</i> (literally : to me asking),	{	quid agat, quid ēgerit, quid actūrus sit,	{	<i>what he is doing,</i> <i>what he has done,</i> <i>what he is going</i> <i>to do (will do),</i>	} nōn re spondet he give no an swer.
---	---	---	---	--	--

Mihi interrogantī, <i>when I asked him,</i> (literally : to me asking).	{	quid ageret, quid ēgisset, quid actūrus esset,	{	<i>what he was do-</i> <i>ing,</i> <i>what he had done,</i> <i>what he was go-</i> <i>ing to do,</i>	} nōn re spondit. he gav no an swer.
---	---	--	---	--	--

Apellēs pictōrēs eōs peccāre dicēbat quī nōn sentīren
quid esset satis. CIC. *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered*
who did not perceive what was (is) enough.

Athēniēnsēs Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manēren
lapidibus coöperuērunt. CIC. (546.)

Cupido incessit animōs juvenum sciscitandī ad quem eōrum
regnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. LIV. *The minds of the young men*
were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome
would come.

Misērunt Delphōs consultum quid facerent. NEP. *They sent to Delphi*
to ask the oracle what they should do.

EXCEPTION.—A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present
Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses :

Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse video quārē esset hōc be
lum necessārium. CIC. *I think I have said enough (to show) why this war*
is necessary.

519. *The Potential of the Past.*—The Potential of the Past
may depend on a Present Tense :

Video causās esse permultās quae Titum Roscium impe
lerent. CIC. *I see that there are very many causes which might have im-*
peled Titus Roscius.

Quaero ā tē cūr Gājum Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem. CIC.
ask you why I was not to defend Gajus Cornelius.

REMARK.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction
parenthetical clauses, or the shifting of the conception.

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation:

Animus sentit sē vī s u ā, nōn aliēnā movērī. CIC. *The mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.*

Quaesivērunt num sē esset etiam mori prohibītūrus. CIC. (516.)

Pompējus ā mē petīvit ut sē cum et apud sē essem quotīdiē. CIC. *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.*

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter s u u s reliquisset mihi dōnāvit. CIC. *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter ē jus reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).*

REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result havē is:

Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat ut is ējus vulgō habērētur filius. CIC. *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause:

Ā Caesare invitor sibi ut sim lēgātus. CIC. *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Especially to be noted is the freer use of **suus** (295, R. 1). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulae:

Suī colligendī hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt. CAES. *They do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

So **sē recipere**, to withdraw.

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, oneself*, etc.:

Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre. CIC. *It is loathsome to be bragging about oneself.*

With the Infinitive this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indicative Relative Sentences, which are mere circumlocations (506), **is** is the rule:

Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit ōrātiōnem quam ei Lysiās reō composuerat. QUINT. *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:

Metellus in iīs urbibus quae ad sē dēfēcerant praesidia impōnit. SALL. *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

Ille habet quod sibi dēbēbātur, *He has his due; regularly, ei.*

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:

Solōn. quō tūtior vīta ējus esset, furere sē simulāvit. CIC. *Solon feigned madness, that his life might be the safer. (The notion of Result intrudes.)*

6. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways :

Rōmānī lēgātōs mīserunt quī ā Prūsīā peterent nē inimīcīssīmum s u m (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē [Prūsiam] habēret. NEP. *The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prusias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court.*

Agrippa Atticum flens orābat atque obsecrābat ut sē sibi suisque reservāret. NEP. *Agrippa begged and conjured Atticus with tears to save himself [Atticus] for him [Agrippa] and for his own family [Atticus].*

Hopeless ambiguity :

Hērēs meus damnās estō dare illī omnia sua. QUINT. *My heir is to give him all that is his.*

7. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not unfrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive :

Helvētīi Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. CAES. *The Helvetians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvetians] go through their territory.*

8. Ipse is always used in its proper distinctive sense: so when it represents the speaker in **Ō. O.**

Ejus and Suī.

522. Alexander moriens ānulum s u m dederat Perdiccae, Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Perdiccās accēperat e j u s ānulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat sē regnum eī commendāsse, Thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcerat e u m regnum sibi commendāsse, From this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omnēs conjēcerant e u m regnum eī commendāsse, From this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Perdiccās postulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānulum sibi dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīcī postulāvērunt ut omnēs e u m rēgem habērent quum Alexander ānulum eī dedisset, (His) friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī regnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

OBJECT SENTENCES.

523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

REMARK.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.

I. OBJECT SENTENCES INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

524. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by **quod**, *that*.

REMARKS.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as **hōc**, *this*; **illud**, *id*, *that*; and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

✎ As these sentences present difficulties to the beginner, it may be well to postpone the consideration to the Relative.

2. In some of the combinations, **quod** may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent. (Inner Object.) **Quod**, *in that* (= because).

525. **Quod** is used to introduce explanatory clauses chiefly after a Demonstrative, after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb, and after verbs of Adding and Dropping:

Here **quod** means “*the fact that*,” “*the circumstance that*.”

Hōc sōlō propior quod amīcōs conjugis ōdit. JUV. *In this alone (is the wife) nearer (than a mere neighbor), that she hates the friends of her husband.*

Nil habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod (= id quod) rīdiculōs hominēs facit. JUV. *Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.*

Magnum beneficium est nātūrae quod necesse est morī. SEN. (195.)

Quod spīro et placeō, sī placeō, tuum est. HOR. *That I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.*

Bene facis quod me adjuvās. CIC. *You do well (in) that you help me.*

Bene mihi ēvenit quod mittor ad mortem. CIC. *It is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).*

Adde quod ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artēs ēmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs. OV. *Add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage.*

On **nisi quod**, see 592, R. 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in **Ōrātio Oblīqua**.

Quum Castam accūsārem nihil magis pressī quam quod accūsātor ējus praevaricātiōnis crimine corruisset. PLIN. EP. *When I accused Casta, there was no point that I laid more stress on than the fact (that I stated) “that her accuser had been crushed under a charge of collusion.”*

REMARKS.—1. To this group belongs the exclamatory interrogation **Quid ? quod** or **quid quod** — ? *What of this, that ?*

Quid quod simulac mihi collibitum est praestō est imāgo ? CIC. *What is to be said of the fact that the image presents itself as soon as I see it ? (Nay, does not the image present itself ?)*

2. A sentence with **quod** often precedes as an adverbial accusative :

Quod mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās falleris. NEP. *In that (if) you think that I am emulating Agamemnon, you are mistaken.*

3. With several of the above-mentioned verbs, **ut** can be employed, as well as **quod** (**ut**, of the tendency—**quod**, of the fact) :

Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accēdebat ut etiam caecus esset, CIC. (558), or, **quod caecus erat.**

Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amo. CIC. *Besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

But when the action is prospective or conditional, **ut** must be used :

Hūc accēdat ut perfecta virtūs sit. SEN. *To this be added the perfect nature of virtue.*

4. Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, etc., take **quod** with the Indicative or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 540.

II. OBJECT SENTENCES, WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

526. *Preliminary Observation.*—On the simple infinitive as an object, see 424.

The Infinitive as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (421.)

REMARK.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun ; the Infinitive (or rather the Indefinitive), the most general form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought—present an idea, and not a fact, as such. Compare 340.

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing and Perceiving (**Verba sentiendi et declārandi***), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive :

Thalēs Milēsius aq u a m dixit esse initium rērum, *Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.*

Solōn furere sē simulāvīt. CIC. *Solon pretended to be mad.*

* *Verba sentiendī* are : video, audio, sentio, animadverto, scio, nēscio, intellego, perspicio, comperio, disco, meminī, crēdo, arbitror, puto, suspicor, iūdico, cēnseo, dūco, concludō, spēro, dēspēro. Similar expressions are : spēs est, opinio est.

Verba declārandī arc: ēdico, affirmo, nego, fateor, narro, trādo, scribo, nūntio, ostendo, dēmonstro, persuādeo (546, R. 2.) significo, polliceor, prōmitto, minor, simulo, dissimulo, etc. Similar expressions are : fāma est, auctor sum, testis sum, certiorē aliquem facio, etc.

Mediōi causā morbī inventā cūrātiōnem esse inventam putant. CIC. *Physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.*

Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et construere nidōs. CIC. *We see that birds fashion and build nests.*

Audiet civēs acuisse ferrum. HOR. [The youth] *shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.*

Timagenēs auctor est omnium in litterīs studiōrum antiq̄uissimam mūsicōn exstitisse. QUINT. *Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ō. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (536). As there is no Present Participle Passive the Infinitive must be used, and thus the difference between intellectual and actual perception is effaced, sometimes even in the Active.

Audio civēs acuentēs ferrum, *I hear citizens sharpen(ing) the steel.*

Audio ā civibus acui ferrum, *I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens.*

Octāvium dolōre confici vidi. CIC. *I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.*

Vidi histriōnēs flentēs ēgredi. QUINT. *I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.*

Notice **facio**, *I make out, represent, suppose:*

Plato ā Deō aedificārī mundum facit. CIC. *Plato makes out that the universe is built by God.*

Isocratē Plato laudārī fēcit ā Sōcrate. CIC. *Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates.*

Fac, quaeso, quē ego sum esse te. CIC. *Suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.*

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then **esse** also is dropped:

Refractūrōs carcerem minābantur. LIV. *They threatened to break open the jail.*

3. The simple Infinitive is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Inf. See 424, R. 3.

The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nominative after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical:

Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus. CAT. *That pinnacle yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be the fastest craft afloat.*

4. When the Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise:

Ājō tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vincere posse, in which **tē** may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn:

Ājō ā tē, Aeacidā, Rōmānōs vinci posse, *I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.*

Ājō tē, Aeacidā, ā Rōmānīs vinci posse, *I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.*

When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see QUINT. vii. 9. 10.

NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

Active:

Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind.*

Passive:

Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

[**Trāditur Homērum caecum fuisse**], *it is said that Homer was blind.*

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with *esse*, to *be*, the impersonal construction is preferred:

Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse. CIC. *There is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

Aristaeus inventor olei fuisse dīcitur. CIC. *Aristaeus is said to have been the inventor of oil.*

Terentī (29, R. 1.) fābulae propter ēlegantiam sermōnis putābantur ā Laeliō scribī. CIC. *Terence's plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius.*

Sī Vējōs migrābimus ā mīsisse patriam vidēbimur. LIV. *If we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country.*

Reus damnātum irī vidēbātur. QUINT. (436, R. 2.)

But:

Venerem Adōnidī nūpsisse prōditum est. CIC. *It is recorded that Venus married Adonis.*

Crēditur Pŷthagorae audītōrem fuisse Numam. CIC. *It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.*

REMARK.—In Verbs of Saying, except *dīco*, the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBA SENTIENDI ET DECLARANDI.

529. The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (274).

530. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

☞ In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

531. ACTIVE. *Contemporaneous Action.* PASSIVE

P. T. **Dicit** : **tē errāre**, **tē dēcipī**,
He says, that you are going wrong, *that you are deceived* (217, R.).

H. T. **Dicēbat** : **tē errāre**, **tē dēcipī**,
He was saying, that you were going wrong, *that you were deceived,*

Prior Action.

P. T. **Dicit** : **tē errāsse**, **tē dēceptum esse**,
He says, that you have gone wrong, *that you have been (are) deceived,*
that you went wrong. *that you were deceived* (AOR.),
that you have been going wrong, *(that people have been deceiving you).*

H. T. **Dicēbat** : **tē errāsse**, **tē dēceptum esse**,
He was saying, that you had gone wrong, *that you had been deceived.*
that you went wrong, *that you were deceived* (AOR.),
that you had been going wrong, *(that people had been deceiving you).*

Subsequent Action.

P. T. **Dicit** : **tē errātūrum esse**, **tē dēceptum irī**,
He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong, *that you (are going to) will be deceived.*

H. T. **Dicēbat** : **tē errātūrum esse**, **tē dēceptum irī**,
He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong, *that you were going to (would) be deceived.*

Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the Verb has no Suffix or Future Participle. It is often used from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the Passive than the Future Passive Inf. of the paradigms.

ACTIVE.	<i>Periphrastic Future.</i>	PASSIVE.
P. T. Dicit : fore (futūrum esse) ut errēs (metuās), fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- verīs* (rare),		fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris), fore ut dēceptus sis (rare), usually. dēceptum fore (not futūrum esse).
H. T. Dicēbat : fore ut errārēs (metuerēs), errāssēs (rare),		fore ut dēciperēris (metuerē- ris), dēceptum fore (rarely : fore ut dēceptus essēs).

REMARKS.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 240.

Carthāginiensēs dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur. LIV. *The Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be brought to an end. From dēbellātum erit, it will be (have been) brought to an end. So in the deponent adōptum fore.*

2. **Posse, velle**, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (240, R. 3.)

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF WILL AND DESIRE.

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive :

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected :

Sī vis mē flēre, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi. HOR. *If you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.*

Utrum Milōnis corporis an Pŷthagorae tibi mālis virēs ingenii dari? CIC. *Which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind?*

Ipse jubet mortis nōs meminisse Deus. MART. (375, 3.)

Vitae summa brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam. HOR. (424 R. 3.)

Nēmo ire quenquam publicā prohibet viā. PLAUT. (387.)

Germāni vinum ad sē omnino importārī nōn sinunt. CAES. *The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.*

REMARKS.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with **ut** (nē, quōminus) see 546. **Impero**, *I command*, in ordinary prose takes only the Passive Infinitive :

Hannibal imperāvit quam plūrimās venenātās serpentēs vivās colligi. NEP. *Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.*

Permitto seldom takes the Infinitive. **Jubeo**, *I bid* ; **sino**, *I let* ; **veto**, *I forbid* ; **prohibeo**, *I prohibit*, always have the Infinitive of Passive Verbs. These verbs may themselves be turned into the Passive : **jubeor**, **sinor**, **vetor**, **prohibeor**.

* Heavy periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So **Fētiālēs dēcrēvērunt utrum eōrum fēcisset rectē factūrum** (LIV. xxxi. 8) ; not **fore ut fēcisset**, although the O. requires **utrum fēcēris, rectē fēcēris**. (223, R. 4.) See Weissenborn's note.

2. After *jubeo*, *I bid*, and *veto*, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject :

Jubet reddere, *he bids return (orders the returning)*.

Vetat adhibere medicinam, *he forbids the administration of medicine*.

Infandum, rēgina, jubēs renovāre dolōrem, VERG. *Not meet for speech, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive*.

3. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed :

Nī pārēre velis, **pereundum erit ante lucernās**. JUV. *Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light*.

Et jam mālet equōs nunquam tetigisse paternōs. OV. *And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father's horses*.

But the subject may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject :

Tīmoleōn māluit s ē diligī quam metuī. NEP. *Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared*.

Et fugit ad salicēs et s ē cupit ante vidērī. VERG. *And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen*.

4. The poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 424, R. 4.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking :

Salvum t ē advēnisse gaudeo, *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe)*.

Quod salvus advēnistī, *that you have arrived safe*.

Quod salvus advēneris, *that (as you say) you have arrived safe*.

Glōriātur Epicūrus sē nōn tōtō asse pascī. SEN. *Epicurus brags of dining for not quite one copper*. See 541.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling :

Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī. CIC. (341.)

Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loquī? PLIN. EP. *A Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek)*.

Mēne inceptō dēsistere—? VERG. *I—desist from my undertaking?*

Hinc abire mātrem? TER. *Mother go away from here?*

REMARKS.—1. Different is **quod**, which gives the ground :

Hei mihi quod nullis amor est medicābilis herbīs. OV. *Woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs*.

2. On **ut**, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see 560. Both forms object.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

Inūsitātum est rēgem capitū reum esse. CIC. *It is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.*

Facinus est vinciri civem Rōmānūm. CIC. *It is an outrage that a Roman citizen should be put in chains.*

Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit (= eum quī quaerit) lucrum. PLAUT. *Need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.*

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur. SEN. *It is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium. CIC. (382.)

Opus est tē animō valēre. CIC. (390, R.)

REMARKS.—1. Oportet, *it behooves*, and necesse est, *must needs*, are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with ut. (See 559.)

Necesse also takes the Dative of the Person :

Homini necesse est mori. *Man must needs die.*

Ut culpent alii, tibi mē laudāre necesse. OV. *Let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the predicate of the subject is put in the case of the object: in standard prose chiefly with licet, *it is left (free)*; in poetry and later prose with necesse, with satius est, *it is better*, contingit, *it happens*, vacat, *there is room* :

Mihi negligentī esse nōn licet. *I am not free to be negligent.*

The Accusative may also be used :

Mihi negligentem esse nōn licet.

The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed :

Negligentem esse nōn licet. *One is not free to be negligent.*

In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then :

Negligenti esse licet.

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō. PROP. *I shall be alone, since I may not be thine.* On licet with the subjunctive, see 608.

OBJECT SENTENCES REPRESENTED BY THE PARTICIPLE.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation :

Catōnem vidi in bibliothēcā sedentem multis Stōicōrum circumfūso libris. CIC. *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.*

REMARK.—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly:

Laetātus sum quod mihi licēret recta dēfendere. CIC. *I was glad that I was free to champion the right.*

540. Causal sentences with **quia**, **quod**, and **quoniam** take the Indicative in Direct Discourse:

Amantēs dē formā iudicāre nōn possunt, quia sensum oculōrum praecipit animus. QUINT. *Lovers cannot judge of beauty, because the heart forestalls the eye.*

Quia nātūra mutārī nōn potest idcirco vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. CIC. *Because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnaverat necārī iussit. SALL. *Torquatus bade his son to be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pugnasset = because, as Torquatus said or thought].*

Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frustrā mē nātum existimem. CIC. *And I am not sorry for having lived, since I have so lived that I think I was born not in vain.*

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuō. PROP. (535, R. 2.)

Erant quibus appetentior fāmae Helvidius vidērētur quando etiam sapientibus cupīdo glōriae novissima exuitur. TAC. *There were some to whom Helvidius seemed too eager for fame, since, even from the wise, ambition is the last (infirmity) that is put off.*

541. Causal sentences with **quia**, **quod**, and **quoniam** take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulābat in forō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset. CIC. *Themistocles used to walk about in the market-place at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.*

Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit. OV. *She who does it not because (she thinks, forsooth) she may not (do it), does it.*

Elsewhere: **quae quia nōn licuit nōn facit, illa facit.**

[Nē] **compōne comās quia sīs ventūrus ad illam.** OV. (517.)

Quoniam ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter ējus Stēsgorās. NEP. *“As [Miltiades] could not speak for himself,” his brother, Stesgoras, made a speech.* (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras)

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn quod**, **nōn quia**, are used with the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general rule. The Indicative denies absolutely,* the Subjunctive reje

* That the Indicative is used *only* of excluded facts is not borne out by the usage of the language from LUCR. ii. 2, to TAC. Ann. xiii. 1.

an imaginary suggestion (as if from an ideal second person). The real ground often follows with **sed quia, sed quod**.

The Subjunctive is more common than the Indicative with **nōn quod, nōn quia**. **Nōn quō = nōn quod**, and **nōn quīn = nōn quō nōn**, are found with the Subjunctive only.

Subjunctive:

Pugilēs in jactandīs caestibus ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior. CIC. *Boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch, and the blow comes with a greater rush.*

Mājōrēs nostrī in dominum dē servō quaerī nōluērunt; nōn quīn posset vērum invenīrī, sed quia vidēbātur indignum esse. CIC. *Our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though, they thought,) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.*

A Lacedaemoniōrum exilibus praetor vim arcebat, nōn quia salvōs vellet sed quia perire causā indictā nōlēbat. LIV. *The praetor had warded off violence from the Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).*

The same principle applies to **magis quod (quō), quia . . . sed quod, quia**, with the moods in inverse order.

Libertātis originem inde, magis quia annum imperium consulāre factum est quam quod dēminūtum quidquam sit ex rēgiā potestāte, ēnumerēs. LIV. *You may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consular government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.*

Indicative:

Sum nōn dicam miser, sed certē exercitus, nōn quia multis dēbeo sed quia aepe concurrunt. CIC. *I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because am in debt to many, but because they (their claims) often conflict.*

2. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are put in the subjunctive with **quod** by a kind of traction:

Impetrāre nōn potuī, quod religiōne sē impedīrī dicerent. CIC. *I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple = quod impedīrentur, because (as they said) they were prevented.*

3. Causal sentences may be represented by a Participle. (672.)

QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

542. **Quod** is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as Verbs of Joy and Sorrow, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already.

Indicative:

Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem. HOR. *Rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.*

Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris. CIC. *It pains me that you are angry now.*

Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. CIC. (376. R.)

Juvat mē quod vident studia. PLIN. EP. *I am charmed that studies are flourishing.*

Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa doloris. OV. *Are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you.*

Tibi grātiās ago, quod mē omnī molestiā liberās. CIC. *I thank you, that you free me from all annoyance.*

Subjunctive:

Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem. OV. *The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.*

Nunquam mihi in mentem veniet paenitēre quod ā mē ipse nōn dēsciverim. CIC. *It will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself.*

Laudat Panaetius Āfricānum quod fuerit abstinens. CIC. *Panaetius praises (Scipio) Africanus for having been abstinent.*

Nemo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latinē loqueretur. CIC. *No one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.*

Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem. QUINT. *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.*

Memini glōriārī solitum esse Quintum Hortensium quod nunquam bellō civili interfuisset. CIC. *I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.*

Agunt grātiās quod sibi pepercissent. CAES. (511, R. 1.)

REMARK.—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: **Salvum tē advēnisse gaudeo.** (533.) But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thank and Complaint, **quod** is more common.

Amō tē et nōn neglexisse habeo grātiām. TER. *I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it).*

Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum. OV. *I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain perdu.*

Isocratēs queritur plūs hōnōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari. QUINT. *Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.*

On **cum**, see 566.

SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the participle (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentences

as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative:

<i>Final</i> : nē (ut nē),	<i>Consecutive</i> : ut nōn, <i>that not.</i>
nē quis,	ut nēmo, <i>that no one.</i>
nē ullus,	ut nullus, <i>that no.</i>
nē unquam, (nē quando,)	ut nunquam, <i>that never.</i>
nē usquam, (nēcubi,)	ut nusquam, <i>that nowhere.</i>
nē aut—aut, (ut nēve—nēve,)	ut neque—neque, <i>that neither</i> <i>—nor.</i>

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Effecting have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of Hindering have the sequences of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of Fearing belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative.

FINAL SENTENCES.

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the Particle: Sentences of Design.

Esse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās. [CIC.] *You must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*

This form may be translated by, (*in order*) *to*; sometimes by, *that may, might, that* the subj., and the like.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading Verb (Verba studii et voluntātis, Verbs of Will and Desire): Commentary Final Sentences.

Volo uti mihi respondeās CIC. *I wish you to answer me.*

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the subj., or some equivalent.

Partly Final and partly Consecutive are:

I. Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are:

1. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARKS.—1. Temporal Particles are often used in a final sense. So *dum, donec*, (574), *antequam, priusquam* (579).

2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may be expressed :

1.) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) *causā* or *grātiā* (429, R. 2.)

2.) By *ad* with Gerund and Gerundive. (433.)

3.) By the Accusative Supine after Verbs of Motion. (436.)

4.) By the Future Participle Active (later Latin):

Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium orātūrōs auxilia, Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.

I. Sentences of Design.

545. Sentences of Design are introduced by:

1. *Ut* (*utī*) (*how*) *that*, and other Relative Pronouns and Adverbs (631).

Ut is often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as : *idcirco* *therefore* ; *eō*, *on that account* ; *eō consiliō*, *with the design*.

2. *Quō* = *ut eō*, *that thereby* ; with comparatives, *the . . . — . . .* :

3. *Nē*, *that not, lest*, continued by *nēve*, *neu*. (450.)

REMARK.—Other particles are of limited use. So *ut nē* cannot follow verbs of negative signification ; *quōminus* is used with Verbs of Hindering ; *quīn* requires a preceding negative besides.

Esse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās. [CIC.] *You must eat to not live to eat.*

Inventa sunt specula, ut homo sē ipse nōsceret. SEN. *Mirrors were invented, to make man acquainted with himself.*

Ut amēris, amābilis estō. OV. *That you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.*

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperītis teneātur. CIC. *A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

Senex serit arborēs, quae alteri sēculō prōsint. CIC. *The old man sows out trees, to do good to the next generation.*

Semper habē Pyladēn, quī consōlētur Orestēn. OV. *Always he has Pylades, to console Orestes.*

Artaxerxēs Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae ei pāne praebēret. NEP. *Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia to furnish him with bread.*

Gallinae pennīs fovēt pullōs, nē frigore laedantur. CIC. *Hen (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep from being) hurt by the cold.*

Dionysius nē collum tonsōrī committeret tondēre filiās suās dicitur. CIC. (424, R. 3.)

REMARK.—*Ut nōn* is used when a particular word is negated:

Confer tē ad Mallium, ut nōn ejectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs esse videāris. CIC. *Betake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, ut invited to your own (friends).*

II. Complementary Final Sentences.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow Verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring, of Forcing and Permitting (*Verba studiī et voluntātis*).*

POSITIVE : **Ut.**

Volo uti mihi respondeās. CIC. *I wish you to answer me.*

Phaēthōn ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. CIC. *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.*

Admoneo ut quotidiē meditēre resistendum esse irācundiae. CIC. *I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness.*

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. OV. (424.)

Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat. OV. *You exact that Priam weep at (his) sons' funeral.*

Athēniensēs quum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum tandem suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus cooperuērunt. CIC. *The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones (stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.*

Pūblium Lentulum ut sē abdicāret praetūrā coēgistis. CIC. *You exact Publius Lentulus to resign the praetorship.*

Illud nātūra nōn patitur, ut aliōrum spoliis nōstrās cōpiās augeāmus.
Nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding :

Pythia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent. NEP. *The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

So eā lēge, eā condiōne ut (nē), *on condition that (that not).*

NEGATIVE : **Nē, ut nē.**

Such verbs and phrases are: ōro, rogo, peto, precor, obsecro, flāgito, postulo, — video, prōvideo, prōspicio, — suādeo, persuādeo, cēnseo, hortor, adhortor, moneo, permoveo, addūco, incito, impello, cōgo, — impero, mando, praecipio, ēdīco scribo, mitto. — concēdo, permitto (sino), — statuo, constituo and dēcerno, — volo malo, opto, studeo, nītor, contendo, elabōro, pugno, — id ago, operam do, lēgen. lēx est, auctor sum, consilium dō.

Caesar suis imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. CAES. *Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all to the enemy.*

Themistocles collegis suis praedixit ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. NEP. *Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he was sent back.*

Ut ne is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as *impedio*, *I hinder*, *recuso*, *I refuse*. (548.)

Pompējus suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve loco moverent. CAES. *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.*

Neque is sometimes used after ut :

Monitor tuus suadēbit tibi ut hinc discēdās neque mihi ullum verbum respondeās. CIC. *Your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of *ut* with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with *jubeo*, *I order*, 532. Authors vary. The use of the Infinitive is wider in poetry and silver prose.

2. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is *that*, the Indicative : *volo*, *I will have it* (maintain), *moneo*, *I remark*, *persuādeo*, *I convince*, *dēcerno*, *I decide*, *cōgo*, *I conclude*.

Moneo artem sine assiduitate dicendi non multum juvare. CIC. *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.*

Vix cuiquam persuadēbatur Graecia omni cessuros Romanos. LIV. *Scarcely one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece.*

Non sunt isti audiendi qui virtutem dūram et quasi ferream quandam volunt. CIC. (300.)

Est mos hominum ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere. CIC. *It is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things (than one).*

3. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without *ut*, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Present and Imperfect is removed :

Existimēs velim nēminem cuiquam cariorē unquam fuisse quam tē. CIC. *I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to anyone than you to me.*

Malo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent. LIV. *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.*

Excūsatum habeās mē rogo, ceno domi. MART. (230.)

Hūc ades, insāni feriant sine littora fluctūs. VERG. *Come hither (and) mad waves lash the shores.*

Tam felix essēs quam formōsissima vellem. OV. (316.)

Nōllem dixissem. CIC. (254, R. 2.)

Occidit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōjam. VERG. *'Tis fallen, and let be fallen name and all.*

So *jubeo* in poetry and later prose. Compare also *potius quam*, 579, R.

III. *Verbs of Hindering.*

547. The dependencies of Verbs of Hindering may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. **Nē** and **quōminus** are originally final, but the final sense is often effaced, especially in **quōminus**. **Quin** is a consecutive particle. The sequence of Verbs of Hindering is that of the Final Sentence.

The negative often disappears in the English translation.

548. Verbs signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, take **nē** with the Subjunctive :

Impedior nē plūra dīcam. CIC. *I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).*

Compare: "Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" Gal. v. 7.

Servitūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mīrer meum malum. PLAUT. *My slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at (329, R. 1.) ill of mine.*

Histiaeus obstitit nē rēs conficerētur. NEP. *Histiaeus opposed the thing being done.*

Rēgulus nē sententiam dīceret recūsāvit. CIC. *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.*

Maledictīs dēterrēre nē scribat parat. TER. (424.)

Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cavētō. OV. (264.)

Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō. OV. *Only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Preventing also take **quōminus** (549), and some of them the infinitive (532, R. 1). So regularly **prohibēre** :

Nēmo ire quenquam publicā prohibet viā. PLAUT. (387.)

Impedire, to hinder, dēterrēre, to frighten off, recūsāre, to refuse, sometimes have the Infinitive.

2. Verbs signifying to Beware belong to Verbs of Hindering only so far as action is contemplated.

After **caveo, I beware, nē** is often omitted :

Cavē crēdās, Beware of believing.

(**Cavē ut crēdās, Be sure to believe.**)

Quōs viceris tibi amicōs esse cavē crēdās. CURT. *Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are friends to you.*

549. **Quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**), *that thereby the less*, is used with verbs of Preventing :

Such as : **impedire, to hinder ; prohibēre, to keep from ; tenēre, to hold ; dēterrēre, to frighten off ; obstāre, to be in the way ; recūsāre, to refuse ; and the like :**

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus. CIC. *Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.*

Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblicae (347) cōnsulat. CIC. *Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State.*

Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus? CIC. *What is in the way of God's being happy?*

Caesar cognōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dīmīcārētur. CAES. *Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand still).*

550. Quīn is used like **quōminus**, with Verbs of Preventing, but only when they are negatived or questioned.

REMARKS.—1. **Quīn** is compounded of **quī** + **nē**, *how* (in which way), + *not*, and answers to **ut eō nōn** or **quō nōn**. For **nōn quīn** (= **nōn quō nōn**), see 541, R. 1.

2. **Quīn** is used only after Negative Sentences, or Questions which expect a negative answer.

3. When **quīn** is used as a Consecutive or Relative particle, **ut nōn** or **quī nōn**, it has all the sequences of the Consecutive or Relative. See 556.

4. When **quīn** is used after Negative expressions of Doubt it has the sequences of the Interrogative.

5. When **quīn** is used with Verbs of Preventing it has the sequences of the Final Sentence.

551. Quīn is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt and Uncertainty, are negatived or questioned:

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence of the Final Sentence):

Vix nunc obsistitur illis (208) quīn lanient mundum. OV. *They are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.*

Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quīn contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet. CIC. *Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.*

Nullum adhūc intermīsī diem quīn aliquid ad tē litterārum darer. CIC. *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

Facere nōn possum quīn quotīdiē ad tē mittam litterās. CIC. *I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily.*

(**Nullō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris.** CIC. *I cannot help being a man of the people.*)

Nōn possum quīn exclāmēm. PLAUT. *I cannot but (I must) cry out.*

Nihil abest quīn sim miserimus. CIC. *There is nothing wanting that should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable.*

Fierī nullō modō poterat quīn Cleomenī (208) parcerētur. CIC.

ould in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared).

Paulam āfuit quīn Fabius Vārum interficeret. CAES. *There was little recking but Fabius (had) killed Varus* (= Fabius came near killing Varus).

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative sentence):

Nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit filius. TER. *There is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.*

Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint? CIC. (51.)

Nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae. CIC. *It is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.*

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quīn ventūrae nōn sint legiōnēs. CIC. (15.)

Occasionally Verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

Negārī nōn potest quīn rectius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exercitum mittī. LIV. *It cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.*

Nōn abest suspīcio (Lītōtēs for dubitārī nōn potest) quīn Orgetorix se sibi mortem conscīverit. CAES. *There is no lack of ground to suspect there is no doubt that, 448, R. 2) Orgetorix killed himself.*

REMARKS.—1. In Future relations nōn dubito quīn (according to 515, R. 3) may have Simple Subjunctive instead of the Periphrastic:

Nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus supplicium sūmat Ariovistus. CAES. *He did not doubt that Ariovistus would put all the hostages to death.*" Comp. CAT. cviii. So when there is an original Subjunctive notion:

Nōn dubito quīn ad tē statim veniam. CIC. *I do not doubt that I ought to come you forthwith. (Veniam? Shall I come?)*

2. Of course dubito and nōn dubito may have the ordinary interrogative construction. On dubito an, see 459, R.

3. Nōn dubito, with the Infinitive, usually means *I do not hesitate to:*

Nōn dubitem dicere omnēs sapientēs semper beatōs esse. CIC. *I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.*

Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūte extendere virēs? VERG. *And do we still hesitate to extend (our) power by (our) prowess?* Compare timeo, vereor, *I fear, hesitate to.*

So occasionally nōn dubito quīn. See R. 1.

Rōmānī arbitrābantur nōn dubitātūrum fortem virum quīn cēderet aequō mō lēgibus. CIC. *The Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield him equanimity to the laws.*

4. Nōn dubito with the Inf. for nōn dubito quīn occurs chiefly in NEPOS, LIVY and other writers.

Sunt multī quī quae turpia esse dubitāre nōn possunt utilitātis speciē ductī dubitent. QUINT. *There are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.*

IV. *Verbs of Fearing.*

552. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative.

The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

With Verbs of Fearing, *nē*, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; *ut* (*nē nōn*) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: *nē nōn* is used regularly after the negative.

Timeo nē hostis veniat, *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming that he will come.*

(I wish he may not come.)

Timeo nē hostis vēnerit, *I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.*

Timeo ut amicus veniat, *I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.*

(I wish he may come.)

Timeo ut amicus vēnerit, *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

Nōn timeo nē amicus nōn veniat, *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

Nōn timeo nē amicus vēnerit, *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam. CIC. *I fear lest, when I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it).*

Verēmur nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre vidētur. QUINT. *I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood.*

Timeo ut sustineās labōrēs. CIC. *I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.*

Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opiniōni hominum nōn respondeat. CIC. *I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.*

Metuo nē id consilii cēperim quod nōn facile explicāre possim. CIC. *I fear that I have formed a plan that I cannot readily explain.*

Unum illud extimēscēbam nē quid turpius facerem vel dicam jam effēcissem, *The only thing I feared was, lest I should act disgracefully, or, I should (rather) say, (lest) I had already acted disgracefully.*

REMARKS.—1. With the Infinitive, Verbs of Fear are Verbs of Will. So especially *vereor*, *I fear to*.

Vereor tē laudāre praesentem. CIC. (424) (**Vereor** = **prae timōre nōlo**.)

2. **Vidē nē**, *see to it lest*, is often used as a polite formula for **dubito an** (459, R.), and has the same sequences.

Vidē nē plūs prōfutūra sit ratio ordināria. SEN. *See to it lest (I am inclined to think that) the ordinary method will be the more profitable.*

CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

Sentences of Tendency and Result.

553. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses *so as* throughout, and not *so that*, although *so that* is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

554. Consecutive Sentences, or Sentences of Tendency and Result, have the Subjunctive mood.

Consecutive Subjunctives are put in the Present or Perfect, Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense according to the rules for sequence.

The introductory particle is **ut**.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with **ut**, which is a relative.

The Relative is sometimes used, parallel with **ut** (632).

The Negative is **ut nōn**, sometimes after negatives **quīn**.

When the notion of Design or Condition enters, **nē** is also found.

555. Consecutive Sentences are used after

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Demonstratives, | } all implying the creation or existence of conditions that tend to a result. |
| 2. Transitive and | |
| 3. Intransitive Verbs, and | |
| 4. Phrases, | |

556. 1. Consecutive Sentences are largely used after Demonstratives expressed or implied.

Tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus. CIC. *So great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.*

Nemo tam timidus est ut mālīt semper pendēre quam semel cadere. SEN. *No one is so timid as to prefer to be hanging always than to fall once (for all).*

Neque mē vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut nōn frūstrā mē nātum existimem. CIC. (540.)

Nōn is es ut tē pudor unquam ā turpitūdine revocārit. CIC. *You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.*

Nemo adeō ferus est ut nōn mītescere possit. HOR. *No one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.*

After a negative **quīn = ut nōn :**

Nil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō investigārī possiet (possit). TER. *Naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.*

Nunquam tam male est Siculis quīn aliquid facētē et commodē dicant. CIC. *The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other clever and pat (to) say.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice especially **tantum abest (Impers.) . . . ut . . . ut.** The origin of the phrase is shown by

Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud. CIC. *So far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.*

Tantum abest ut nostra mīrēmur ut usque eō difficilēs sumus ut nōbīs nōn satisfaciat ipse Dēmostenēs. CIC. *So far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.*

The personal construction can be used when an abstract follows.

2. **Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idōneus, fit,** take a consecutive sentence, but usually with **quī,** seldom with **ut :**

Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet. QUINT. *That nature was worthy of willing better things (= of better aims).*

3. A consecutive sentence follows **quam ut (CIC.)** or **quam quī :**

Māior sum quam ut mancipium sim mei corporis. SEN. (313.)

Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre. OV. (313.)

On the omission of **ut** with **potius quam (priusquam),** see 579, R.

4. **Nē, lest,** is sometimes irregularly used instead of **ut nōn,** especially when the idea of *design* or *wish* intrudes :

Ita mē gessi nē tibi pudōrī essem. LIV. *I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.*

5. **Ita — ut** (sometimes **ut** alone), *so that,* often serves to restrict and condition. The negative is often **nē** (comp. 554).

Ita probanda est mansuetūdo ut adhibeātur reipublicae causā severitās. CIC. *Mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.*

Ita frui volunt voluptatibus ut nulli propter eas dolores consequantur. CIC. *They wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them.*

Pythagorās et Plato mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent. CIC. *Pythagoras and Plato so praise death that they, while they praise death, forbid fleeing from life.*

Ita tū istaec tua miscēto nē mē admisceās. TER. *Mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.*

6. Ut nōn is often = *without* and the English verbal in *-ing* :

Octāviānus nunquam filiōs suōs populō commendāvit ut nōn adjiceret: Si merēbuntur. Suet. *Octavianus (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding): If they are worthy.*

Quī nōn vērē virtūtī studet certē mālet existimārī bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur. Cic. *He who is not a true lover of virtue will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).*

After negatives quīn = ut nōn. (550, R. 3.)

557. 2. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is nōn or nē; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are **facio, efficio, perficio, I make, effect, achieve; assequor, consequor, I attain, accomplish,** and other verbs of Causation. **Facere ut** is often little more than a periphrasis.

Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem. Liv. *Your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).*

Invitus (324, R. 6) facio ut recorder ruīnās reipūblicaē. Cic. (It is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.

Negatives:

Rērum obscuritās nōn verbōrum facit ut nōn intelligātur oratio. Cic. *It is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood.*

Potestis efficere ut male moriar, nē moriar nōn potestis. Plin. Ep. *You may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.*

558. 3. Consecutive Sentences follow many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent:

Such verbs are **fit, accidit, contingit, it happens, ūsū venit, it occurs, accēdit, there is added, sequitur, it follows.** So also **est, it is the case.**

Fieri potest ut fallar. Cic. (It) may be (that) I am mistaken.

Potest fieri ut is unde tē audisse dicis irātus dixerit. Cic. (It) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.

Persaepe ēvenit ut ūilitās cum honestate certet. Cic. *It very often happens that profit is at variance with honor.*

Ad Appii Claudiī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. Cic. *To the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.*

REMARK.—Very common is the periphrasis **fore (futūrum) ut,** which gives the common form of the Fut. Inf. See 240.

559. 4. Many abstract phrases are followed by consecutive sentences.

Such are: *mōs, consuētūdo est, it is the way, the wont, opus, ūsus est, there is need, and the like.* More rarely after adjectives such as *aequum, justum, fair, just, and the like.* So with the Genitive after *esse.*

The leading sentence is often a negative one to show the imaginary character of the result.

☞ In all these relations the Accusative with the Inf. is more common.

Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere. CIC. (546, R. 2.)

An cuiquam est ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet? TER. (390, R.)

Dionysiō nē integrum quidem erat ut ad jūstitiam remigrāret. CIC. *Dionysius was not free even (if he had wished it) to return to justice.*

Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonīs. PLAUT. *The wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.*

Rārūm (= rārō accidit) ut sit idōneus suae rei quisque dēfensor. QUINT. *It is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.*

REMARK.—**Necesse est, it is necessary, generally, and oportet, it behooves, always, omit ut:**

Leuctrica pugna immortalis sit necesse est. NEP. *The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.*

Sed nōn effugiēs; mēcum moriāris oportet. PROP. *But you shall not escape; you must die with me.*

Exclamatory Questions.

560. **Ut** with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions.

Egone ut tē interellem? CIC. *I interrupt you?*

Tū ut unquam tē corrigās? CIC. *You—ever reform yourself?*

REMARK.—The expression is closely parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

561. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be *antecedent*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Postquam (Posteā quam), after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when (literally, where); simulac, as soon as; ut primum, cum primum, the first moment that.**

II. It may be *contemporaneous*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Dum**, *dōnec*, *while, until*; **quoad**, *up to (the time) that*; **quamdiū**, *as long as*; **cum**, *when*.

III. It may be *subsequent*:

CONJUNCTIONS: **Antequam**, **priusquam**, *before that, before*.

A special chapter is required by

IV. **Cum**, *when*.

MOODS IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

562. 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive is used only—

1.) In **Ōrātio Oblīqua** (509), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.

2.) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

563. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, **simulac**, **ut primum**, and **cum primum** commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative:

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

Postquam Caesar pervēnit, **obsidēs poposcit**. CAES. *After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

Quae ubi nūntiantur Rōmam, **senātus extemplō dictātōrem dīcī jussit**. LIV. *When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed.*

Pompējus ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, **aciē excessit**. CAES. *As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.*

Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit, **simulac conspexit hostem**, **configere** (551, R. 3.). NEP. *As soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātio Oblīqua**:

Ariovistum, **ut semel Gallōrum copiās vīcerit** (**Ō. R. vīcit**), **superbē imperāre**. CAES. *“That Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.”*

REMARK.—**Postquam** is rarely found with the Subjunctive outside of **Ō, O**.

564. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

The translation often indicates the spectator (224, R. 1).

Postquam nēmo prōcēdere audēbat, intrat. CURT. *After (he found that) no one had the courage to come forth, he entered.*

Ubi nēmo obvius ibat, ad castra hostium tendunt. LIV. *When (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

Subjunctive in Ōrātio Oblīqua :

Scrīpsistī eum, postquam nōn audēret (Ō. R. nōn audēbat) reprehendere, laudāre coepisse. CIC. *You wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.*

565. 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause ; often of the Resulting Condition.

Albīnus postquam dēcrēverat nōn ēgredi prōvinciā, militēs stativīs castris habēbat. SALL. *After Albinus had fully determined not to depart from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments.*

Posteāquam multitudinē collēgerat emblēmatum, instituit officinam. CIC. *After he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.*

566. 2. The Pluperfect is used with **postquam** when a definite interval is mentioned.

Post and **quam** are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, **post** may be omitted.

Aristidēs dēcessit ferē post ānnum quartum quam Themistoclēs Athēnis erat expulsus. NEP. *Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens.*

Hamilcar nōnō ānnō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occisus est. NEP. *Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.*

Aristidēs sextō ferē ānnō quam erat expulsus in patriam restitūsus est. NEP. *Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.*

Subjunctive in Ōrātio Oblīqua :

Scriptum ā Posidōniō est trīgintā annīs vixisse Panaetium posteāquam librōs dē officiīs ēdidisset. CIC. *It is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.*

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

REMARK.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use:

Nero nātus est Antiī post novem mensēs quam Tiberius excessit. SUET. *Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed (this life).*

On the Iterative Pluperfect, see below, 568.

567. **Postquam** and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare **quoniam**, *now that* = since):

Cūria minor mihi vidētur posteāquam est māior. CIC. *The senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.*

Tremo horreōque post quam aspexi hanc. TER. *I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.*

So **cum** sometimes:

Grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs. CIC. *I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.*

Iterative Action.

568. **RULE I.**—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance:

Humilēs labōrant ubi potentes dīssident. PHAEDR. *The lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.*

Populus mē sībilat; at mihi plaudo ipse domī simulac nummōs contemplor in arcā. HOR. *The people hiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I gloat o'er my cash in the strong box.*

Ut quisque maximē labōrābat locus aut ipse occurrēbat aut aliquōs mittēbat. LIV. *As each point was hard pressed, he would either hasten to help himself or send some persons.*

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person:

Bonus segnior fit ubi negligās. SALL. *A good man becomes more sluggish when you neglect him.*

569. **RULE II.**—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action, in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples:

REMARK.—Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Comp. 236, R. 2.

Quotiēs cecidit, surgit, *As often as he falls, he rises.*

Quotiēs ceciderat, surgēbat, *As often as he fell, he rose.*

Quotiēs ceciderit, surget, *As often as he falls, he will rise.*

Simul inflāvit tībicen ā peritō carmen agnōscitur. CIC. *As soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.*

Alcibiadēs simulac sē remiserat, luxuriōsus reperiēbātur. NEP. *As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debauchee.*

Dociliōra sunt ingenia prius quam obdūruērunt. QUINT. *Minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.*

Ager quum multōs ānnōs requiēvit, ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet. CIC. *When a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop.*

Quum pālam ējus ānulī ad palmam converterat Gygēs, ā nullō vidēbātur. CIC. *When(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.*

Sī pēs condoluit, sī dens, ferre nōn possumus. CIC. *If a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.*

Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dixeram. CIC. *The old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.*

Quod nōn dedit fortūna nōn ēripit. SEN. *What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistoclē̄s]. NEP. *Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.*

Quī timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipient. TAC. *Those who cease to fear will begin to hate.*

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person :

Ubi consulueris, mātūrē factō opus est. SALL. *When you have deliberated, you want speedy action.*

The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua :

Cato mirārī sē ajēbat quod nōn rideret haruspex haruspicem cum vidisset. CIC. *Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)*

The Subjunctive by Attraction :

Rēte texunt arāneolae ut sī quid inhaeserit conficiant. CIC. (Sī quid inhaesit, conficiunt.)

Quāre fiēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in pūblicum prōdisset, ad se converteret. NEP. (Quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat.) (666.)

REMARK.—The Subjunctive (Imperf. and Pluperf.) is sometimes found in Iterative Sentences—chiefly after the Imperf. Ind. or some combination which shows Will, Habit, Expectation. The construction is best explained by Partial Obliquity (509, 3). It is found chiefly in later historians and in NEPOS. The passages in CAESAR are not numerous, and some are uncertain.

Incurrere ea gens in Macedoniam solita erat ubi rēgem occupātum externō bellō sensisset. LIV. *That tribe was wont to make a raid in Macedonia whenever they perceiv'd the king engrossed in foreign war.*

Qui ūnum ejus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat. LIV. *Whoso had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.*

Modum adhibendō ubi rēs posceret priōrēs erant. LIV. *By the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.*

So sometimes the Perf. Subj. with the Pres. Indicative. Compare 666, R. 2.

II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

570. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are :

Dum, dōnec, while, so long as, until ; quoad, up to (the time) that ; quamdiū, as long as ; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—*so long as, while.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—*until.*

REMARK.—**Dum** (*while*) yet, denotes duration, which may be coëxtensive, *so long as*, or not. It is often causal. **Dōnec** (old form **dōnicum**, of uncertain composition), parallel with **dum** in the sense, *so long as, until.* Cicero uses it only as *until.* **Quum** (**cum**) demands a separate treatment.

I. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(*So long as, while.*)

571. **Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while,** take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Dum vitant stultī vitia in contrāria currunt. HOR. *Fools, while they avoid (one set of) faults, run into the opposite.*

Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquunt, "Vixit, dum vixit, bene." TER. *They leave indeed this praise for themselves, "He lived well while he lived" (all the time).*

Tiberius Gracchus tamdiū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit. CIC. *Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).*

Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycūrgī lēgēs vigēbant. CIC. *This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.*

Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vigūī rēge beātiōr. HOR. *While I was acceptable in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.*

Quoad potuit, restitit. CIC. *As long as he could, he withstood.*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātio Obliqua :**

[**Rēgulus dixit**] **quamdiū jūrejūrāndō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem.** CIC. [**Regulus said**] *that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a Senator. (Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātor.)*

Dum often resists the change. (658, R. 3.)

Subjunctive by Attraction :

Vereor nē, dum minuere velim, labōrem augeam. CIC. (552.) (Dum minuere volo, augeo.)

REMARK.—When the actions are coëxtensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always. **Dum** with the Pluperf. Ind. is used of the Resulting condition. LIV. xxxii. 24.

572. **Dum**, *while, while yet*, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses : so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliquid superest. LIV. *Take this horse, while you have yet some little strength left.*

Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, consulēs ambo in Liguribus gerēbant bellum. LIV. *While these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

Praetermissa ējus rei occasio est, dum in castellis recipiendīs tempus teritur. LIV. *The opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts.*

REMARK.—The relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Present Participle, the lack of which in the Passive it supplies. Here the Present Ind. is simply a tense of continuance rather than an Hist. Present.

II. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

573. **Dum**, *dōnec, quoad, up to* (the time) *that, until*, have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative :

The Present is either an Historical Present, or looks forward to the Future.

Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pasce capellās. VERG. *Tityrus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.*

Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, quoad renūntiātum est vicisse Boeōtiōs. NEP. *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.*

Dōnec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. LIV. *Until Marcellus returned, there was silence.*

Haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcerō. TER. *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished (it).*

Exspectābo dum venit. TER. *I will wait until he comes.*

Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua :

Scipiōnī Silānōque dōnec revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātum imperium est. LIV. *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

574. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until,** take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved :

Vērgīnius dum collēgam consuleret morātus est. LIV. *Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague.*

At tibi sit tantī nōn indulgēre theātris, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor. OV. *But let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom.*

Often with **exspecto, I wait :**

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis. HOR. *The clown waits for the river to run off (dry).*

Also : **exspectāre ut, sī** (never Infinitive), 462, 2.

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with **dum, while,** and **dōnec, while, until,** to express subordination (like **cum**, 585). The principle is that of Partial Obliquity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense.

Dum intentus in eum se rēx tōtus āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dējēcit. LIV. *While the king fixed upon him was quite turned away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āvertentem.)*

575. **Dum,** with the Subjunctive, is used in Conditional Wishes : Negative, **dum nē = nē interim.**

Ōderint dum metuant. ATTIIUS. *Let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear).*

Dumnē ob malefacta peream parvī [id] aestimo. PLAUT. (379.)

So also **dummodo, modo,** *provided only, only :*

Dummodo mōrāta rectē veniat, dōtāta est satis. PLAUT. *Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough.*

Multa [in eō] admiranda sunt : eligere modo cūrae sit. QUINT. *Many things in him are to be admired ; only you must be careful to choose.*

Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī. OV. (429, R. 1.)

III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

576. **Antequam and priusquam, before,** take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

REMARK.—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements **ante, anteā, prius—quam,** are often separated.

577. The Present Indicative is used after Positive Sentences :

Antequam ad sententiam redeo, dē me pauca dīcam. CIC. *Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

Omnia experiri certum est priusquam pereo. TER. *I am determined to try everything before I perish.* (Priusquam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

REMARK.—The Pure Perfect Indicative is used of Iterative Action. (569.)

Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūrērunt. QUINT.

The Present Subjunctive is more common in general statements.

578. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used, especially after Negative Sentences. After Positive Sentences there is no necessary connection.

Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs militēs vidērunt. LIV. *The envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.*

Neque defatigābor antequam illōrum viās ratiōnēsque percēpero, et prō omnibus et contrā omnia disputandī. CIC. *I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.*

Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua :

Themistoclēs collēgīs suis praedixit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. NEP. (546.) (Nōlite dīmittere priusquam ego ero remissus.)

Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

579. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After Positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in Generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare *cum*, 585.) The Subjunctive is absolutely necessary when the action does not, or is not to, take place.

The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing*.

Ante vidēmus fulgurātiōnem quam sonum audiāmus. SEN. *We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound* (we may never hear it).

In omnibus negotiīs priusquam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparātiō diligens. CIC. *In all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation.* (Ideal Second Person.)

Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversariis sentiatur communit. CAES. *He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy (too soon to be perceived by the enemy). (Prius quam = prius quam ut.)*

Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pugnā erat expertus. LIV. *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight).*

Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis prius quam rei pūblīcae prōdesse potuisset exstincta fuit. CIC. *Often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State.*

Ducentis ānnis antequam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Galli lēscendērunt. LIV. *(It was) two hundred years before their taking Rome that) the Gauls came down into Italy.*

Here the Subjunctive gives the natural point of reference.

After the Negative:

Inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam (nōn priusquam = dōnec) rēx eum in fidem reciperet. NEP. *He did not go away until the king took him under his protection. (He stayed to make the king take him under his protection.)*

REMARK.—When the will is involved, **potius quam** is used in the same way as **prius quam**.

Dēpugnā potius quam serviās. CIC. *Fight it out rather than be a slave.*

IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUUM).

580. **Cum** is a relative conjunction, and stands nearer to the Ablative than to the Accusative in signification, perhaps also in form (quo(f)um). **Cum** is the classic spelling, as well as the classic pronunciation.

581. There are three great uses of **cum**:

- I. Temporal **cum** (*when—then*) takes the Indicative;
- II. Historical **cum**, *as*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive;
- III. 1. Causal **cum**, *as, since*; and
2. Concessive **cum**, *whereas, although*, takes the Subjunctive.

I. **Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernīs movent,** *When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. **Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernīs mōvit,** *As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

III. 1. **Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernīs movendum est,** *As (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

III. 2. **Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernīs nōn mōvērunt,** *Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

REMARK.—So called **cum inversum** (**cum** in the apodosis) is as natural in English as in Latin :

Jam vēr appetēbat, cum Hannibal ex hibernīs mōvit. LIV. *Spring was (already) approaching, when Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

According to 581, I., it is, of course, put in the Indicative.

I. Temporal Cum.

582. **Cum, when,** is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as **tum, tunc, then ; nunc, now ; diēs, day ; tempus, time ; jam, already ; vix, scarcely ;** and the like.

Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret. CIC. *The soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.*

Sex librōs tunc dē Rēpublicā scripsimus cum gubernācula reipublicae tenēbāmus. CIC. *I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.*

Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō. CIC. *Remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.*

Longum illud tempus cum nōn ero magis mē movet quam hōc exitium. CIC. *That long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time).*

Jam dilūcescēbat cum signum consul dedit. LIV. *By this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.* (See 580, R.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive :

Pater, hominum immortalis est infāmia. Etiam tum vīvit cum esse crēdās mortuam. PLAUT. *Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. I lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

REMARKS.—1. **Fuit cum** commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (633), and takes the Subjunctive :

Fuit tempus cum (= fuit cum) rūra colerent hominēs. VARRO. *There was a time when mankind lived in the country.*

The Indicative is rare.

2. **Memini cum,** *I remember the time when,* takes the Indicative ; but **audire cum** takes the Subjunctive parallel with the Participle :

Audīvi Mētrōdōrum cum dē his ipsis disputāret. CIC. *I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of **cum** with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative :

Multī annī sunt cum (= multōs annōs) in aere meō est. *(It is) many years (that he has been (221) in my debt.*

Multi ānni sunt cum (= **multis annis**) **in aere meo non fuit.** *It is many years that he has not been (since he was) in my debt.*

Non dum centum et decem anni sunt cum (= **ex quo = abhinc annis**) **de pecuniis repetundis lata lex est.** *Cic. It is not yet 110 years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.*

583. Coincident Action.—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, **cum** is almost equivalent to its kindred relative **quod**, *in that* :

Cum tacent, clamant. *Cic. When (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.*

Dixi omnia cum hominem nominavi. *Plin. Ep. I have said everything, in naming the man.*

584. Conditional use of Cum.—**Cum** with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to **si**, *if*, with which it is sometimes interchanged :

Cum poscis, posce Latinē. *Juv. When (If) you ask (for anything), ask in Latin.*

Cum veniet contrā, digitō compece labellum. *Juv. When (If) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.*

585. Iterative use of Cum.—**Cum** in the sense of **quoties, as** often *as*, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action :

Solet cum se purgat in me conferre omnem culpam. *Cic. He is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.*

Ager cum multis annis requievit uberiores efferre fruges solet. *Cic.*

Cum palam ejus anuli ad palmam converterat Gyges a nullō vidēbatur. *Cic. (569.)*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is also found (569, R.):

Cum in ius duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant. *Liv. Whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.*

II. Historical Cum.

586. Cum, when (as), is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

REMARK.—The subordinate clause generally precedes, and often indicates Causal as well as Temporal relation. The Subjunctive in some cases seems to be due to the Latin tendency to express inner connection (evolution) by the Subjunctive. In the absence of participles, **cum** with the Subjunctive is a parallel construction.

Āgēsīlāus cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcessit. NEP. *Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.*

Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter. CIC. *When I was (Being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.*

Athēniensēs cum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent, lapidibus coōperuērunt. CIC. (546.)

Cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāset, urbem reliquimus. CIC. *When (As) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.*

Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsīmō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs regnāset. LIV. *Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

III. Causal and Concessive Cum.

1. Causal Cum.

587. Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that, with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action:

Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit. CIC. *Since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.*

Cum Athēnās tanquam ad mercātūram bonārum artium sis profectus, inānem redire turpissimum est. CIC. *As (Since) you set out for Athens as if to market for good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).*

Dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. NEP. *He had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception (characteristic); that it is a mere conception is emphasized by *quippe* and *utpote*, as in the relative sentence.

On the occasional use of *cum* with the Ind. in a causal sense, see 567. Oftener in earlier Latin

2. Concessive Cum.

588. Causal *cum*, whereas, becomes Concessive *cum*, whereas, although, when the cause is not sufficient: the relation is often adversative.

Nihil mē adjuvit cum posset. CIC. *He gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.*

Cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī re

sistēbant. CAES. *Although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.*

Perire artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, si appāret.

QUINT. *We think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

589. **Cum—tum.**—When **cum**, *when*, **tum**, *then* (*both—and especially*), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative :

Pausaniās consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimīca capiēbat. NEP. *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

When they have different verbs, the verb with **cum** may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force :

Sisennae historia cum facile omnēs superiōrēs vincat, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō. CIC. *Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

590. In Conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Protasis**, that which contains the consequence is called the **Apódosis**.

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss* ; and **Apódosis**, *Conclusion*.

Grammatically, the **Apódosis** is the *Principal*, the **Protasis** the *Dependent*, clause.

591. *Sign of the Conditional.*—The common conditional particle is **si**, *if*.

REMARKS.—1. **Si** is a locative case, literally *so, in those circumstances* (comp. **si-c**, *so*). So in English: "I would by combat make her good, *so* were I a man."—SHAKESP.

Hence, Conditional clauses with **si** may be regarded as adverbs in the Ablative case, and are often actually represented by the Ablative Absolute.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by **si quidem**, which in later Latin is almost = **quoniam**.

3. The temporal particles **cum** and **quando**, *when*, and the locative **ubi**, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

592. *Negative of si.*—The negative of **si** is either **si nōn** or **nisi**.

Si nōn negatives a particular word, *if not* ; **nisi**, *unless*, negatives the whole idea—restricts, excepts.

Si nōn is the rule—

1. When the positive of the same verb precedes :

Sī fēcerīs, magnam habēbo grātiam; sī nōn fēcerīs, ignōscam. CIC. *If you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

2. When the Condition is concessive :

Sī mihi bonā rēpūblicā fruī nōn licuerit, at carēbo malā. CIC. *If I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

Nisi is in favorite use after negatives :

Parvī (= nihilī) sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium domī. CIC. *Of little (value) are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

Nōn possem vīvere nisi in litterīs vīverem. CIC. *I could not live unless I lived in study.*

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās. CIC. *Memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Sī nōn exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.)*

So **nisi sī**, except in case :

Miserōs illūdī nōlunt hominēs nisi sī sē forte jactant. CIC. *Men do not like to have the unfortunate mocked unless (except in case) they happen to swagger.*

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes the difference is unessential :

Nisi Cūrio fuisset, hodiē tē muscae comēdisset. QUINT. *If it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day. Sī nōn fuisset* would be equally correct.

2. **Nisi** and **nisi sī** are often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the signification of *but, except, besides, only* :

Inspice quid portem; nihil hīc nisi triste vidēbis. OV. *Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.*

Falsus honor juvat et mendāx infāmia terret, quem nisi mendācem et mendōsum? HOR. *False honor charms and lying slander scares, whom but the false and faulty?*—BROUGHAM.

3. **Nisi quod** introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that :

Nihil acciderat [Polyeratī] quod nōllet nisi quod ānulum quō dēlectābātur in mari abjēcerat. CIC. *Nothing had happened to Polyocrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring). So praeterquam quod.*

Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat. PLIN. EP. *He makes no blunder except—he makes no blunder ("faultily faultless").*

4. **Nisi forte**, unless perhaps, **nisi vērō**, unless indeed, with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession :

Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit. CIC. *There is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked.*

Licet honestā morte dēfungī, nisi forte satius est victōris expectāre arbi trium. CURT. *We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.*

5. **Nī** is antiquated or poetical, and is equivalent to **sī nōn** :

Nī pārere velis, pereundum erit ante lucernās. JUV. (532, R. 3.)

So in oaths, promises, and the like :

Peream nī piscem putāvī esse. VARRO. *May I die if I did not think it was a fish.*

593. *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, **sī** is used for the first; **sīn**, *if not* (but if), for the second.

Sīn is further strengthened by **autem**, *but*; **minus**, *less* (*not*); **secus**, *otherwise*; **aliter**, *else*:

Mercātūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn magna et cōpiōsa, nōn est admodum vituperanda. CIC. *Mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work); if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.*

REMARK.—If the Verb or Predicate is to be supplied from the context, **sī minus**, *if less* (*not*), **sīn minus**, **sīn aliter**, *if otherwise*, are commonly used, rarely **sī nōn**:

Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs. CIC. *Take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.*

Ōdero sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābo. OV. (234, R. 2.)

594. *Other Forms of the Protasis.*—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative:

Quī vidēret urbem captam dīceret. CIC. *Whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.*

Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret. LIV. (252.)

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle:

Si latet ars, prōdest; affert dēpresa pudōrem. OV. *If art is concealed, it does good; (if) detected, it brings shame.*

Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante. CIC. *All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

Nihil potest ēvenīre nisi causā antecōdente. CIC. *Nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier:

Fēcērunt servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tālī rē facere voluisset. CIC. *The servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (sī quid tāle accidisset).*

At bene nōn poterat sine pūrō pectore vīvī. LUCR. *But there could be no good living without a clean heart (nisi pūrum pectus esset).*

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative:

Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris. OV. (542.)

Cēdit amor rēbus : rēs age, tūtus eris. Ov. Love yields to business ; do business (if you plunge into business), you will be safe.

Immūtā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs. Cic. (236, R. 4.)

595. *Correlatives of Si.*—The correlatives of **Si** are : **Sic**, *so ; ita, thus ;* but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally **tum, then ;** and **eā condiōne**, *on those terms*, are employed.

Dē frūmentō responsum est ita ūsūrum eō populum Rōmānum, sī pretium acciperent. Liv. In the matter of the corn, answer was made that the Roman people would avail themselves of it, on condition that they accepted the value.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

596. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis :*

- I. Logical Conditional Sentences : **Si**, with the Indicative.
- II. Ideal Conditional Sentences : **Si**, with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
- III. Unreal Conditional Sentences : **Si**, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula :

If this is so, then that is so ; if this is not so, then that is not so.

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative ; the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative ; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

* In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into *particular* and *general*. Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given. (568, 569.)

PROTASIS.

Si id crēdis,*If you believe that,***Si id crēdēbās,***If you believed that,***Si id crēdidistī,***If you (have) believed that,***Si id crēdēs,***If you (shall) believe that,***Si id crēdideris,***If you (shall have) believe(d) that,***Si quid crēdidisti,***If you have believed anything**(= when you believe anything),***Si quid crēdiderās,***If you had believed anything**(= when you believed anything),*

APODOSIS.

errās,*you are going wrong.***errābās,***you were going wrong.***errāstī,***you have gone (you went) wrong.***errābis,***you will (be) go(ing) wrong; (234, R. S).***errāveris,***you will have gone (will go) wrong.***errās,***you go wrong. Comp. 569.***errābās,***you went wrong.*

Si spīritum dūcit, vīvit. CIC. *If he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.*

Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est consilium domī. CIC. (412, R. 1.)

Si occidī, rectē fēcī; sed nōn occidī. QUINT. *If I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.*

Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. CIC. *If we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.*

Improbōs sī meus consulātus sustulerit, multa saecula propāgārit rei pūblicaē. CIC. *If my consulship shall have done away with the destructives, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.*

Si pēs condoluit, sī dens, ferre nōn possumus. CIC. (569.)

Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dixeram. CIC. (569.)

Vivam, sī vivet; sī cadet illa, cadam. PROP. *Let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall.*

Nunc sī forte potes, sed nōn potes, optima conjux, finītis gaudē tot mihi morte malīs. OV. *Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.*

Flectere sī nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō. VERG. *If I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below.*

Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit; sī tanta clādēs vilem vītam nōn fēcit, nulla faciet. LIV. *If so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none ever will.*

Dēsīnēs timēre sī spērāre dēsieris. SEN. *You will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.*

REMARKS.—1. After a Verb of Saying or Thinking (**Ōrātio Obliqua**), the Protasis must be put in the Subjunctive, according to the rule.

(Sī id crēdis, errās.)	Dico, tē, sī id crēdās. errāre. dixī. tē. sī id crēderēs. errāre.
(Sī id crēdēs, errābis.)	Dico, tē, sī id crēdās. errātūrum esse. dixī, tē. sī id crēderēs. errātūrum esse.
(Sī id crēdidistī, errāstī.)	Dico, tē, sī id crēdiderīs, errāsse. dixī, tē, sī id crēdidissēs. errāsse.

For examples, see *Ōrātio Obliqua*, 660.

2. The Subjunctive is used by Attraction :

Rēte texunt arāneolae ut sī quid inhaeserit conficiant. CIC. (Sī quid inhaesit, conficiunt.) (667.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjunctive in connection with the Universal Present :

Senectūs plēna est voluptātis sī illā sciās ūtī, SEN. *Old age is full of pleasure, if you know (if one knows) how to make use of it.*

Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās. CIC. (592.)

4. *Sive—sive* (seu—seu) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (499.)

Seu vicit, ferōciter instat victis ; seu victus est, instaurat cum victōribus certāmen. LIV. *If he vanquishes (569), he presses the vanquished furiously ; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against.

The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person.

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see (27.)

PROTASIS.	APODOSIS.
Sī id crēdās, <i>If you should (were to) believe that,</i>	errēs, <i>you would be going wrong.</i>
Sī id crēdās, <i>If you should (were to) believe that,</i>	errāveris, <i>you would go wrong.</i>
Sī id crēdiderīs, 1. <i>If you should (prove to) have believed that (Perfect ; Action Past or Future), you would be going wrong.</i>	errēs, 2. <i>If you should (come to) believe that (Aor. ; Action Future),</i>
	<i>you would be going wrong.</i>
Sī id crēdiderīs (rare), <i>If you (should have) believe(d) that,</i>	errāverīs, <i>you would (have) go(ne) wrong.</i>

Sī vicīnus tuus equum meliōrem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum mālīs an illius? CIC. *If your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?*

Sī gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat insāniens, reddere peccātum sit, officium nōn reddere. CIC. *If a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you (and), reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.*

Sī nunc mē suspendam meam operam lūserim, et meis inimicīs voluptātem creāverim. PLAUT. *Should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and give(n) to my enemies a charming treat.*

Ut redeant veterēs: Cicerōnī nēmo ducentōs nunc dederit nummōs nisi fulserit ānulus ingens. JUV. *Let the ancients return: no one would give Cicero now-a-days two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).*

Sī is dēstituatur, nihil satis tūtum habēbis. LIV. *Should he leave us in the lurch, you will find no safety.*

Sī valeant hominēs, ars tua, Phoebus, jacet. OV. *Should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.*

Ōtia sī tollās, periēre Cupīdinis arcūs. OV. (195, R. 6.)

Sī vērum excutiās, faciēs nōn uxor amātur. JUV. *If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved.*

Nulla est excūsatio peccātī, sī amici causā peccāveris. CIC. *It is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential of the Past coincides in form with the Unreal of the Present. (Comp. 252, R. 2.) Clear examples of definite persons are rare. HOR. Sat. I. 3, 5. Of indefinite persons: **Mirārētur quī tum cerneret.** LIV. (252.)

So. **Erat Quinctius, sī cēderēs, plācābilis.** LIV. *Quinctius was, if you yielded to him, (sure to be) placable. (Est sī cēdās.)*

Sī luxuriae temperāret, avāritiam nōn timērēs. TAC. *If he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Sī temperet, nōn timeās.)*

2. The lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 248, R. 2.)

Tū sī hīc sīs, aliter sentiās. TER. *If you were I (Put yourself in my place), you would think differently.*

Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat? CIC. *If your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)?*

In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, be careful to exclude all forms of future verbs, such as **posse**, *to be able*; **velle**, *to wish*, and the like.

Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence:

Sī revīscant et tēcum loquantur—quid tālibus virīs respondērēs? CIC. *If they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?*

3. In **Ōrātio Oblīqua** the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (659.)

III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

599. The Unreal Conditional sentence is used of that which is Unfulfilled or Impossible, and is expressed by the Imperfect

Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Future Perfect and Imperfect. Any action that is decided is considered Past. (Comp. 266, R. 3.)

PROTASIS.

Sī id crēderēs,

If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]

Sī id crēdidissēs,

If you had believed that, [you did not,]

APODOSIS.

errārēs,

you would be going wrong.

errāvissēs,

you would have gone wrong.

Sapientia nōn expeterētur, si nihil efficeret. CIC. *Wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.*

Caederem tē, nisi irāscerer. SEN. *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.*

Sī ibi tē esse scīssem, ad tē ipse vēnissem. CIC. *If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.*

Hectora quis nōsset, sī fēlix Trōja fuisset. OV. *Who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy?*

Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs. CIC. *If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

Ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in liberā patriā mortua essem. LIV. *Had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

REMARKS.—1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used in opposition to continuance in the Past. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Imperfect, and the Apodosis in the Pluperfect, except when the Imperfect denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present:

Nōn tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae concidissent, nisi Sicilia clāssibus nōstris patēret. CIC. *The great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.*

Sī pudōrem habērēs, ultimam mihi pensiōnem mihi remisissēs. SEN. *If you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.*

Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus, sī tam in nostrā potestāte esse oblivisci quam tacēre. TAC. *We should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.*

The Imperfect in both members is rare:

Sī Prōtogenēs Ialysum illum suum caenō oblitum vidēret, magnum crēdo, acciperet dolōrem. CIC. *If Protogenes had seen that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would have felt a mighty pang.*

Perhaps this may be regarded as a form of **Repraesentātio**. (657, R.)

2. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative, when the action is represented as interrupted (224); by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect, when the conclusion is confidently anticipated. (246, R. 3.)

Lābēbar longius. nisi mē retinuissem. CIC. (246. R. 3.)

Omnīnō erat supervacua doctrīna. sī nātūra sufficeret. QUINT.

Peractum erat bellum, sī Pompējum opprimere Brundusī potuisset. FLOR.

The war was (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundisium.

The Imperfect Indicative is sometimes found in the Protasis :

Ipsam tibi epistolam misissem, nisi tam subito frātris puer proficiscēbātur.

CIC. *I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother's servant was not starting so suddenly.*

3. The Indicative is the regular construction with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the Active and Passive Periphrastic—**VIX**, **PAENE**. *scarcely, hardly*, and the like.

Consul esse quī potuī, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem? CIC. *How could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?*

Antōnī potuit gladiōs contemnere, sī sic omnia dixisset. JUV. *He might have despised Antony's swords, if he had thus said all (that he did say).*

Emendātūrus, sī licuisset, eram. OV. *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).*

In bona ventūrus, sī paterēre (R. 1.) fuit. OV. *He would have come into (my) property, if you had permitted it.*

Pons iter paene hostibus dedit (paene dedit = dabat = datūrus erat.) nī ūnus vir fuisset. LIV. *The bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man.*

4. In **Ōrātiō Obliqua** the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Future Infinitive, with **esse** and **fuisse** for the Active, **futūrum ut**, **futūrum fuisse ut** for Passive and Supineless Verbs.

A. Dico (dixī), tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

B. Dico (dixī), tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse.

A. Dico (dixī), sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperēris.

B. Dico (dixī), sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris.

A is very rare; A theoretical. For the long form, B, the simple Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 662, R.

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive; the Imperfect form is unchanged.

Nōn dubito,

I do not doubt,

Nōn dubitābam,

I did not doubt,

quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs.

that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.

quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs,

that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.

Honestum tāle est ut, vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile. CIC. *Virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.*

Nec dubium erat quīn, sī tam paucī simul obire omnia possent, terga datūri hostēs fuerint. LIV. *There was no doubt that, if it had been possible for so small a number to have managed every thing at the same time, the enemy would have turned their backs.*

Dic quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore censor fuissēs? LIV. *Tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?*

Adeō inopiā coactus est Hannibal, ut, nisi tum fugae speciēm abeundō timuisset, Galliam repetitūrus fuerit. LIV. *Hannibal was so hard pressed by want of provisions, that, had he not at the time feared (presenting) the appearance of flight by retreating, he would have gone back to Gaul.*

The Periphrastic Pluperfect Subjunctive occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative.

Potuī (246. R.1) commonly becomes **potuerim**, and the Periphrastic Passive with **fui** becomes **fuerim** :

Haud dubium fuit quā, nisi ea mora intervēnisset, castra eō diē Pūnica capi potuerint. LIV. *There was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day.*

The Passive Conditional is unchanged :

Id ille sī repudiāset, dubitātis quā eī vīs esset allāta? CIC. *If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?*

The active form is rarely unchanged. (LIV. II. 33.) In the absence of the periphrastic tense use **potuerim**.

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

600. *Omission of the Conditional Sign.*—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign :

An ille mihi (351) liber, cui mulier imperat? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; ējicit, abeundum; minatur, extimescendum. CIC. *Or is he free (tell), me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened.*

Unum cognōrīs, omnēs nōrīs. TER. *You know one, you know all.*

Dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat. PLIN. EP. *Had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.*

601. *Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.*—When the Verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis :

Sī quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit = Sī quisquam fuit. CIC. *If any one was wise, Cato was.*

602. *Total Omission of the Protasis.*—The Protasis is often contained in a Participle or involved in the context (594, 2).

The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis. See 252, R. 1

Nimiō plūs quam velim Volscōrum ingenia sunt mōbilia. LIV. *The dispositions of the Volscians are (too) much more unstable than I should like (if I had my way, if I could manage it, or what not).*

Velim sic existimēs. CIC. *I should like you to think so. (Utinam existimēs!)*

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima vellem. OV. (316). (Utinam essēs.)
The impossibility of definite ellipsis constitutes the Modality.

603. *Omission of the Apodosis.*—The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes*, in conformity with the vague character of the expression, which is poetical. See 254 and R. 1.

O mihi praeteritōs referat sī Jūppiter Annōs. VERG. (254.)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

604. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut sī, velut sī, ac sī, quam sī, tanquam sī, quasi*, or simply *velut* and *tanquam*, *as if*.

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences.

The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

Nōlī timēre quasi [=quam timeās sī] assem elephantō dēs. QUINT.
Don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.

Parvī primō ortū sic jacent tanquam [=jaceant sī] omnīnō sine animō sint. CIC. *Babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all.*

Hic est obstandum, militēs, velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus. LIV. *Here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmus, sī pugnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight).*

Mē juvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Pūnici pervēnisse. LIV. *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).*

Suspectus tanquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs. JUV. *Suspected as if he had (of having) set his own house on fire.*

Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset. LIV. *A great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.*

Dēlēta est Ausōnum gens perinde ac sī internecivō bellō certāset. LIV. *The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

REMARKS.—1. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional :
Massiliensēs in eō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānōs esse ac sī medium umbilicum Graeciae incolerent. LIV. *We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid-avel (= the heart) of Greece.*

2. As in the ordinary conditional sentence, so in the comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a Participle:

Galli laeti ut exploratā victoriā ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt. CAES. *The Gauls in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp of the Romans.*

Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tamquam nōn transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis. LIV. *Antiochus was as unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.*

CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

605. Concessive Sentences are introduced—

1. By the conditional Particles, *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tametsi*.

2. By the Generic Relative, *quanquam*.

3. By the compounds, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*.

4. By the Verb *licet*.

5. By the Final Particles, *ut* (*nē*).

6. By *quum* (*cum*); all answering generally to the notion *although*.

REMARKS.—*Etsi* (*et + si*), *even if*; *etiāmsi*, *even now if*; *tametsi*, *yet even if*; *quanquam*, (*quam + quam*), *to what extent soever*; *quamvis*, *to what extent you choose*; *quantumvis*, *to what amount you choose*; *licet*, *it is left free* (perhaps intrans. of *linquo*, *I leave*).

606. *Etsi*, *etiāmsi*, and *tametsi*, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of *si*, *if*. The Indicative is more common, especially with *etsi* and *etiāmsi*:

Dē futūrīs rēbus *etsi* semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accōdere. CIC. *Although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.*

Hamīlcar *etsi* flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviendum putāvit. NEP. *Although Hamīlcar was on fire with the desire of war, nevertheless he thought that he ought to subscribe (to work for) peace.*

Inops ille *etiāmsi* referre grātiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest. CIC. *The needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.*

Mē vērā prō grātis loquī, *etsi* meum ingenium nōn monēret, necessitās cōgit. LIV. *Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth instead of the smooth.*

REMARK.—*SI* itself is often concessive, 592.

607. *Quanquam*, *to what extent soever*, falls under the head of generic relatives (246, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative:

Medicī quanquam intellegunt saepe, tamen nunquam ægrīs dicunt, illō morbō eōs esse moritūrōs. CIC. *Although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that disease.*

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with **quanquam**: **Quanquam exercitum quī in Volscīs erat mallet, nihil recūsavit.** LIV. *Although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.*

2. **Quanquam** is often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, *And yet, Although, However*, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence; less frequently **etsī, tametsī**.

3. The Indicative, with **etsī** and **quanquam**, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**. (509.)

608. **Quamvis** follows the analogy of **volo, I will**, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive. **Quantumvis** and **quamlibet** (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere tentant. OV. *Although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.*

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs. VERG. *Although he was black, although you were fair.*

Vitia mentis, quantumvis exigua sint, in mājus excēdunt. SEN. *Mental ailments (= passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.*

REMARKS.—1. In later Latin, **quamvis** and **quanquam** change parts:

Quamvis ingeniō nōn valet. arte valet. OV. *Although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art.*

In **TACITUS**, for instance, **quanquam** regularly has the Subjunctive.

2. The Verb in **quamvis** is sometimes inflected:

Quam velit sit potens. nunquam impetrāvisset. CIC. *No matter how powerful she may be, she would never have obtained it.*

609. **Licet** retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

Licet irrideat sī quī vult. CIC. *Let any one laugh who will.*

Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudet amantis. JUV. *Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.*

Sim licet extrēmum, sicut sum, missus in orbem. OV. *Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.*

REMARKS.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare: JUV. xiii. 56.

2. **Quamvis** is sometimes combined with **licet**.

610. **Ut** and **nē** are also used concessively:

Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās. OV. *Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.*

Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est. CIC. *Granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

REMARK.—**Ut nōn** can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative :

Hic diēs ultimus est; ut nōn sit, prope ab ultimō. SEN. *This is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last.*

On **ita—ut**, see 255; on **ut—ita**, see 484, 2.

611. *Concessive sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.*—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

Rīsus interdum ita repente ērumpit, ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus. CIC. *Laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so.*

Multōrum tē oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem custōdient. CIC. (*Of many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (WITHOUT your perceiving it).*)

Quis Aristīdem nōn mortuum diligit. CIC. *Who does not love Aristides (though) dead?*

REMARK.—Later writers combine **etsī, quanquam, or quamvis**, with the Participle **Caesarem militēs quamvis recūsantem ultrō in Africam sunt secūtī.** SUET. *The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it.*

With Adjectives **quamvis** is used even in the best writers :

Saepe bibi sūcōs quamvis invītus amārōs. OV. *I have often drunk bitter potions although against my will.*

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

612. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

REMARKS.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation, may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction or the employment of an abstract noun :

Quae quum ita sint. *Now since these things are so* (Ciceronian formula).

Futūra modo expectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōficiuntur e angōre et metū. CIC. *They only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.*

Epicūrus nōn satis politus iīs artibus quās quī tenent, ērudītī appellantur. CIC. *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which, people are called cultivated.*

Notice especially **quod** in combination with **sī, ubi**, in which **quod** means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and, but, therefore*, sometimes not at all.

2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

613. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pro

nouns in all their forms: Adjective, Substantive, and Adverbial. (See Tables.)

REMARKS.—1. The relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. **Unde**, whence, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently: **ibi** = in eō, &c.; **ubi** = in quō, &c.; **inde** = ex eō, &c.; **unde** = ex quō, &c.; **eō** = in eum, &c.; **quō** = in quem, &c.:

Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dīcis. irātus dixerit. CIC. *It may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.*

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence. (469, R. 3.)

Quae probat populus ego nēscio. SEN. *The things that the people approves, I do not know (quid probet. what it is the people approves).*

Et quid ego tē velim. et tū quod quaeris, sciēs. TER. *You shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).*

614. *Position of Relatives.*—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (44.)

615. *Antecedent.*—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

REMARK.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common. (416.)

CONCORD.

616. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person:

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit. SYRUS. (293.)

Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō. PLAUT. (373, R. 1.)

Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest. SYRUS. *Bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed.*

Hoc illis narro quī mē nōn intelligunt. PHAEDRUS. *I tell this tale for those who understand me not.*

Ego quī tē cōnfirmo, ipse mē nōn possum. CIC. *I, who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes:

Tū es is, quī mē ad caelum extulisti. CIC. *You are he that has extolled me to the skies.*

So occasionally in English: Acts xxi. 38.

2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, **id quod**, *that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically):

Sī ā vōbīs dēserar, (*id quod nōn spēro*), **tamen animō nōn dēficiam**. CIC. *If I should be deserted by you, (which I do not expect,) nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.*

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

I. By the sense, and not by the form.

II. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent:

EXAMPLES: I. Sex milia quī Pydnam perfūgerant. LIV. *Six thousand, who had fled to Pydna.*

Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant. LIV. *He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

II. **Thēbae, quod caput Boeōtiaē est**. LIV. *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

Flūmen Scaldis, quod influit in Mosam. CAES. *The river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.*

Jūsta glōria, quī est fructus virtūtis. CIC. *Real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.*

4. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative:

Testārum suffrāgiis quod illi ostracismum vocant. NEP. *By potsherd votes— (a thing) which they call "ostracism."*

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282:

Grandēs nātū matrēs et parvulī liberī, quōrum utrōrumque aetās misericordiam nostram requirit. CIC. *Aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands our compassion.*

Ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant. SALL. *Leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

Eae frūgēs atque fructūs quōs terra gignit. CIC. *Those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 283.

617. *Repetition of the Antecedent.*—The Antecedent of the Relative is quite often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive:

Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētari oportēret. CAES. *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which (day behooved to measure) corn (was to be measured out) to the soldiers.*

618. *Incorporation of the Antecedent.*—The Antecedent and the Adjective, or the apposition of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause:

In quem primum ēgressi sunt locum Trōja vocātur. LIV. *The place they landed at was called Troy.*

Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit, quī mons erat hostium plēnus.

CIC. *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.*

Themistoclēs, dē servīs suis quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem nīsīt. NEP. *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.*

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat. CIC. *What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself (= every man to his trade).*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted are the phrases: **quae tua prūdētia est**, which such is your prudence; **quā prūdētiā es** (= **tū es eā prūdētiā**), of which (such) prudence are you (= **prō tuā prūdētiā**, in accordance with your prudence). See 628.

619. Attraction of the Relative.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any other case:

Hoc confirmāmus illō auguriō quō dīximus. CIC. *We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

REMARKS.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence:

Quibus sauciīs poterat sēcum ductīs ad urbem pergīt. LIV. *Having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.*

2. **Inverted Attraction.**—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling:

Urbem quam statuo, vestra est. VERG. (As for) *the city which I am rearing, (it) is mine.*

Istum quem quaeris, ego sum. TER. (As for) *that man whom you are looking for, I am he.* ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

620. Correlative Use of the Relative.—The usual Correlative of **quī is is**, more rarely **hīc, ille**:

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit. SYRUS. (293.)

Hic sapiens, de quō loquor. CIC. (290, 3.)

Illā diēs veniet, meā quā lūgubria pōnam. OV. (292, 4.)

621. Omission of the Correlative.—The Correlative, **is**, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

Postume, nōn bene olet, quī bene semper olet. MART. *Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.*

Quem arma nōn frēgerant vitia vicērunt. CURT. (Him) *whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome.*

Quem dī diligunt adulescens moritur. PLAUT. (He) *whom the gods love is young.*

Xerxēs praeium prōposuit quī [= eī quī] invēnisset novam voluptātem. CIC. *Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure.*

Miseranda vīta quī [= eōrum quī] sē metuī quam amārī mālunt NEP. *Pitiable is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved.*

Discite sãnārī per quem [= per eum, per quem] didicistis amāre. OV. (403.)

622. *Position of the Correlative clause.*—The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common :

Male rēs sē habet quum quod virtūte effici dēbet id tentātur pecūniā CIC. *It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth is attempted by money.*

Quod vidēs accidere puerīs hōc nōbīs quoque mājusculis puerīs ēveni SEN. *What you see befalls children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth.*

Quae quia nōn liceat nōn facit, illa facit. OV. (541.)

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exerceat. (618.)

The Correlative omitted :

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. SEN. *What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

Per quās nōs petitis saepe fugātis opēs. OV. *The means you take win us, often scare us off.*

623. *Indefinite Antecedent.*—The Indefinite Antecedent generally omitted :

Ēlige cui dicās : tū mihi sōla placēs. OV. *Choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me.*

REMARK.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from Interrogative :

Conōn nōn quaesivit ubi ipse tūtō vīveret. NEP., (297), might be either.

TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

624. *Future and Future Perfect.*—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (234, 236) :

Sit liber, dominus quī volet esse meus. MART. *He must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master.*

Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, ējus victōria erit. LIV. (236, R. 2.)

625. *Iterative Action*.—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (568, 569):

I. Contemporaneous action :

Ōre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō. HOR. *Drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap).*

Quācumque incēdēbat agmen, lēgātī occurrēbant. LIV. *In whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

II. Prior action :

Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit. CIC. *The earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives).*

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. SEN. (622.)

Nōn cēnat quotiēs nēmo vocāvit eum. MART. *He does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him.*

Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistoclēs]. NEP. (569.)

Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia. SEN. *Vices will follow you whithersoever you go.*

Quī timēre dēsierint, ōdisse incipient. TAC. (569.)

REMARK.—According to 569, the Subjunctive is used

1.) In **Ōrātio Oblīqua** (Total or Partial) :

2.) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses) :

Quis eum diligat quem metuat? Cic. *Who could love him whom he fears?*

Mōs est Athēnis laudārī in cōntiōne eōs quī sint in praeliis interfecti. Cic. *It is the custom at Athens that a panegyric be pronounced on those who have been killed in battle. (Laudantur, quī interfecti sunt.)*

3.) In the Ideal Second Person :

Bonus signior fit ubi negligās. SALL. (568.)

4.) On the general principle of oblique sensé, chiefly in later historians :

Quī ūnum ējus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat. LIV. (569.)

MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

626. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood :

Uxor quae bona est, A wife who is good (a good wife).

REMARK.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference : that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation ; the Relative clause, a transient relation : **īī quī docent** = *those who teach* = *the teachers* (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).

627. The Explanatory Relative **quī**, with the Indicative, = **is enim, for he,**) often approaches **quod, in that.**

Habeo senectūti magnam grātiā, quae mihi sermōnis aviditatem auxit. CIC. *I am very thankful to old age, which (= it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.*

REMARK.—**Quī** with the Subjunctive gives a ground = **cum is** (587); **quī** with the Indicative, *a fact*; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable :

Errāverim fortasse quī mē esse aliquem putāvī. PLIN. EP. *I may have erred in thinking myself to be somebody.*

Improba [i. e., Ardea] quae nōstrōs cōgis abesse virōs. OV. *Naughty Ardea, she forcest (for forcing) our husbands to be away.*

In some authors this causal sense is heightened by **ut, utpote, as; quippe**, namely but with these particles the Subjunctive is far more common.

628. **Quī = sī quis, if any**, has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical. So in Generic Sentences. (246, R. 4.)

Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit. CIC. (**Sī quid accēpit.**) (625.)

Quī morī didicit, servīre dēdidicit. SEN. (424.)

REMARK.—On the Relative with the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences, see 594.

629. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL : **Habeo quae velim.** CIC. *I have what I should like.*

OPTATIVE : **Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte.** LIV. *Blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the Subjunctive in Restrictive phrases. This Relative often takes **quidem**, sometimes **modo**. Such phrases are **quod sciam = quantum scio**, *for all I know*; **quod meminerim**, *so far as memory serves me*.

Omnium oratorum quōs quidem cognoverim acūtissimum iudico Sertōrium. CIC. *Of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute.*

Nullum ornatum quī modo nōn obscūret subtrahendum puto. QUINT. *I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.*

Sometimes **quī quidem** is found with the Indicative.

630. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. (5 R.) So especially in **Oratio Obliqua** and Final Sentences :

Rectē Graeci praecipunt, nōn temptanda quae effici nōn possunt. QUINT. *Right are the Greeks in teaching, that those things are not to be tempted, which cannot be accomplished.*

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait, bestiolās quāsdam nāscī quae unum diem vivant. CIC. (653.)

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit.

(This is Paetus' statement; otherwise : **quōs frāter ejus** (521) reliquer

Xerxēs praemium prōposuit quī [= eī quī] invēnisset novam voluptatē. CIC. (621.)

Multi suam vitam neglexērunt ut eōs quī hīs cārīōrēs quam ipsī sibi essent liberārent. CIC. *Many have neglected their own lives, that they might free those who were dearer to them, than they were to themselves.*

REMARKS.—Even in *Ōrātio Obliqua* the Indicative is retained :

1. In explanations of the narrator :

Nūntiātur Afrāniō magnōs commeātūs quī iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flūmen constitisse. CAES. *It is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of provisions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.*

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the Relative clause is an integral part of the sentence, especially in the Imperfect and Pluperfect ; partly for clearness, partly for liveliness. For shifting Indicative and Subjunctive, see LIV. xxvi. 1.

2. In mere circumlocutions :

Quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī ? CIC. *Who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods ?*

Prōvidendum est nē ea quae dicuntur ab eō qui dicit dissentiant. QUINT. *We must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.*

631. Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive (Attraction of Mood) :

Pigrī est ingenīi contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa. QUINT. *It is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others.*

Quis eum diligat quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet ? CIC. *Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared ?*

Nam quod emās possis jūre vocāre tuum. MART. *For what you buy, you may rightly call your own.*

Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēcerīs. SYRUS. (306.)

In virtūte sunt multi ascensūs, ut is glōriā maximē excellat, quī virtūte plūrimum praestet. CIC. *In virtue there are many degrees, so that he excels most in glory, who has the greatest eminence in virtue.*

Sī sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum uī viverent exciperēs ; moriendum enim est omnibus. CIC. *If you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live) ; for all have to die.*

REMARKS.—The Indicative is used :

1. In mere circumlocutions ; so, often in Consecutive Sentences :

Necesse est facere sūmptum quī quaerit lucrum. PLAUT. (535.)

Efficetur ab ōrātōre, ut iī quī audiunt ita afficiantur ut ōrātōr velit. CIC. *It is sought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).*

2. Of individual facts :

Et quod vidēs perisse perditum dūcās. CAT. *And what you see (definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod videās, any body, any thing.)*

632. *Relative Sentences of Design.*—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Design) when **quī = ut is** :

Sunt multī quī aliīs ēripiunt quod aliīs largiantur. CIC. *Many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.*

Senex serit arborēs, quae alterī sēculō prōsint. CIC. (545.)

Semper habē Pyladēn, quī consōlētur Orestēn. OV. (545.)

Artaxerxēs Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae ei pānen praebēret. NEP. (545.)

REMARK.—In many combinations this Relative leans to the Characteristic, and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative.

633. *Relative Sentences of Tendency.*—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Tendency) when **quī = ut i**

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation :

Damna nulla tanta sunt quae nōn virī fortēs ferenda arbitrentur. CIC. *There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable).*

Ille ego sum cūjus laniet furiōsa capillōs. OV. *I am the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy.*

Nil prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem. OV. (296.)

Quem mea Calliopē laeserit ūnus ego. OV. *I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt.*

Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre. OV. (313.)

Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet. QUINT. (556, R. 2.)

634. This construction of the Characteristic Relative especially common after such general expressions as

Est quī, sunt quī, there is, there are some who ; nēmo est quī, there is none to ; nihil est quod, there is nothing ; habeo quod, I have to ; reperiuntur quī, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est quī? who is the who (to) . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, &c. So, also, **fuit cum, there was a time when.**

Sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem. CIC. *There are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.*

Fuit quī suādēret appellatiōnem mēnsis Augustī in Septembrem transferendam. SUET. *There was a man who urged (= to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September.*

Multī fuērunt quī tranquillitatem expetentēs ā negotiīs publicis remōverint. CIC. *There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements.*

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam malī. PLAUT. *After death there is no ill in death for me to dread.*

Nec mea quī digitis lūmina condāt erit. OV. *And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.*

Miserrimus est quī cum ēsse cupit quod edat nōn habet. PLAUT. *He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.*

Nōn habet quid edat would mean: *does not know what to eat.*

Nōn est quod paupertās nōs ā philosophiā revocet nē egestās quidem. SEN. *There is nothing to make narrow circumstances recall us from philosophy—not even (= or even) want.*

REMARKS.—1. The Indicative may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

Multi sunt quī ēripiant,
There are many to snatch away.

Multi sunt quī ēripiunt.
Many are they who snatch away.

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indicative more freely than prose writers:

Sunt-quī (= quīdam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dīcere. CIC. *Some dare not say what they think.*

Sunt- quibus ingrātē timida indulgentia servit. OV. *To some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.*

Est-ubi profectō damnum praestat facere quam lucrum. PLAUT. *Sometimes, in point of fact, 'tis better to lose than gain.*

2. When a definite predicate is negated, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

A. *Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem facit;* or,

B. *Nihil bonum est quod nōn eum quī id possideat meliōrem faciat.*

A. *Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.*

B. *There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.*

635. *Negative of Quī in Sentences of Character.*—*Quī nōn*, sometimes *quae nōn*, *quod nōn*, &c., are represented after negative clauses by *quīn*:

Sunt certa vitia quae nēmo est quīn effugere cupiat. CIC. *There are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape.*

Nīl tam difficile est quīn quaerendō investigārī possiet (= possit). TER. (556.)

But as *quīn = ut nōn*, the demonstrative may be expressed:

Nōn cum quōquam arma contulī quīn is mihi succubuerit. NEP. *I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.*

For other uses of *quīn*, see 551.

636. *Relative in a Causal Sense.*—When *quī = cum is*, as *he*, the Subjunctive is employed.

The particles *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *as*, are often used in conjunction with the Relative :

[Caninius] fuit mirificā vigilantīā quī suō tōtō consulātū somnum nōn viderit. CIC. *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.*

Ō fortunāte adolescens, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris! CIC. *Lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer!*

Māior glōria Scipiōnis, Quincti recentior ut quī eō annō triumphāset. LIV. *Scipio's glory was greater, Quinctius' was fresher, (as was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.*

Plato a Dionysiō tyrannō crudēlīter violātus est quippe quem vēnumdari jussisset. NEP. *Plato was cruelly maltreated by the tyrant Dionysius, seeing, namely, that he had ordered him to be sold.*

637. *Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.*—*Qui* is sometimes used as equivalent to *cum* is in a Concessive or Adversative Sense:

Ego quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēnās complūrēs diēs ibi commorātus sum. CIC. *Although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.*

638. *Accusative Relative and Infinitive.*—The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative :

Philosophi cēsent unumquemque nōstrum mundi esse partem, ex quō illud nātūrā consequi ut commūnem utilitātem nōstrae antepōnāmus. CIC. *Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.*

REMARK.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles *quia*, *cum*, *ut*, *quanquam*, etc. : *quia trucidāre = quia trucidārent, because they butchered* (only in the later historians).

639. *Combination of Relative Sentences.*—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coördinate.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted.

When it would stand in a different case, the Demonstrative is often substituted; or, if the case be the Nominative or Accusative, the Relative may be omitted altogether:

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat cuique plēbs favēbat,

Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat ac plēbī acceptus erat, (CAES.),

Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat eīque plēbs favēbat,

Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;

Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat et plēbs diligēbat,

Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved;

Dumnorix quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinēbat,

Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy.

REMARK.—The Relative is not combined with adversative or illative conjunctions (*but who, who therefore*), except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents or anticipates a demonstrative. (622.)

Quī fortis est fidens est, quī autem fidens est is nōn extimēscit. CIC. He who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid.

Sed quī, quī tamen. can be used in antithesis to adjectives.

Sōphrōn mīmōrum quidem scriptor sed quem Plato probāvit. QUINT. Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved.

640. *Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.*—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative:

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidī sunt. CIC. All who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.

Pisistratus Homēri librōs confūsōs antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus. CIC. Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now.

COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

641. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by *as* or *than*, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:

I. By correlatives;

II. By *atque* or *ac*;

III. By *quam*.

642. *Moods in Comparative Sentences.*—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is

required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (604).

REMARK.—On *potius quam* with the Subjunctive, see below. 647. R. 4.

643. The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause :

Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. CIC. (311.)

Servi moribus iisdem erant quibus dominus. CIC. (296, R. 1.)

644. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise.

Ita sentio Latinam linguam locupletiore esse quam Graecam. CIC. *It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.*

Ego Gajum Caesarem non eadem de republica sentire quae me sciunt. CIC. *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I (have).*

I. CORRELATIVE COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

645. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives :

1. Adjective correlatives :

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many	} as.
tantus	quantus,	(so) as great	
talis	qualis,	such	
idem	qui,	the same	

2. Adverbial correlatives :

tam	quam,	(so) as much	} as.
tantopere	quantopere	(so) as much	
toties	quoties,	as often	
tamdiu	quamdiu,	as long	
ita, sic	ut, uti, sicut,	} so (as) = as.	
item, itidem	quemadmodum,		
	quomodo,		

Quot homines, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds. PRO

Frumentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimavit. CIC. *Corn was worth as much as he valued it.*

Quālem invēnī tālem reliquī. FRONT. *Such as I found (him), I left (him).*

Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus. NEP. (296.)

Nihil tam populāre quam bonitās. CIC. *Nothing is so winning as kindness.*

Sic dē ambitioēne quōmodo dē amicā queruntur. SEN. *They complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.*

Tamdiū requiesco quamdiū ad tē scribo. CIC. *I rest as long as I am writing to you.*

REMARKS.—1. On other forms with *idem* see 296.

2. *Ut quisque* with the Superlative is more common than *quō quisque* with the Comparative, and is translated in the same way:

Ut quisque sibi plūrimum confidit. ita maximē excellit. CIC. *The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.*

Obscūrior quō quisque dēterior. QUINT. *The obscurer a man (a speaker) is, the worse he is.*

One member often coalesces with the other:

Optimum quidque rārissimum est = Ut quidque rārissimum est. ita optimum.
See 305.

3. *Ut—ita* is often used concessively (484). On *ita—ut*, in Asseverations, see 255:

4. *Ut* and *pro eō ut* are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense, *so far as, inasmuch as*: *Prō eō ut temporum difficultās tulit, so far as the hard times permitted; ut tum rēs erant, as things were then; ut temporibus illis, for those times; ut erat furiosus, stark mad as he was.*

Vir ut inter Aetōlōs fācundus. LIV. *A man of eloquence for an Aetolian.*

Ut sunt hūmāna. nihil est perpetuum datum. PLAUT. *As the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.*

5. On *quam, quantus*, and the Superlative, see 311.

Notice in this connection *quam quī* with the Superlative:

Tam sum amicus reipublicae quam quī maximē (= est). CIC. *I am as devoted a friend to the State as he who is most (= as any man).*

II. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH *atque* (*ac*).

646. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take *atque* or *ac*:

Virtūs eadem in homine ac deō. CIC. *Virtue is the same in man as in god.*

Date operam nē similī fortūnā utāmur atque anteā ūsī sumus. TER. *Do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before.*

Dissimulatio est quum alia dicuntur ac sentiās. CIC. *Dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean).*

Similiter facis ac si mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculis, et nōn alterō. CIC. *You are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not with one.*

Nōn dixī secus (aliter) ac sentiēbam. CIC. *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.*

REMARKS.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis :

Aliter dixī atque [aliter] sentiēbam, *I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.*

So we find :

Timeo nē aliud crēdās atque aliud nūntiēs. TER. *I fear that you believe one thing and tell another.*

Et and -que are occasionally used in the same way.*

2. **Alius, aliter, secus,** seldom have **quam** : **nōn alius** and other negative combinations seldom have **atque**, commonly **quam** or **nisi**. (592, R. 2.)

Philosophia quid est aliud (= nihil est aliud) nisi dōnum deōrum? CIC. *Philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?*

Nōn aliter has either **quam** or **atque**.

III. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH **quam**.

647. Comparative Sentences with **quam** follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 643.

In Comparative Sentences **quam** takes the same case after it as before it :

Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria. LIV. (292, R. 1.)

Potius amicum quam dictum perdidī. QUINT. *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.*

Exīstimēs velim nēminem cuiquam cārīorem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi. CIC. (546, R. 3.)

REMARKS.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb **esse**, unless the oblique case be an Accusative :

Vicinus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est. CIC. (598.)

Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hominis doctiōris quam fuit Claudius. GELL. *These words are (the words) of Varro, a person of greater learning than Claudius (was).*

Ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem quam Phormiōnem TER. *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormio est).*

2. On **quam prō**, see **quam quī**, 313. On the double comparative, 314.

3. **Atque** for **quam** after a comparative is poetical.

4. When two clauses are compared by **potius**, *rather*, **prius**, *before*, **citius**, *quicker*, *sooner*, the second clause is put in the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive (512), with or without **ut**.

Dēpugnā potius quam serviās. CIC. (579 R.)

Vir bonus statuit intolerābili dōlōre lacerārī potius quam ut officium prōdat. CIC. *A good man resolves to let himself be torn by unsufferable anguish, rather than be untrue to his duty.*

* Still, -que in **atque** connects these clauses with the Relative, and the explanation of **atque** as **ad + que**, *in comparison with + how* (Ribbeck) is worthy of note.

Moritūrōs sē affirmābant citius quam in aliēnōs mōrēs verterentur. LIV. *They declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.*

If the leading clause is in the Infinitive, the dependent clause may be in the Infinitive likewise, and this is the more common construction when the Infinitive follows a verb of Will and Desire :

Haec patiēda cēnseo, potius quam trucidārī corpora vestra. LIV. *I think these things are to be endured, rather than that your bodies (= you) should be butchered.*

5. Instead of **tam—quam**, *as—so*, the Roman prefers the combinations **nōn minus quam—nōn magis quam** (by Litotēs).

1.) **Nōn minus quam** means *no less than = quite as much* :

Patria hominibus nōn minus cāra esse dēbet quam liberī. CIC. *Country ought to be no less dear to men than children (= quite as dear as).*

2.) **Nōn magis quam** means *quite as little, or quite as much* :

Animus nōn magis est sānus quam corpus. CIC. *The mind is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body.*

Or it might mean :

The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.

Fabius nōn in armīs praestantior fuit quam in togā. CIC. *Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).*

THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

648. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

649. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation: 424 and after.

Gerund and Gerundive: 426 and after.

Supine: 435 and after.

Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526 and after.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences: 638.

REMARK.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence, will be treated the Historical Infinitive and **Ōrātio Obliqua**: the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compendious Imperfect ; **Ōrātio Obliqua**, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of **Ōrātio Recta**.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

650. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the

subject in the Nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession:

[Verrēs] minitārī Diodōrō, vōciferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vīx tenēre. CIC. *Verrēs threatened Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

REMARKS.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of *coepit*, *began* (QUINT. ix. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction. There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in *Ōrātio Oblīqua*. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after *cum*, *ubi*, etc.:

Nōn multum erat prōgressa nāvis cum datō signō ruere tectum. TAC. *Not far (but a little way) had the ship advanced, when, at a signal given, the roof came down with a rush (began to tumble).*

ŌRĀTIO OBLĪQUA.

651. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called *Ōrātio Recta*, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or *Ōrātio Oblīqua*, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—1. Under the general head of *Ōrātio Oblīqua* are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 509.

2. *Inquam*, *quoth I*, is used in citing the *Ōrātio Recta*; *ājo*, *I say*, generally in *Ōrātio Oblīqua*. *Inquam* is always parenthetic; *ājo* may or may not be parenthetic. *Ōrātio Recta* may also be cited by a parenthetic “*ut ait*,” “*ut ājunt*,” *as he says*, *as they say*. When the subject of *inquit* is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

652. *Ōrātio Oblīqua* differs from *Ōrātio Recta*, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

REMARKS.—1. It must be remembered that *Ō. O.* is necessarily less accurate in its conception than *Ō. R.*, and hence it is not always possible to restore the *Ō. R.* from the *Ō. O.* with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker, may become unreal to the narrator from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to *Ō. Recta*.

2. *Ō. Oblīqua* often comes in without any formal notice.

Moods in Ōrātio Oblīqua.

653. In *Ōrātio Oblīqua* the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.

Oratio Recta : Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Oratio Obliqua : Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,
Ō. R. : bestiolae quaedam nāscuntur,
Ō. O. : bestiolās quāsdam nāscī,
Ō. R. : quae ūnum diem vīvunt,
Ō. O. : quae ūnum diem vīvant.

Ō. R.—*On the river Bog, says Aristotle,*

Ō. O.—*Aristotle says that, on the river Bog, } little creatures are born, that*

live (but) one day.

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :

Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs.

Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs.

Ō. R. *Socrates used to say : "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

Ō. O. *Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indicative, the Infinitive is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjunctive, as in the Ideal and Unreal conditions, special rules are necessary. (659.)

Otherwise, Subjunctive in **Ō. R.** continues to be Subjunctive in **Ō. O.**

654. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive according to 469 :

Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum : quid sibi vellet cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret. CAES. *Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people : what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibi vis?)*

Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclāmat; cūr sē fugiant? Thrasybulus cried out with a loud voice (asking), why they ran from him. (Ō. R., cūr mē fugitis?)

REMARKS.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (466) are transferred from the Indicative of the **Oratio Recta** to the Accusative and Infinitive of **Ō. O.** ; but seldom in the Second Person, which is commonly in the Subjunctive.

Ō. R. Num possum? *Can I?* [No.] **Ō. O.** Num posse? *Could he?*
Quid est turpius? *What is baser?* [Nothing.] **Quid esse turpius?** *What was baser?*

Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānīs itūrōs? LIV. *Whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō ibimus?)*

Cuī nōn appārere ab eō quī prior arma intulisset injūriam ortam esse? LIV. *To whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Cuī nōn appāret?)*

Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? LIV. *If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Si bonum dūcitis, quid prō noxiō damnāstis?)*

2. In Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions the Subjunctive is either retained, or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjunctive is always retained.

Quis sibi persuādēret sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ējusmodī consilium dēscendisse? CAES. *Who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)? (Quis sibi persuādeat?)*

The Infinitive form would be the Future: **quem sibi persuāsūrum?** (659) and is not to be distinguished from the Future Indicative.

655. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: the Negative is, of course, **nē**:

Redditur responsum : Nōndum tempus pugnae esse ; castrīs sē tenērent. LIV. *There was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp. (Ō. R. castrīs vōs tenēte.)*

Vercingetorix cohortātus est : nē perturbārentur incommodō. CAES. *Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster. (Ō. R. nōlite perturbārī.)*

REMARK.—**Ūt** can be used in the first sentence, according to 546 ; but only in the first.

Pŷthia respondit ut moenibus ligneīs sē mūnīrent. NEP. *The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

656. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

657. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

REMARK.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called **Repraesentātio**. In Conditional Sentences **Repraesentātio** often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence.

Point of View of the Reporter :

Lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit : sibi mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesari negōtiū esset. CAES. *To the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

Point of View of the Speaker :

Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum Caesar respondit : consuēsse deōs immortālēs,

quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. CAES. *To the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.* (A long passage may be found in LIV. xxviii. 32.)

Point of View shifted:

Ad haec Marius respondit: Sī quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant. SALL. *There to Marius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

658. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws of **Oratio Obliqua**.

Examples of Ō. O. in Object Clauses,	524.
Causal,	541.
Temporal,	562, 563, 564, 566, 570, 572, 576.
Relative,	630.

REMARKS.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Accusative and Infinitive (638).

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator. (630, R. 1.)

3. **Dum**, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocution (so also sometimes **cum**):

Dic, hospes, Spartaē nōs tē hīc vidisse jacentēs, dum sanctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur. CIC. *Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

659. *Conditional Sentences in Oratio Obliqua (Total and Partial).*

1. The Protasis follows the rule.

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with **futūrum fuisse ut . . .** 240, R. 2.

REMARK.—**Posse** needs no Future (245, R. 3), and **potuisse** no Periphrastic Perfect Infinitive, so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms*.—In the transfer of conditions to **O. O.**, the difference between many forms disappears. For instance:

- | | |
|--|---|
| I. Si id crēdis, errābis. }
Si id crēdēs, errābis. }
Si id crēdās, errēs. } | Dico tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse. |
| II. Si id crēdis, errābis. }
Si id crēdēs, errābis. }
Si id crēdās, errēs. }
Si id crēderēs, errārēs. } | Dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse. |
| III. Si id crēdideris, errābis. }
Si id crēdideris, errēs. }
Si id crēdideris, errāveris. }
Si id crēdidissēs, errārēs. } | Dixi tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse. |

REMARK.—In No. I the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.

In No. II. the ambiguity is avoided by *Repraesentatio* for the logical condition, and the use of the Periphrastic Perfect for the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the narrator, to whom both are Past.*

No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the Future:

Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse: si quid ille sē velit. illum ad sē venire oportere. CAES. *Ariovistus answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*

Ō. R. Si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnissem: si quid ille mē vult. illum ad mē venire oportet.

660. Logical Conditions in Ōratiō Obliqua:

1. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō jūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē a populō Rōmānō in suō jūre impediri. CAES. *To this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right.* (Ō. R. Si ego nōn praescribo, nōn oportet mē impediri.)

2. Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent? Sīn (593) noxium comperissent, quid alterum consulātum crēderent? LIV. *If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if on the other hand they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship?* (Ō. R. Si—dūcitis, quid damnāstis? sīn—comperistis, quid crēditis?)

3. Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā; si nihil esset (Ō. R., si nihil erit) dūrius, nullō periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs (Ō. R., perveniētis); si Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōnsentiret (Ō. R., si cōnsentit) ūnam esse (Ō. R., est) in celebritate positam salutem. CAES. *Titurius kept crying out that his resolution was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they*

* Cic. Fin. i. 2, 39; v. 31, 93. Weissenborn on Liv. xxxiv. 4.

would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.

4. Eum omnium labōrum finem fore exīstimabant sī hostem ab Hibērō interclūdere potuissent. CAES. *They thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.* (Ō. R., is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) sī hostem interclūdere potuerimus.)

5. [Hi] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant sī Micipsa rēx occidisset, fore utī sōlus imperiō Numidiāe potirētur. SALL. *These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurtha's heart by promising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia.* (Ō. R., sī Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperiō potiēris.)

6. Fidēs data est, sī Jugurtham vivum aut necātum sibi trādiderit fore ut illi senātus impūnitātem et sua omnia concēderet. SALL. *His word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate would grant him impunity, and all that was his.* (Ō. R., sī mihi trādideris, tibi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vōx est . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur. CIC. *Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (Ō. R., nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. Ariovistus respondit sī quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venīre oportēre. CAES. (659, R.)

9. [Ariovistus respondit] nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum; quodsī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōnobilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum factūrum. CAES. *Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people.* (Ō. R., Nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste habēbo . . . si tē interfēcero grātum fēcero (236, R. 2).)

10. Fertur Jugurtha dīxisse urbem vēnālem et mātūrē peritūram sī emptōrem invēnerit. SALL. (Perf. Subj.) *Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer.* (Ō. R., urbs peribit sī emptōrem invēnerit: Fut. Perf. Ind.)

REMARK.—Posse is used as has been stated. (659.)

Negārunt bellum dirimī posse nisi Messēniis Achaei Pylum redderent. LIV. *They said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians.* (Ō. R. Bellum dirimī nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Docent. sī turris concidisset. nōn posse militēs continēri quā spēs praedae in urbem irrupant. CAES. *They show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty.* (Ō. R. sī conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continēri.)

661. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātio Oblīqua :

1. Ait sē sī ūrātur "Quam hoc suāve" dictūrum. CIC. *He declares*

that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is." (Ō. R. *Sī ūrar, dicam*, same form as Logical.)

2. *Voluptātem sī ipsa prō sē loquātur concessūram arbitror Dignitātī.* CIC. *I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue.* (The context shows (Fin. III. 1) that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. *Sī loquātur, concēdat.* Comp. 598, R. 2.)

662. Unreal Conditions in Ōrātio Oblīqua :

1. *Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, sī Caesar adesset, ad castra [Rōmānōrum] ventūrōs [nōn] esse.* CAES. *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans.* (Ō. R., *sī Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venīrent.*) On the rareness of this form see 659, R.

2. *Appārēbat sī diūtius vixisset Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae illātūrōs fuisse.* LIV. *It was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.*

3. *Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī existimābant plēriq̄ue futūrū fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur.* CAES. *Had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (Ō. R., *nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum āmissum esset.*)

REMARK.—As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (246, R. 3), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic :

Nēmo mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantēs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūrōs fuisse) nisi animō cernerent (599, R. 1) *posteritātem ad sē pertinēre.* CIC. *No one will persuade me that (-o) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors, had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.*

Pompējum plēriq̄ue existimant sī ācrius insequī voluisset bellum eō diē potuisse finire. CAES. *Most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day.* Ō. R., *sī voluisset, potuit.* 599, R. 2.)

Namque illā multitudīne sī sāna mens esset (599, R. 1) *Graeciae, supplicium Persās dare potuisse.* NEP. *For with that number if Greece had had (= been in her sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due). (Ō. R. *Sī sāna mens esse Graeciae, supplicium Persae dare potuerunt.*)*

Pronouns in Orātio Oblīqua.

663. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down 520, and after.

2. The person addressed is *ille* or *is* :

[Ariovistus respondit] *nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste hābitūrū : quodsī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmānī grātū factūrū.* CAES. (667, R. 9.)

Of course this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. **Hic** and **iste** are commonly changed into **ille** or **is**, as **nunc** into **tum** and **tunc**.

Diodōrus respondit sē paucis illis diēbus argentum mīsisse **Lilybaeum**. **Cic.** (389, R. 4.)

4. **Nōs** is used when the narrator's party is referred to. **CAES.** B. G. I. 44.

664. *Specimens of the conversion of Ōrātio Oblīqua into Ōrātio Recta.*

Ōrātio Oblīqua.

1. *Arionivstus respondit :*

Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēsēs habere in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere jūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere consuērunt. Nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse decertāre; si pāce ūti velint, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit, Amicitiam populī Rōmāni sibi ornamento et praesidiō, non dētrimento esse oportere idque sē eā spē petisse. Si per populū Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditiciū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recusātūrum populī Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trāducat, id sē sui mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causa facere; ējus rei testimoniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit.

CAES. B. G. I., 44.

Ōrātio Recta.

Transiit Rhēnum nōn meā sponte sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliqui; sēsēs habeo in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capio jūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere consuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnerunt et contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, iterum parātus sum decertāre, si pāce ūti volunt, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hōc tempus pependerunt. Amicitiam populī Rōmāni mihi ornamento et praesidiō, nōn dētrimento esse oportet idque eā spē petii. Si per populū Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditiciū subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābo populī Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetii. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcam,* id mei mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facio; ējus rei testimoniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēni et quod bellum nōn intuli sed dēfendi.

*Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise trādūco.

Ōrātio Obliqua.

Ōrātio Recta.

2. *His Caesar ita respondit :*

Eō sibi minus dubitātōnis dari quod eās rēs quas lēgātī Helvetīi commemorassent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūjus injūriāe sibi conscius fuisset nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī vellet num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriā dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse injūriās admirārentur eōdem pertinēre. Consuesse enim deōs immortalēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōres interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs, ab iīs sibi dentur utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriis quas ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.

CAES. B. G. I., 14.

3. *Sulla regī patefecit :*

Quod polliceātur, senātum et populū Rōmānum, quoniam amplius armīs valuissent, nōn in grātiā habitūrōs; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur; id ideō in prōmptū esse, quoniam Jugurthae cōpiam habēret, quem sī Rōmānīs trādidisset, fore ut illi plūrimū dēbērētur; amicitiam, foedus, Numidiae partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultrō adventūram.

SALL. B. J. 111.

Hōc mihi minus dubitātōnis datur quod eās rēs quas vōs, lēgātī Helvetīi, commemorastis, memoriā teneo atque eō gravius fero quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī acciderunt; quī sī alicūjus injūriāe sibi conscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī volo, num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptastis quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriā dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū mē impūne tulisse injūriās admirāminī eōdem pertinent. Consueverunt enim dī immortalēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant,* quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, hīs secundiōres interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēminī, factūrōs intellegam et sī Aeduīs dē injūriis quas ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pācem faciam.

Quod pollicēris, senātus et populū Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātiā habebunt; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videātur; id ideō in prōmptū est, quoniam Jugurthae cōpiam habes, quem sī Rōmānīs trādideris tibi plūrimū dēbēbitur; amicitia, foedus, Numidiae pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultrō adveniet.

*Kraner's interpretation would require *dolent*.

Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Ōrātiō Recta.

4. *Athēniensēs dēplōrāvērunt vastātiōnem populātiōnemque miserābilem agrōrum.* Neque se id queri quod hostilia ab hoste passi forent; esse enim quaedam belli jūra quae ut facere ita pati sit fās. Sata exūrī, dirui tecta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patienti esse; vērū enim vērō id sē querī, quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocet, adeō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque jūra polluerit ut priōre populātiōne cum infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta esse in finibus suis, omnium nūdātōs mānēs, nullius ossa terrā tegī. Quālem terram Atticam fēcerit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem eum sī liceat Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem factūrum. Urbis quoque suae similem dēformitātem futūrum fuisse nisi Rōmānī subvērissent.

Nōn id querimur quod hostilia ab hoste passi sumus. Sunt enim quaedam belli jūra quae ut facere ita pati est fās. Sata exūrī, dirui tecta, praedās hominum pecorumque agī misera magis quam indigna patienti sunt; vērū enim vērō id querimur quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et barbarōs vocat, adeō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque jūra polluit ut priōre populātiōne cum infernīs diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta sunt in finibus nōstris, omnium nūdātī mānēs, nullius ossa terrā teguntur. Quālem terram Atticam fēcit, exornātam quondam opulentamque, tālem is, sī licēbit Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem faciet. Urbis quoque nōstrae similis deformitās fuisset, nisi Rōmānī subvērissent.

LIV. xxxi. 30.

INVOLVED ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

665. Ōrātiō Obliqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense, the term Ō. Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses, that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal second person :

Proprium hūmānī ingenī est ōdisse quem laeserīs. TAC. *It is peculiar to human nature to hate whom you have injured.* (But Ōdistī quem laesistī.)

The so-called attraction of mood by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

666. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive :

Recordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beatē vixisse videar quia cum Scipione vixerim. CIC. *I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio.*

Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam. CIC. *I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere volo, augeo).*

Corporis viribus utāre dum adsint, cum absint nē requirās. CIC. (264.)

Quārē fiēbat ut omnium oculos quotiēscumque in publicum prōdisset ad sē converteret. NEP. *Whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all, every time he went out in public (quotiēscumque prōdierat convertēbat).*

Nēscire quid antequam nātus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. CIC. *Not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.*

Fraus fidem in parvis sibi praestruit ut cum operae pretium sit, cum magnā mercēde fallat. CIC. *Fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating.*

Rēte texunt [arāneolae] ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant. CIC. *Spiders weave a web to kill anything that gets caught in it (si quid inhaesit conficiunt, 569).*

Abeuntī si quid poposcerit concēdere mōris. TAC. *To the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (Si quid poposcit concēdunt).*

REMARKS.—1. From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form (Partial Obliquity). Examples, see 565, R.

2. Dum not unfrequently resists the Attractive both in prose and poetry :

Tantum nē noceās dum vis prōdesse vidētō. Ov. (548.)

PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

667. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as *Time* and *Circumstance*, *Cause* and *Occasion*, *Condition* and *Concession*. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coordinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coördinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (409, R. 2.):

Manlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit. LIV. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).*

Miltiadēs capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est. NEP. *Miltiades* (though) *acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in* (a sum of) *money* (was acquitted, but mulcted).

2. A common translation of the Participle is an Abstract Noun : See 324, R 3 :

Terra mūtāta nōn mūtāt mōrēs. LIV. *The change of land changeth not the character.*

Teucer Ulixēn reum facit Ājācis occīsī. QUINT. *Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.*

On the Participle after Verbs of Perception and Representation, see 524, R. 1 and 536.

668. Participles may represent Time when :

Alexander moriens ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae. NEP. *Alexander* (when he was) *dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat. CIC. *Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

Ablative Absolute :

Solōn et Pisistratus Serviō Tullio regnante viguerunt. CIC. *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king* (in the reign of Servius Tullius).

Sōle ortō Volscī sē circumvallātōs vidērunt. LIV. *When the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

REMARK.—On the Ablative Absolute of the Simple Participle, see 438, R. 1.

669. Participles may represent Cause Why :

Arēopagitae damnāverunt puerum coturnicum oculos ēruentem. QUINT. *The court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy because he plucked out* (for plucking out) *the eyes of quails.*

Athēniensēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persārum capere nōluisse Cymēn arguēbant. NEP. *The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.*

Ablative Absolute :

Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā. LIV. *The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARK.—An apparent cause is given by *ut* as *velut, as, for instance, tanquam* (so) *as, quasi, as if,* see 604, R. 2.

670. Participles may represent Condition and Concession :

Sī latet ars prōdest, affert dēprenta pudōrem. OV. (594, 2.)

Rīsus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeā-
mus. CIC. (611.)

Miltiadēs capitīs absolūtus pecūniā multātus est. NEP. (667, R.)

Ablative Absolute :

Maximās virtūtes jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante.
CIC. (594, 2.)

REMARK.—Later writers combine with the Participle **etsi, quanquam, quamvis**, see 611, R.

671. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (640) :

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidī sunt. CIC.

Pisistratus Homērī librōs confūsōs antea sic disposuisse dicitur ut
nunc habēmus. CIC.

REMARK.—*So called, quī dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem antea, supra diximus.*

672. *Future Participle (Active).*—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum, I am**, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin, it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

673. In later Latin, the Future Participle (Active) is used to represent subordinate relations :

1. Time When :

Tiberius trājectūrus (cum trājectūrus esset) Rhēnum commeātum nōn
transmisit. SUET. *When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why :

Dērīdiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum infāmiā ūsūrus.
TAC. *A butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.*

Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tanquam nōn transitūris in
Asiam Rōmānis. (604, R. 2.)

3. Purpose :

Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia. TAC. (543
R. 2.)

REMARK.—The Present Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference :

Lēgātī vērunt nūntiantēs Asiae quoque civitātēs sollicitārī. LIV. *Envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia (Minor) also were tampered with.*

4. Condition and Concession :

1.) Protasis.

Dēditūrīs sē Hannibalī fuisse accersendum Rōmānōrum praesidium? LIV. *If they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison? (= Sī dēditūrī fuissent, Ō. R. sī dēditūrī fuērunt.)*

2.) Apodosis.

Quatiant arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur. TAC. *They clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.*

Librum mīsi exigentī tibi, missūrus etsī nōn exēgissēs. PLIN. EP. *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

674. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

675. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm.

1. *Emphasis* is produced
 1. By reversing the ordinary position.
 2. By approximation of similars or opposites.
 3. By separation.

In all sentences beginning and end are emphatic points. In long sentences the means as well as the extremes are the points of emphasis.

2. *Rhythm*.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the dactyl and spondee, or close of an hexameter at the end of a period.

676. RULE I.—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
2. The Modifiers of the Predicate.
3. The Predicate Proper or Verb.

1. **Dēmocritus tyrannus**, 2. **Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs**,
3. **docēbat**. CIC. (668.)

Rhetorical positions :

Potentēs sequitur invidia. QUINT. (479.)

Nōbis nōn satisfacit ipse Dēmostenēs. CIC. (556. R. 1.)

Dēscriptus erat populus Romanus censū, ordinibus, aetātibus. CIC.

Intrā moenia sunt hostēs. SALL.

REMARK.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The following arrangement is common :

1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means.
2. Indirect Object.
3. Direct Object.
4. Adverb.
5. Verb.

677. RULE II.—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative :

Quis eum diligat quem metuat? CIC. (637.)

Postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs poposcit. CAES. (563.)

Sī spīritum dūcit vivit. CIC. (597.)

Quī timēre dēsierint ōdisse incipient. TAC. (569.)

Rhetorical position :

Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. CIC. (597.)

Dē futūrīs rēbus etsī semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum conjectūrā possis accēdere. CIC. (606.)

Cato mīrārī sē ajēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cum vīdisset. CIC. (569.)

678. RULE III.—An Adjective or dependent Genitive follows the word to which it belongs :

Torquātus filium suum necārī jussit. SALL. (540.)

Sensum oculōrum praecipit animus. QUINT. (540.)

Rhetorical positions :

Hannibalem suī civēs ē civitāte ējēcērunt. CIC. (295, R. 1.)

Īsocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus darī. QUINT.

Ager, cum multōs annōs requiēvit, ūberiorēs efferre frūgēs solet. CIC. (567.)

Vereor nē parum hīc liber mellis et absinthī multum habēre videātur. QUINT. (552.)

REMARKS.—1. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: So titles, proper names, and the like: see 284 :

Facinus est vincīrī civem Rōmānum. CIC. (535.)

2. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede :

Vereor nē hic liber absinthii multum habere videatur. QUINT. (351.)

Rhetorical position :

Recordare tempus illud, cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō. CIC. (532.)

3. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added :

Catōnem vidī in bibliothecā sedentem multis circumfūsum Stōicōrum libris.

CIC. (536.)

Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipublicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit. CIC. (579.)

At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam. CIC. (490.)

Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīnem. NEP. (343.)

679. RULE IV.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends a sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb :

Zēnōnem cum Athēnis essem audiēbam frequenter . . . CIC. (586.)

Nēmo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latīnē loqueretur. CIC. (542.)

Vix cuiquam persuādēbatur Graeciā omnī cessūrōs Rōmānōs. LIV. (546, R. 2.)

Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeamus. CIC. (611.)

Rhetorical positions :

īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae. CIC. (441.)

Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipublicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit. CIC. (579.)

REMARKS.—1. **Ferē, paene, prope,** usually follow :

Nēmo ferē saltat sōbrius nisi forte insānit. CIC. (591, R. 4.)

2. Negatives always precede, see 447.

680. RULE V.—Prepositions regularly precede their case. (414.)

Ā rectā conscienciā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. CIC. (332.)

REMARKS.—1. On **versus, tenus** and the regular postposition of **cum** in combination with the Personal Pronouns and the Relative, see 414, R. 1.

2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the Adjective and Substantive :

Magna cum cūrā (401).

Less frequently between the Genitive and Substantive ; except when the relative is employed.

3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophé), especially after a relative or demonstrative : most frequently **contrā, inter, propter.** So also adverbs.

4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Genitive or an Adverb.

Ad Appii Claudii senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. CIC. (558.)

5. Monosyllabic prepositions such as **cum, ex, dē, post,** sometimes append the en-

clitics *-que*. *-ve*. *-ne*, as *ex que iis*, and *from them*. Usually, however, the enclitics join the dependent substantive: *in patriamque rediit*, and *returned to his country*.

On the position of *per*, see 415, R.

681. RULE VI.—Particles vary :

Enim commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; **nam** and **namque** are regularly prepositive.

Ergō in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; **igitur** is commonly second or third; **itaque** regularly first.

Tamen is first, but may follow an emphatic word.

Etiam usually precedes, **quoque** always follows.

Quidem and **dēmum** (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

682. RULE VII.—A word that belongs to more than one word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (287) :

Ariovistus respondit multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populū Rōmānī grātum factūrum. CAES. (670, R. 9.)

Isocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari. QUINT. (542, R.)

Longum est mūlōrum persequi ūtilitātēs et asinōrum. CIC. (246, R.)

683. RULE VIII.—Words of kindred or opposite meaning are often put side by side for the sake of complement or contrast :

Manus manum lavat, One hand washes the other.

Cato mirārī sē ājēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspicem cur vīdisset. CIC. (569.)

Ēmit morte immortālītatem. QUINT. (404.)

684. RULE IX.—*Contrasted Pairs*.—When pairs are contrasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but often in inverse order. This inverse order is called *Chiasmus*, or *crosswise position*, and gives alternate stress. The principle is of wide application.

Same order :

Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem. LIV. (557.)

Mālo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stultī cīvēs laudent. LIV. (54 R. 2.)

* From the Greek letter *X*.

1. Foris *X* 2. arma.
2. consilium 1. domī.

Inverse order (Chiasmus) :

Ante vidēmus (1) **fulgurātiōnem** (2) **quam sonum** (2) **audiāmus** (1).
SEN. (579.)

Parvī sunt foris (1) **arma** (2) **nisi est consilium** (2) **domī** (1). CIC. (412,
R. 1.)

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

685. A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

686. Latin periods may be divided into two classes :

1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.

2. Intercalary or Enthetic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

687. Care must be taken—

1. To vary the clauses, so as to prevent too great uniformity of rhythm.

2. To observe a certain proportion in the length of the clauses.

The following passages may be cited as specimens of long periods :

Ut saepe hominēs aegrī morbō gravī, cum aestū febrīque jactantur, si aquam gelidam bibērunt, primō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflictantur: sic hīc morbus, quī est in rēpublicā, relevātus istius paenā, vehementius, vivīs reliquis, ingravescet. CIC. (Apodotic.)

Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiaē partis Eburōnum, quī tūc cum Ambiorige consilium inerat, aetate jam confectus, cum labōrem aut bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus detestātus Ambiorigem, quī ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxō, cūjus magna in Galliā Germaniāque cōpia est, se exanimāvit. CAES. (Enthetic.)

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (195, R. 1), the copula of the predicate (200), the verb of the adverb.

Unde domō ? 411, R. 2.

REMARK.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

689. Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima (= es) vellem. OΥ. (316.)

690. Zeugma (*yoking*) is a junction of two governing words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

Manūs ac supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendens. TAC. *Stretching out hands and (uttering) suppliant cries to Tiberius.*

691. Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian **Quōs ego.**

692. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

693. Hyperbaton, or Trajection, is a violent displacement of words.

Lȳdia dīc per omnēs tē deōs ōrō. HOR. (415, R.)

694. Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

695. Hendiadys (*ἐν διᾱ δυοῖν*) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive :

Vulgus et multitūdo, *the common herd.*

Via et ratio, *scientific method.*

Vi et armīs, *by force of arms.*

REMARK.—This figure is much abused by commentators.

696. Constructio Praegnans. So-called **constructio praegnans** is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

Exitium irrītat. TAC. *He provokes destruction.* (**Ad exitium irrītat.**)

697. On Lītotēs, see 448, R. 2.

PROSODY.

698. PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification.

REMARK.—Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classic Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

QUANTITY.

699. RULE I.—A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: *ō, vae, lēgēs, saevae.*

REMARK.—Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long. This is due sometimes to the broad sound of the *j* itself, sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation (*Gājus* for *Gāius*, *pējero* for *perjero*). *J* does not make position in the compounds of *jugum, yoke; bījugus, two-horse.*

700. RULE II.—A syllable is said to be long *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: *a rs, c o llum, d i sco, c a stra.*

REMARKS.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words: *per m are, in t erris*; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short: *praemiā scribae.*

2. The natural length of a vowel before two consonants is often hard, often impossible, to determine. Every vowel before *nf* and *ns* seems to have had a long sound. Other points are too much disputed to be introduced into an elementary treatise. With the clear and full pronunciation of the vowels, the difference between length by nature and length by position was probably not so great as might be supposed.

701. RULE III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by *l* or *r*, is common: *tenē-brae.*

REMARKS.—1. The syllable must *end* in a short vowel: *nāvī-fragus*, *mellī-fluus*; but *ā b-rumpo*, *ō b-liviscor*.

2. In Greek words, *m* and *n* are included under this rule: *Tē-cmēssa*, *Cŷ-cnus*.

702. RULE IV.—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: *saevus*, *conclūdo* (from *claudio*), *iniquus* (from *aequus*), *cōgo* (from *coigo* = *con* + *ago*).

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is shortened before a vowel; *praeustus*.

703. RULE V.—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or *h*, makes a short syllable: *dēus*, *God*; *pūer*, *boy*; *nihil*, *nothing*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: *aurāi*.

2. *e* in *-eī* of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: *diēi*, but *fidēi*.

3. *a* and *e* before *i* in proper names in *-jus*: *Gāi*, *Pompēi*.

4. *i* in the Genitive form *-ius*. *Alterius* is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: *ūnīus*, *ullius*, *nullius*, *tōtīus*, are found in poetry. In *alius* the *i* is never shortened (*alius* for *alius*).

5. *i* in *fio* (for *fuio*) is long, except before *r*: *fio*, but *feret*.

6. *ēheu*, *Dīāna*, *ōhē*, *dīus* (= *dīvus*).

7. Many Greek words: *āēr*, *Menelāus*, *mūsēum*, *Mēdēa*.

QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

A. POLYSYLLABLES.

704. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable, final *a*, *e*, and *y* are *short*; *i*, *o*, and *u* are *long*.

1. *a* is short: *terrā*, *earth*; *dōnā*, *gifts*; *capitā*, *heads*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Ablative of the First Declension: *terrā*.

2. Vocative of words in *ās* (*Aenēā*), and Greek Nominative in α long (*Ēlectrā*).

3. Imperative of First Conjugation: *amā*.

4. Most uninflected words: *trīgintā*, *juxtā*; but *itā* *quiā*, *ējā*, *putā* (for *instance*).

2. **e** is short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Ablative of the Fifth Declension: **diē**.

2. Imperative of Second Conjugation: **monē** (but **cavē** and occasionally other Iambic Imperatives).

3. Most adverbs of Second Declension: **rectē** (but **beně, malě, inferně, superně, saepě**).

4. Greek words in **e** long (η): **Tempē, melē**.

3. **y** is always short, except in contracted forms: **misŷ** (Dative **misŷ = misyi**).

4. **i** is long: **dominī, vīgintī, audī**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Greek Dative **sī**: **Trōasī**.

2. Greek Nominatives, **sināpī** Vocatives, **Parī**; Datives Sing. (rarely) **Mīnōidī**.

3. **quasī, nisī, cūī** (when a dissyllable).

4. **i** is common in **mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī**.

Observe the compounds: **ibīdem, ibīque, ubīque, ubīnam, ubīvīs, ubīcunque, nēcubī**; (**utī, but**) **utīnam, utīque, sīcutī**.

5. **o** is long: **bonō, tūtō**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Common in Nominatives of proper names, and occasionally in common nouns: **Scīpiō, virgō**.

2. Common in verbal forms, but more rarely outside of the Present Tense or in verbs with long penults: **sciō, putō, volō; estō, crēdō**. The short pronunciation extended sometimes even to the Gerund: **amandō**.

3. **o** is short in **modō, citō, duō, octō, egō, illicō, immō**, and in many other words (in later poetry).

6. **u** is always long: **cornū, fructū, auditū**.

705. RULE VII.—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than **s** are short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. **ālēc, liēn**, and many Greek nouns.

2. The adverbs and oblique cases of **illic, illūc, istīc, istūc**, can hardly be considered exceptions, as **-c** is for **-ce**, and is merely enclitic.

3. Compounds of **pār**: **dispār, impar**.

4. **iit, petiit**, and their compounds.

706. RULE VIII.—Of final syllables in **s**: **as, es, os**, are long; **is, us, ys**, short.

1. *as* is long : **Aenēās, servās, amās.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Greek nouns in *ās, ādis* : **Arcās, Arcādis.**

2. Greek Accusative Plural, Third Declension : **hērōās, Arcadās.**

3. **anās, anātis.**

2. *es* is long : **rēgēs, diēs, monēs.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Nominative Singular Third Declension, when the Genitive has *ētis, itis, idis* : **segēs, milēs, obsēs** ; but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.**

2. Compounds of *ēs, be* : **adēs, potēs.**

3. **penēs** (Preposition).

4. Greek words in *ēs (ες)* : Nominative Plural, **Arcadēs** ; Vocative, **Dēmostenēs** ; Neuter, **cacoēthēs.**

3. *os* is long : **deōs, nepōs.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1. **Compōs, impōs, exōs.**

2. Greek words in *ōs (ος)* : **melōs.**

4. *is* is short : **canīs, legīs.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plural . **terrīs, bonīs.**

2. Accusative Plural of the Third Declension : **omnīs = omnēs.**

3. In the Nominative of sundry words, increasing long in the Genitive : **Quirīs, Quirītis.**

4. Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active, Fourth Conjugation : **audīs.**

5. In the verbal forms from **vīs, sīs, fīs, and velīs** : **nō-līs, mā-līs, ad-sīs, cale-fīs.**

6. In the Second Person Singular Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive, **is** is common ; **viderīs.**

5. *us* is short : **servūs, currūs.**

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Gen. Sin., Nom. and Acc. Plural, Fourth Declension : **currūs.**

2. Nominative Third Declension, when the Genitive has a long *u* : **virtūs, virtūtis** ; **incūs, incūdis** ; **tellūs, tellūris.**

3. In Greek words with *u* long (*ους*) : **tripūs, Sapphūs** ; but **Oedipūs** and **polypūs.**

6. *ys* is short : **chlam^yys.**

B. MONOSYLLABLES.

707. RULE IX.—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long : *ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, sī, ō, dō, tū*.

Except the enclitics : *-quě, -vě, -ně, -cě, -tě, -psě, -ptě*.

708. RULE X.—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given : *dās, flēs, scīs, dāt, flēt, is, id, quīs, hīs, quīs, quōs*.

hic and *hoc* (Nominative and Accusative) are sometimes short ; *dīc* and *dūc* have the quantity of their verbs ; *es, be*, is short.

709. RULE XI.—Monosyllabic Nominatives of Substantives and Adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short : *ōs, mōs, vēr, sōl, fūr, plūs ; lār (lāris), pēs (pēdis), bōs (bōvis), pār (pāris)*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*vir* and *lac, os (ossis), mel ;*
Also *cor, vas (vadis), fel*.

710. RULE XII.—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short : *ān, cīs, in, nēc, pēr, tēr*.

Excepting *ēn* and *nōn* and *quīn ;*
And also *crās* and *cūr* and *sīn ;*
Also the Adverbs in *c* : *hīc, hūc, hāc, sic*.

QUANTITY OF STEM-SYLLABLES.

711. RULE XIII.—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short *by authority*).

REMARKS.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb, (153, 2.)

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables, which spring from the same radical, can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here.

pāciscor,	pāx, pācis.	sēdeo,	sēdēs.
mācer,	mācero.	fidēs,	fido (feido).
lēgo,	lēx, lēgis.	dux, dūcis,	dūco (douco).
rēgo,	rēx, rēgis.	vōco,	vōx.
tēgo,	tēgula.	lūcerna,	lūceo (louceo).
ācer,	ācerbus.	suspīcor,	suspīcio.
mōlēs,	mōlestus.	mōveo,	mōbilis (= movbilis).

QUANTITY IN COMPOUNDS.

712. RULE XIV.—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdo), ante-cēdo, dē-cēdo, prō-cēdo, (caedo), occīdo (cādo), occīdo.

REMARKS.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, *dī*, *sē*, and *vē*, are long, *rē*, short: *didūco*, *sēdūco*, *vēcors*, *rēdūco*. EXCEPTIONS: *di* in *dīsertus* is short; in *dirimo* *dīr* stands for *dis*.

2. *Nē* is short, except in *nēdum*, *nēmo* (*ne-hemo*), *nēquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēve*, *nēcubi*, *nēcunde*.

3. *Rē* is sometimes lengthened; the following letter is then doubled in many texts: *rel(l)igio*, *rel(l)iquiae*, *rep(p)erit*, *re(t)tulit*; compare *reddo*. *Re* is for *red*, but, except in perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, there is no compensation.

4. *Prō* is shortened in many words, especially before *f*: *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfārī*, *prōfānus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōnepōs*. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words *pro* (*πρό*) is generally short: *prōphēta*.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened: *dējēro*, (from *jūro*), *cognītus*, *agnītus* (from *nōtus*). Notice the quantity in the compounds of *-dicus*: *fātīdīcus*, *vēridīcus* (*dīco*), and *innūba*, *prōnūba* (*nūbo*).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

713. Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic licence.

714. *Hiatus* and *Elision*.—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

In poetry, when one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or *h*, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation.

O felix un^a ant^e alias Priameia virgo.—VERG.

In like manner *m* final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or *h* (*Ecthlipsis*).

Monstr^u(um), horrend^u(um), inform^e ingens cui lumen ademptum.—VERG.

EXCEPTIONS.—After a vowel or *m* final, the word *est*, *is*, drops its *e* and joins its preceding syllable.

Si rixa s t ubi tu pulsas ego vapulo tantum.—JUV.

Aeternas quoniam paenas in morte timendum s t.—LUCR.

REMARKS.—1. The Hiatus is sometimes allowed : *a*, in the Arsis, chiefly when the first vowel is long; *b*, in the Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened; *c*, before a period.

a. Stant et juniperi (*h*) et castaneae (*h*) hirsutae. VERG.

b. Credimus? an qui (*h*) amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt? VERG.

c. Promissam eripui genero. (*h*) Arma impia sumpsit. VERG.

2. Monosyllabic interjections are not elided.

3. On the elision of *e* in *-ne*? see 456, R. 2.

715. *Diastolé*.—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Arsis. This is called *Diastolé*.

Hostis est uxōr invita quae ad virum nuptum datur.—PLAUT.

Dummodō morata recte veniat dotatast satis.—PLAUT.

Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consulit exta.—VERG.

Perrupit Acheronta Hercules labor.—HOR.

Sometimes, however, *Diastolé* arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

Nec quas Priamides in aquosis vallibus Idae.—OV.

Desine plura puēr—et quod nunc instat agamus.—VERG.

REMARKS.—1. Scholars are not agreed on all these points.

2. Notice especially *-quē*:

Sideraquē ventique nocent avidaeque volucres. OV.

716. *Systolé*.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (*Systolé*).

Obstupi stetēruntque comae vox faucibus haesit.—VERG.

E terra magn(um) alterius spectare laborem.—LUCR.

Unius ad certam formam primordia rerum.—LUCR.

Nullus addictus jurare in verba magistri.—HOR.

REMARKS.—1. Many regard the short penult of the Perf. in *stetērunt, dedērunt*, as original (DEDRO in inscriptions).

2. In earlier poetry (*e. g.* Plautus), many syllables otherwise long by position are shortened: So *ille*, and its forms *iste*, more rarely *ipse*. Also *inde, ūnde*, and others.

717. *Hardening*.—The vowels *i* and *u* assert their half-consonant nature (*Hardening*): *ābjētē, (ābīētē), gēnvā (gēnūā), tēnvīā (tēnūā)*.

Flū vjorū rex Eridanus camposque per omnes.—VERG.

Nam quae tēnvīa sunt hiscendist nulla potestas.—LUCR.

718. *Dialysis*.—The consonants *j* and *v* assert their half-vowel nature (*Diálysis*): *dissōlūo (dissolvo), Gāiūs (Gājus, from Gāvius)*.

Adulteretur et columba miluo.—HOR.

719. *Syncopé*.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose (*Syncopé*): *calfacio* for *calefacio*.

Templorum positor templorum sancte repostor.—OV.

Quiddam magnum addens unum me surpite (= surripite) morti.—HOR.

720. *Tmēsis*.—Compound words are separated into their parts (*Tmēsis*).

Quo me cunque rapit tempestas deferor hospes.—HOR.

REMARK.—The earlier poets carry *Tmēsis* much further in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is:—

Saxo cere comminuit brum. ENNIUS.

721. *Synizēsis*.—Vowels are connected by a slur (*Synizēsis*), as often in the living language: *dēinde, dêinceps*.

Quid faciam roger anne rogem? quid dêinde rogabo?—OV

So even when *h* intervenes, as *dehinc*:

Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc talia fatur. VERG.

REMARK.—Synizēsis (*settling together*) is also called Synaerēsis (*taking together*), as opposed to Diaeresis (5); but Synaeresis properly means *contraction*, as in *oōgo* (for *coigo*), and *nōmo* (for *nehemo*). Synaloepha is a general term embracing all methods of avoiding Hiatus.

722. *Peculiarities of S.*—In the older poetry, final *s*, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant.

Īn somnīs vidīt priu(s) quām sam (= eam) dīscere cōepit.—ENNIUS.
Often in LUCRETIVS.

REMARK.—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in *s* blends with *est*, and sometimes with *es*: *opust* (= *opus est*); *simili's* (= *similis es*).

VERSIFICATION.

723. *Rhythm.*—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*). The accented part is called the *Arsis*; the unaccented, the *Thesis*. The Rhythmical Accent is called the *Ictus* (*blow, beat*).


REMARK.—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

724. *Metre.*—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in *Metre* (*Measure*). A *Metre* is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

725. *Unit of Measure.*—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable: *Mora, Tempus* (*Time*), ∪.

The value in music is  = $\frac{1}{4}$.

The long — is the double of the short.

The value in music is  = $\frac{1}{2}$.

REMARK.—Any quantity that cannot be measured by the standard unit is called irrational.

726. *Resolution and Contraction.*—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, ∪∪ . Contraction, — — .

727. *Feet.*—As elements of musical strains, *Metres* are called *Bars*.



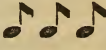
As elements of verses, Metres are called Feet.

As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus | .




REMARK.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

728. *Names of the Feet.*—The feet in use are the following :




F E E T O F T H R E E T I M E S .

Trochee,	— ∪	lēgīt.	
Iambus,	∪ —	lēgūnt.	
Tribrach,	∪ ∪ ∪	lēgītē.	


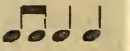



F E E T O F F O U R T I M E S .

Dactyl,	— ∪ ∪	lēgīmūs.	
Anapaest,	∪ ∪ —	lēgērēnt.	
Spondee,	— —	lēgī.	

F E E T O F F I V E T I M E S .

Cretic,	— ∪ —	lēgērīnt.	
First Paeōn,	— ∪ ∪ ∪	lēgērītīs.	
Fourth Paeōn,	∪ ∪ ∪ —	lēgīmīnī.	
Bacchīus,	∪ — —	lēgēbānt.	
Antibacchīus,	— — ∪	lēgīstīs.	

F E E T O F S I X T I M E S .

Iōnicus ā mājōrī,	— — ∪ ∪	cōllēgīmūs.	
Iōnicus ā minōrī,	∪ ∪ — —	rēlēgēbānt.	
Choriambus,	— ∪ ∪ —	cōllīgērēnt.	
Ditrochee,	— ∪ — ∪	cōllīgūntūr.	
Diiambus,	∪ — ∪ —	lēgāmīnī.	

REMARK.—Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as:

Pyrrhic,	∪ ∪	lĕgĭt.	Antispast,	∪ — — ∪	lĕgĕbāris.
First Epitrite,	∪ — — —	rĕlĕgĕrŭnt.	Dispondeē,	— — — —	sĕlĕgĕrŭnt.
Second Epitrite,	— ∪ — —	ĕlĕgĕbānt.	Second Paeōn,	∪ — ∪ ∪	lĕgĕntĭbŭs.
Third Epitrite,	— ∪ — —	sĕlĕgĕrĭnt.	Third Paeōn,	∪ ∪ — ∪	lĕgĭtōtĕ.
Fourth Epitrite,	— — — ∪	cōllĕgĭstĭs.	Molossus,	— — —	lĕgĕrŭnt.

729. *Ascending and Descending Rhythms.*—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Arsis follows, the Rhythm is called *ascending*; if it precedes, *descending*. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

Ascending rhythms may become descending by Anacrŭsis.

When the Thesis precedes the Arsis, it is cut off and called an Anacrŭsis (*upward stroke, signal-beat*). So the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Iōnicus a minōri as an Anacrustic Iōnicus ā mājōri. The sign of the Anacrŭsis is:.

730. *Names of Rhythms.*—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

731. *Classes of Rhythms.*—In Latin, the musical element of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Arsis to Thesis.

I. *Equal Class*, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (*γένος ἴσον*). This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.

II. *Unequal Class*, in which the Arsis is double of the Thesis (*γένος διπλάσιον*).

This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.

III. *Quinquepartite or Paeonian Class* (*Five-eighths class*), of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (*γένος ἡμιόλιον*).

732. *Rhythmical Series.*—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Monopody	=	one foot.	Tetrapody	=	four feet.
Dipody	=	two feet.	Pentapody	=	five feet.
Tripody	=	three feet.	Hexapody	=	six feet.

REMARKS.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. There are limits to the extension of series.

In Latin, four feet is the limit of the Dactylic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

733. *Equality of the Feet.*—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

1. Syllaba Anceps.
2. Catalēxis.
3. Protraction.
4. Correption.

734. *Syllaba Anceps.*—The final syllable of a series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

735. *Catalēxis and Pause.*—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic *in syllabam*, *in dissyllabum*, *in trissyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

⋄ ⋄ ⋄ | ⋄ ⋄ ⋄ | ⋄ *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in syllabam.*

⋄ ⋄ ⋄ | ⋄ ⋄ ⋄ | ⋄ ⋄ *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in dissyllabum.*

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked


“ “ two morae “ \wedge
 $\overline{\wedge}$


736. *Protraction and Syncopé.*—Protraction ($\tau\omicron\nu\eta$) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more theses, which omission is called Syncopé.

⋄ = 3 = \downarrow . ⋄ = 4 = \downarrow

737. *Correption.*—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

So ω = two short syllables with the value of one.

So the ordinary (heavy) dactyl is $- \cup \cup = 4$ 

The light (irrational) dactyl is $\sim \cup = 3 (1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1)$ 

REMARK.—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Trochaic and Iambic verses, and in Anacrusis. The irrational long is marked $>$.

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned :

$-> \overset{a}{|} \quad \overset{b}{\sim \cup} \quad \overset{c}{|} \parallel \quad \overset{b}{\sim \cup} \quad \overset{c}{|} \parallel \quad \overset{b}{\sim \cup} \quad | - \cup \quad | \overset{a}{-} \overset{e}{\wedge}.$

Nullam | Vare sa- | cra || vite pri- | us || severis | arbo | -rem. HOR.

a. Irrational trochee. *b.* Light dactyl. *c.* Syncopé and Protraction. *d.* Syllaba anceps. *e.* Catalëxis.

738. *Verse*.—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series.

A Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked—

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them.
2. By the *Syllaba Anceps*, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, *i. e.*, the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one.

REMARK.—Occasionally, one verse is run into another by Elision. This is called *Synaphëa* (*συνάφεια*). It is a violation of the fundamental law, and is not to be imitated. VERG. *Aen.* i., 332-3, 448-9; ii., 745-6.

739. *Methods of Combining Verses*.—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups. So the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Trimeter (Linear Composition). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrastichs). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

740. *Union of Language with Rhythm*.—When embodied in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already

in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

741. *Conflict of Ictus and Accent.*—In earlier Latin poetry, the coincidence and conflict of Ictus and Accent are regulated by subtle laws, the exposition of which would require too much space. In ordinary Latin verse, Ictus overrides Accent, at least according to modern pronunciation.

742. *Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.*—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

REMARKS.—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great caesura falls *before* the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first arsis of the second half.

“ ◡ ◡ | † — | † † — | ” — | † ◡ ◡ | † —

Una salus victis † nullam sperare salutem. VERG.

It does not occur *at* the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

743. *Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.*—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on an arsis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on a thesis, a Feminine Caesura.

Una sa | ^alus † vi | ^bctis † nul | ^clam † spe | ^drare † sa | lutem.

a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; *d,* a Feminine Caesura.

744. *Diaeresis.*—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked thus: ||.

Ite domum saturae † venit || Hesperus || ite capellae.—VERG.

REMARK.—Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anacrustically.

Suis † et i | psa † Ro | ma vi | ribus || ruit. Iambic Trimeter.

Su : is et || ipsa || Roma || viri | bus † ru | it. Troch. Trimeter, Catal., with Anacrusis.

745. *Recitation*.—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesurae lends vigor to the verse.

REMARK.—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,
 Unasa, lusvic, tislul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

746. The Trochaic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented—

By the Trochee : $\text{—} \cup$;

By the Tribrach : $\text{—} \cup \cup$; and, at the end of a series,

By the Spondee : $\text{—} \text{—}$, or rather the irrational Trochee, $\text{—} >$.

REMARKS.—1. Anapaests are rare. Dactyls are used only in proper names. Both are of course irrational. In the earlier poets, however, the treatment of the Trochaic verse is very free.

2. Trochaic-meters, being compounded of dipodies (*ditrochaei*), have $\frac{3}{8}$ instead of $\frac{3}{4}$ time (729). The second trochee of each dipody (-meter) may be irrational on the principle of *syllaba anceps*. Hence the rule:

747. Trochaic-meters admit the substitution of a long for the short of the even places.

1. *Trochaic Tripody (Ithyphallic)*.

Bássareu bicornis.—ATIL. FORT.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

2. *Trochaic Tetrapody (Catalectic)*.

Aúla divitem manet.—HOR.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$

3. *Trochaic Dimeter. a. Acatalectic ; b. Catalectic.*

a. **Víve laetus quisque vivis.**

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

b. **Vita parvom múnus est.**—ANTHOL. LAT.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \wedge$

4. *Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (Alcaic)*.

Si fráctus illabátur orbis.—HOR.

$\cup : \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

748. 5. *Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octônârius)*.

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \parallel \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

Párce jam camoéna vati párce jam sacró furori.—SERVIUS.

REMARK.—This verse and the following are compounds. The *Octônârius* is compounded of two Dimeters acatalectic ; hence regular Diaeresis after the Dimeter ; freely handled in comedy ; Hiatus in the Diaeresis ; Monotonous, on account of the division into two equal parts. It occurs occasionally in Plautus and Terence.

Verba dum sint, verum si ad rem || conferentur, vapulabit. TER.
 Sine modo et modestia sum || sine bono jure atque honore. PLAUT.
 Petulans prōtervo iracundo || animo indomito incogitato. PLAUT.

749. 6. *Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic* (Septēnārius).

⋈ ⋈ - > ⋈ ⋈ - > || ⋈ ⋈ - > ⋈ ⋈ - ^

Cras amet qui nunquam amavit || quique amavit cras amet. PERVIG.

VEN.

Tu me amoris magi' quam honoris || servavisti gratia. ENNIUS.

Vapulare te vehementer || jubeo : ne me territes. PLAUT.

REMARK.—The Trochaic Tetrameter (so called by eminence) is of frequent occurrence in comic poetry. It is compounded of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic. Hiatus is often found at the break.

Manibu' puris capite operto || ibi continuo contonat. PLAUT.

IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

750. The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented

By the Iambus : ⋈ ⋈ ;

By the Tribrach : ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ ;

By the Spondee : - ⋈ (in -meters) ;

By the Dactyl : - ⋈ ⋈ (sometimes) ; and

By the Anapaest : ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ .

REMARK.—Of course, Spondee, Dactyl, and Anapaest, are all irrational. The Spondee = - > , the Anapaest, = ⋈ ⋈ > , and the Dactyl, = ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ .

751. Iambic -meters admit substitution of a long for the short of the odd feet.

REMARK.—Regarding the Iambus as an Anacrusic Trochee, the same rule and reason hold for the substitution in the one, as in the other (746, R. 2).

752. 7. *Iambic Dimeter*.

	<i>Usual Scheme.</i>	<i>Anacrusic Scheme.</i>
Inarsit aestuosius	⋈ ⋈ - ⋈ ⋈ -	⋈ : ⋈ ⋈ - ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ - ^
Imbres nivesque com- parat	- ⋈ ⋈ - ⋈ ⋈ -	> : ⋈ ⋈ - ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ - ^
Videre properantes domum	- ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ - ⋈ ⋈ -	> : ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ > ⋈ ⋈ - ^
Ast ego vicissim ri- sero. HOR.	- ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ - - ⋈ ⋈ -	> : ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ - > ⋈ ⋈ - ^

REMARK.—According to the Anacrusic Scheme, the Iambic Dimeter Acatalectus is a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic with Anacrusis.

A Dactylic verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, an Hexameter.

759. 13. *Dactylic Dimeter (Adonic).*

Terruit urbem. HOR. _ _ _ _ _

REMARK.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logaoedic, and will recur under that head.

760. 14. *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Syllabam.*

Pulvis et umbra sumus. HOR. _ _ _ _ _

15. *Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic in Dissyllabum.*

Aut Epheson bimarivse Corinthi _ _ _ _ _
 O fortes pejoraque passi _ _ _ _ _
 Mensorem cohibent Archyta. HOR. _ _ _ _ _

16. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Alcmanus).*

Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput _ _ _ _ _
 Pallida mors aequo pulsat pede _ _ _ _ _
 Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat _ _ _ _ _

Occurs only in combination.

HEROIC HEXAMETER.

761. 17. _ _ _ | _ _ _ | _ _ _ | _ _ _ | _ (-) | _ -

- | | | |
|---|---|----------------|
| 1. Ut fugiunt aquilas + timidissima turba columbae. OV.
2. At tuba terribili + sonitu + procul aere canoro. VERG.
3. Quadrapedante putrem + sonitu quatit ungula campum. VERG. | } | Five Dactyls. |
| 4. Cum medio celeres + revolant ex aequore mergi. VERG.
5. Vastius insurgens + decimae ruit impetus undae. OV.
6. Et reboat raucum + regio + cita barbara bombum. LUCR. | } | Four Dactyls. |
| 7. Muta metu terram + genibus + summissa petebat. LUCR.
8. Inter cunctantes + cecidit + moribunda ministros. VERG.
9. Ne turbata volent + rapidis + ludibria ventis. VERG. | } | Three Dactyls. |
| 10. Versaque in obnixos + urgentur cornua vasto. VERG.
11. Processit longe + flammantia moenia mundi. LUCR. | } | Two Dactyls. |
| 12. Portam vi multa + converso cardine torquet. VERG.
13. Tectum augustum ingens + centum sublime columnis. VERG. | } | One Dactyl. |
| 14. Olli respondit + Rex Albai Longai. ENNIUS. | } | No Dactyl. |

19. *Dimeter Catalēcticus (Paroemiacus).*

Volucér pede corpore púlcher	○ ○ 2 ○ ○ — ○ ○ 2 ○
Lingúá catus ore canórus	— 2 ○ ○ — ○ ○ 2 ○
Verúm memorare magís quam	— 2 ○ ○ — ○ ○ 2 ○
Functúm laudare decébit. AÜSON.	— 2 — — ○ ○ 2 ○

20. *Dimeter Acatalēctus.*

Veniént annis saecúla seris	○ ○ 2 — — — ○ ○ — —
Quibus Óceanus vincúla rerum	○ ○ 2 ○ ○ — — ○ ○ — —
Laxét et ingens pateát tellus	— ○ ○ — — ○ ○ 2 — —
Tethýsque novos detégat orbes	— 2 ○ ○ — — ○ ○ — —
Nec sí terris última Thule. SEN. TRAG.	— 2 — — — ○ ○ — —

Syllaba Anceps is rare.

REMARKS.—Latin anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek anapaest was an anacrustic dactylic measure or march (in $\frac{4}{4}$ time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiacus: *Anacrustic Scheme.*

Volucer pede corpore pulcher	○ ○ : — ○ ○ — ○ ○ — — —
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

Dimeter Acatalectus: *Anacrustic Scheme.*

Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum	○ ○ : — ○ ○ — — ○ ○ — —
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

The Theses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

LOGAEOEDIC RHYTHMS.

764. The Logaedic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the trochaic rhythm in which the thesis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary trochee.

Instead of the trochee, the light dactyl may be employed. This light or cyclical dactyl is represented in morae by $1\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, 1$; in music, by $\text{♪♪♪} = \frac{3}{16}, \frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{8}$.

When dactyls are employed, the trochee preceding is called a Basis, or *tread*. This trochee may be irrational $->$ (so-called spondee). If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. The basis is commonly marked X. Instead of the trochee, an iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncope are also found.

REMARKS.—1. Logaedic comes from *λόγος*, *prose*, and *ἀοιδή*, *song*, because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.

2. Dactyls are not necessarily employed. No. 4 (Alcaic enneasyllabic) is logaedic.

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logaoedic character of the Greater Archilochian.

769. 29. *Archilochian (Greater) = Dactyl. Tetr. and Troch. Tripody.*

⋮ ⋮ ⋮ ⋮ ⋮ ⋮ ⋮ || ⋮ ⋮ ⋮ ⋮

Solvitur acris hiems grata vice || veris et Favoni. HOR.

REMARK.—If measured logaoedically, the two shorts of the dactyl must be reduced in value to one ($\omega = \cup$), and the logaoedic scheme is

$-\overset{>}{\omega} | -\overset{>}{\omega} | -\overset{>}{\omega} | -\overset{>}{\omega} || -\cup | -\cup | \text{L} | -\wedge$

Logaoedic tetrapody + Logaoedic tetrapody with Syncopé.

770. *Choriambic Rhythms.*—When a logaoedic series is syncopated, apparent choriambi arise. What is $|\sim\cup|\text{L}|$ seems to be $-\cup\cup-$. Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin.

30. *Asclēpiadēan (Lesser).* $-\overset{x}{\cup} \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup -$

Maecenas atavis || edite
regibus. HOR.

$-\> | \sim\cup | \text{L} || \sim\cup | -\cup | -\wedge$

31. *Asclēpiadēan (Greater).* $-\overset{x}{\cup} \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup -$

Nullam Vare sacra || vite
prius || severis arbo-
rem. HOR.

$-\> | \sim\cup | \text{L} || \sim\cup | \text{L} || \sim\cup | -\cup | -\wedge$

32. *Sapphic (Greater).* $-\overset{x}{\cup} -\overset{x}{\cup} \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup - \cup \cup -$

Te deos oro Sybarin || cur
properas amando.
HOR.

$-\cup | -\> | \sim\cup | \text{L} || \sim\cup | -\cup | \text{L} | -\wedge$

33. *Priüpēan (Glyconic +
Pherecratēan).*

$-\overset{x}{\cup} \cup \cup - \cup \cup - || \overset{x}{\cup} \cup \cup - \cup \cup -$

Hunc lucum tibi dedico ||
consecroque Priape.
CAT.

$-\> | \sim\cup | -\cup | \text{L} || -\> | \sim\cup | \text{L} | -\wedge$

CRETIC AND BACCHIC RHYTHMS.

771. These passionate rhythms are found occasionally in the comic poets. They both belong to the Quinquupartite or Five-Eighths class.

1. The distribution of the Creticus is 3 + 2 morae.

The metrical value of the Creticus is $-\cup-$ (Amphimacer).

REMARKS.—1. The Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.

The Iōnicus is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

774. 38. *Tetrameter Catalectic.*

The Galliambic verse (Tetrameter Catalectic) is found in a famous poem by CATULLUS (lxiii).

Ordinary Scheme :

Without Anaclassis : $\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

With Anaclassis : $\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$.

Anacrusic Scheme :

Without Anaclassis : $\cup \cup : - \cup \cup \cup | - - \dagger \cup \cup \cup | - - \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup \parallel$
 \wedge

With Anaclassis : $\cup \cup : - \cup \cup \cup | - - \dagger \cup \cup \cup | - \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup \parallel$
 \wedge

The Anaclastic form is the more common. The Anacrusis may be contracted (9 times in the Attis).

The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

Et earum omnia adirem furibunda

latibula

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Quo nos decet citatis celerare tri-

pudiis

$- \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Itaque ut domum Cybebes tetigere

lassulae

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Super alta vectus Attis celeri rate

maria

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Jam jam dolet quod egi jam jam-

que paenitet

$- \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

775. VERSES COMPOUNDED OF IAMBI AND DACTYLS.

39. 1. *Iambelegus. Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Penthēmimeris.*

Tu vina Torquato move || consule

pressa meo. HOR.

$\cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup \cup$

Or as two verses :

$\cup \cup : - \cup | - \cup \cup | - \cup | - \cup \cup \parallel$

$- \cup \cup | - \cup \cup | - \cup \cup \parallel$

VI. Sapphic Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (No. 26), and an Adonic (No. 21), which is merely a clausula. In No. 26 Horace regularly breaks the Dactyl.

x u x - z † u u - u - u	- u - > - † ω - u - u	5 .
x u x - z † u u - u - u	- u - > - † ω - u - u	5 .
x u x - z † u u - u - u	- u - > - † ω - u - u	5 .
z u u z u	~ u - u	2

In Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculāre.

Word divided at the end of the third verse; Od, i. 2, 19; 25, 11; ii. 16, 7.

VII. Lesser Sapphic Strophe. Aristophanic (No. 22), and Greater Sapphic (No. 32). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

z u u - u - u
x u - x - z u u - z u u - u - u

Or thus :

~ u - u L - ^	4 .
- u - > ~ u L ~ u - u L - ^	4 4 .
~ u - u L - ^	4 .
- u - > ~ u L ~ u - u L - ^	4 4 .

In Od. i. 8.

VIII. Alcaic Strophe. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (No. 27) one of nine (No. 4), and one of ten (No. 28).

ū : x u - x - z u u - u -	> : - u - > ~ u - u - ^	I. 5 .
ū : x u - x - z u u - u -	> : - u - > ~ u - u - ^	5 .
ū : z u - u - z u - u	> : - u - > - u - u	II. 4 .
z u u - u u - u - u	~ u ~ u - u - u	4 .

In Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 15, 17.

IX. Archilochian Strophe No. 1. Hexameter (No. 17), and Lesser Archilochian (No. 14), two pairs to a tetrastich.

$$\begin{array}{l} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \dagger \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} - \\ \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \end{array}$$

Or thus :

$$\begin{array}{l} - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \dagger \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - - | \quad \cdot \\ - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - - \wedge | \quad \cdot \\ - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \dagger \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - - | \quad \cdot \\ - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - - \wedge | \quad \cdot \\ \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \cdot \\ \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \cdot \\ \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \cdot \\ \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \cdot \end{array}$$

In Od. iv. 7.

X. Archilochian Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), and an Iambelegus (No. 39).

$$\begin{array}{l} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} - \\ \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - | \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \end{array}$$

Or thus :

$$\begin{array}{l} - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - - | \\ \bar{u} : - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \wedge | \\ - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \wedge | \end{array}$$

Epod. 13.

XI. Archilochian Strophe No. 3. An Iambic Trimeter (No. 9), followed by an Elegiambus (No. 40).

$$\begin{array}{l} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \dagger \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \quad \bar{u} : - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \wedge | \\ \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \quad - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \bar{u} \bar{u} | - \wedge | \\ \bar{u} : - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \bar{u} | - \wedge | \end{array}$$

Epod 11.

XII. Archilochian Strophe No. 4. Greater Archilochian (No. 29), and Trimeter Iambic Catalectic (No. 8). Two pairs combined to form a tetrastich

$$\begin{array}{l} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \bar{u} | \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \\ \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} - \bar{u} \bar{z} \bar{u} \end{array}$$

Od. i. 4.

REMARK.—This verse is sometimes considered as logaedic.

$-\omega \mid -\omega \mid -\omega \mid -\omega \parallel -\cup \mid -\cup \mid \perp \mid -\wedge \parallel$	4
$\succ : -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid \perp \mid -\wedge \parallel$	4
$-\omega \mid -\omega \mid -\omega \mid -\omega \parallel -\cup \mid -\cup \mid \perp \mid -\wedge \parallel$	6
$\succ : -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid \perp \mid -\wedge \parallel$	6

XIII. Alemanian Strophe. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), followed by Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter (No. 15).

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} \\ \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup \end{array}$$

In Od. i. 7, 28. Epod. 12.

REMARK.—The Tetrameter may be considered acatalectic with a spondee in the fourth place.

XIV. Iambic Trimeter repeated (No. 9).

$$\bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \succ : \cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\wedge$$

In Epod. 17.

XV. Iambic Strophe. Iambic Trimeter (No. 9), and Dimeter (No. 7).

$$\begin{array}{l} \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \succ : -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\wedge \\ \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \bar{\cup} \cup \succ : -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\cup \mid -\wedge \end{array}$$

In Epod. 1-10.

XVI. Pythiambic Strophe No. 1. Dactylic Hexameter No. 17 (Versus Pythius), and Iambic Dimeter (No. 7).

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} \\ \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup \end{array}$$

Epod. 14, 15.

XVII. Pythiambic Strophe No. 2. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), and Iambic Trimeter (No. 9).

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} & \bar{\cup} \\ \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup \end{array}$$

Epod. 16.

XVIII. Trochaic Strophe. Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (No. 3), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (No. 8). Two pairs make a tetrastich.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & & & & & & \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$$

In Od. ii. 18.

XIX. Ionic System.

In Od. iii. 12. (See No. 37.)

779. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.	BOOK. ODE.	METRE.
I. 1.....	i.	II. 1.....	viii.	III. 18.....	vi.
2.....	vi.	2.....	vi.	19.....	ii.
3.....	ii.	3.....	viii.	20.....	vi.
4.....	xii.	4.....	vi.	21.....	viii.
5.....	iv.	5.....	viii.	22.....	vi.
6.....	iii.	6.....	vi.	23.....	viii.
7.....	xiii.	7.....	viii.	24.....	ii.
8.....	vii.	8.....	vi.	25.....	ii.
9.....	viii.	9.....	viii.	26.....	viii.
10.....	vi.	10.....	vi.	27.....	vi.
11.....	v.	11.....	viii.	28.....	ii.
12.....	vi.	12.....	iii.	29.....	viii.
13.....	ii.	13.....	viii.	30.....	i.
14.....	iv.	14.....	viii.	IV. 1.....	ii.
15.....	iii.	15.....	viii.	2.....	vi.
16.....	viii.	16.....	vi.	3.....	ii.
17.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	4.....	viii.
18.....	v.	18.....	xviii.	5.....	iii.
19.....	ii.	19.....	viii.	6.....	vi.
20.....	vi.	20.....	viii.	7.....	ix.
21.....	iv.	III. 1.....	viii.	8.....	i.
22.....	vi.	2.....	viii.	9.....	viii.
23.....	iv.	3.....	viii.	10.....	v.
24.....	iii.	4.....	viii.	11.....	vi.
25.....	vi.	5.....	viii.	12.....	iii.
26.....	viii.	6.....	viii.	13.....	iv.
27.....	viii.	7.....	iv.	14.....	viii.
28.....	xiii.	8.....	vi.	15.....	viii.
29.....	viii.	9.....	ii.	Carmen Saeculäre.	vi.
30.....	vi.	10.....	iii.	Epod. 1-10.....	xv.
31.....	viii.	11.....	vi.	11.....	xi.
32.....	vi.	12.....	xix.	12.....	xiii.
33.....	iii.	13.....	iv.	13.....	x.
34.....	viii.	14.....	vi.	14.....	xvi.
35.....	viii.	15.....	ii.	15.....	xvi.
36.....	ii.	16.....	iii.	16.....	xvii.
37.....	viii.	17.....	viii.	17.....	xiv.
38.....	vi.				

A P P E N D I X .

ROMAN CALENDAR.

THE names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive **mensis**, *month*, may or may not be expressed: (**mensis**) **Jānuārius**, **Februārius**, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not **Jūlius** and **Augustus**, but **Quintilis** and **Sextilis**.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kalendae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Idūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kalendae Jānuāriae**, **Nōnae Februāriae**, **Idūs Martiae**. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October, the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus :

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the 15th day,
The Nones the 7th; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next calends, next nones, next ides") the Romans used for "the day before" **prīdiē** with the accus. **prīdiē kalendās Jānuāriās**, Dec. 31, **prīdiē nōnās Jān.** = Jan. 4, **prīdiē Id. Jān.** = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by **ante diem tertium, quartum**, etc., before the accusative, so that **ante diem tertium kal. Jān.** means "two days before the calends of January;" **ante diem quartum**, or a. d. iv., or **iv. kal. Jān.**, "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions **ex** and **in**: **ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Jūniās usque ad prīdiē kal. Septembris**, from June 3 to August 31; **differre aliquid in ante diem xv. kal. Nov.**, to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. kal. Mart. It was called a. d. bis sextum kal. Mart., so that a. d. vii. kal. Mart. corresponded to our February 23d, just as in the ordinary year.

TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.

For Nones and Ides.—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

For Calends.—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. viii. Id. Jān. ($13 + 1 - 8$) = Jan. 6; a. d. iv. Non. Apr. ($5 + 1 - 4$) = Apr. 2; a. d. xiv. Kal. Oct. ($30 + 2 - 14$) = Sept. 18.

INDEX OF SYNTAX.

The Figures refer to the Sections.

A.

- A*, *ab*, *abs*, with ablative, 412; of agent, 205, 403; of origin, 395; of part affected, 398; *ā tergō*, *ab oriente*, *ā spatiō*, 386, R. 2.
Abhinc, 400, R. 3.
Ablative, syntax of, 383-409; of place whence, 388-390; of attendance, 391; of time when, 392, 3; of origin, 395; of material, 396; of measure, 397-400, 566; of manner, 401; of quality, 402; of means, 403; of price, 404; with sundry verbs, 405; of cause, 406; ablative absolute, 408, 409; prepositions with, 418, 420; abl. of gerund and gerundive, 432; of supine, 437.
Absolute ablative, 408; restrictions of use, 409, R. 3.
Absque, w. abl. 418.
Abstract nouns in plural 195, R. 5; as attribute and *vice versa*, 357, R.
Abūtor, 405, 428; R. 3.
Ac atque, 479, 615.
Accēdit, constr., 525, R. 3.
Accidit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.
Accingor, constr., 332, R. 2.
Accipio, with two datives, 350.
Accusative, 327-340. Direct object, inner, outer object, 327; general view, 328; with active transitive verbs, 329; with verbs compd. with prepositions, 330; cognate, 331; adverbial, 331, R. 3; of part affected, 332; double, 333, 334; of local objects (terminal accusative), 342, 410; of extent in space, 335, 336; in time, 337, 338; in exclamations and explanatory questions, 340; with interjections, 340; with prepositions, 417; of infinitive, 424; of gerund, 426; of gerundive, 431; of supine, 436.
Accusative and infinitive, 341-526.
Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, —constr., 377.
Ac sī, 389.
Action, stage of, 213; period of, 213.
Active voice, 204; for passive, 205; R. 1.
Active genitive, 361.
Ad, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. Preposition with accus., 356, R. 1, 417; whither, 341, R. 2; ad Vestae, 360, R. 2; w. gerund, 437, R. 2; *ad*, hence, 400, R. 3.
Adīre aliquem, 330, R. 2.
Adjective for substantive, 195, R. 1-4.—Adjective predicate, 202; adj. attribute, 285, 288; peculiar forms of, 288 foll.; comparison of, 311; as adverb, 329, R. 6. Adjective sentences, 505.
Adnominal genitive, 359.
Adūlor, constr. 347.
Advantage, dative of, 345.
Adverbial accus., 331, R. 3; abl. 401.
Adverbial sentences, 507.
Adverbs of quality, place, extent with gen., 371, R. 3. Comparative of constr., 399. Adverbs, 440. Position of, 441. Negative adv., 442-450. Prepositions as adv., 406, R. Adverbs of likeness and unlikeness with *atque*, 646.

- Adversative particles for copulative, 484.
 Adversative sentences, 486-493.
Adversus, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.
Aeger, w. gen. 374, R. 2.
Aemulor, 347.
Aequālis, 356, and R. 1.
Aequāre, 345, R. 1.
Aequi bonique facio, 180, R. 2.
Aestimo, constr., 180, R. 1.
Affatim, w. gen., 371, R. 3
 Affection of the mind, 374, R. 2.
Affinis, constr., 356, and R. 1.
 Affirmative, indefinite, and general, 448, R.
 Agent, abl. of, w. *a* (*ab*), 202, 403; without *a* (*ab*), 202, R. 2; dative of, 203, 352, 353.
 Agreement of predicate and subject, 199, 281, 283; of attribute and substantive, 285, 286; of relative and antecedent, 616.
Ajo, 651, R.
Aliēnus, w. dat., 356; with gen., 356, R. 1; w. abl., R. 5.
Aliquis, *aliqui*, 301.
Aliter with *atque*, 646; with *sīn*, 593.
Alii—alii, 321.
Alius, 306; with abl., 399, R. 2; with *atque*, 645.
Alter, 306. *Alter—alter*, 321.
Altus, 336.
 Ambiguity in use of acc. and inf., 527, R. 4.
Amicus, constr., 356 and R. 1.
An, 459, 462.
 Anacoluthon, 694.
Animī, constr., 374, R. 3.
Annōn, 461.
Ante, in compds., with acc., 330, w. dat., 346. *Ante*, w. acc., 417. *A* in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.
 Antecedent, 615; repeated, 617; incorporated, 618; attraction into, 619; omission of, 623.
Antequam, constr., 576 foll.
 Aorist, 212.
 Apodosis, 590; omitted, 603 foll.
 Apodotic period, 686.
 Aposiopēsis, 691.
 Apposition, 319. Partitive (restrictive), 320. Distributive, 321; with *nōmen*, 322; to a sentence, 323.
 Predicative, 324. Apposition of antecedent incorporated, 618.
Apud, w. accus., 417.
 Arrangement of words, 674, foll. of clauses.
 As, 324, R. 3.
Aspergo, constr., 348.
 Asseverations, 255.
Assis, 379.
Assuētus, w. abl., 403, R. 2.
Asyndeton, 472, 480.
 Attempted actions by present, 218, R. 2; by imperf., 224.
 Attendance, ablative of, 391.
Atque, for *quam*, 311, R. 6. See *ac*.
Atqui, 488.
 Attraction of pronoun, 199, R. 5. Attraction of names of persons, 322.
 Attraction of mood, 509, 666; w. *quod*., 541, R. 2. Attraction of relative, 619; inverted, 619, R. 2.
Aut, 492.
Autem, 486.
Az, verbals in, w. gen. 174.

B.

- Becoming, verbs of, 193.
Belli, 409, R. 3.
 Beseeking, verbs of, 546.
 Bewaring, verbs of, 548.
Bene emere, *vēndere*, 381, R. 3.
 Bidding, verbs of, 345 and R. 1.
 Birth, part. of, 395.
Bonī cōnsulo, 380, R. 2.
 Brachylogy, 689.

C.

- Capitis*, and *capite*, 377, R. 1.
Captus, w. abl., 398.
 Cases, syntax of, 377-412; nom., 194; voc., 194, R. 2; accus., 327-340; dat., 342-356; gen., 357-382; abl., 381-409; with preposition, 417-419.
Causā, *grātiā*, w. gen., 372, 407.
 Causal particles, 500, sentences, 588, foll.
 Causal participle, 669.
 Causation, verbs of, w. partic., 537.
 Cause, abl. of, 406.

- Cave*, with subj. for imperat., 264.
Caveo, w. acc. and dat., 347; *nē ut*, 548, R. 2.
Cēlo, 333 and R. 2.
Cēterum, 490.
 Chiasmus, 684.
 Choosing, verbs of, 197, 334.
Circā, circiter, w. accus., 417.
Circum, compds. w. acc., 530; *circum*, w. acc., 417.
Circumdo, constr., 348.
Cis, citrā, w. accus., 417.
 Citations in abl., 386.
 Cities, names of, 410–412.
Clam, w. abl., 417, R.
 Clauses, 474.
Coeptus sum, 424, R.
 Cognate, accus., 331.
Cognātus, constr., 356, R. 1.
 Coincident action, 583.
Collocāre in, w. abl., 384, R.
Com, con, in compds., w. dat., 346.
 Combination of relative sentences, 639.
Comitor, constr., 347.
Communicāre, const., 346, R.
Commūnis, 356, R. 1.
 Comparative degree with *quam*, 311, 647, foll.; with abl., 399; with gen., 370.
 Comparative particles for copulatives, 484. C. sentences, 645, foll.
 Comparison, 311; standard of, omitted, 323; of qualities, 314.
 Complementary final sentences, 541, 543.
Compos, w. gen., 373.
 Compound sentences, 192, 474.
 Compounds of preposit. with acc., 330; w. two acc., 330; w. dat., 346.
 Conceiving, verbs of, 523.
 Concessive subjunctive, 257. Concessive sentences and conjunctions, 606. C. participles, 611, 670.
 Concord of predicate, w. subj., 202, 281; gender, 232; number, 281; of attribute, 285; common attribute, 286; of apposition, 349; of relative, 616.
 Concorde, the three, 198.
 Condemning, verbs of, 377.
 Condition, resulting, 225, 230.
 Conditional sentences, 590–604; logical, 597; ideal, 598; unreal, 599; incomplete, 600; in *ORATIO OBLIQUA*, 659, foll.; conditional participle, 670.
Condūcere, constr., 378.
 Conjunctions.—Coördinate, copulative, 477, 484; adversative, 486–493; disjunctive, 494–497; causal, 500; illative, 501–504; subordinate, causal, 538; final, 543; temporal, 561; conditional, 591.
Cōnsciūs, w. gen., 373, R. 1.
Cōnsidere in, 384, R. 1.
Cōnsilium est, w. inf. 429, R. 3.
Cōstituere in, 384, R.
Cōsto, 370.
Cōsulo, 347, 380, R. 2.
Constructio praeagnans, 696.
Contentus, w. abl., 373, R. 1.
 Continuance, verbs of, 424.
Contigit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.
Contrā, as adv., 416, R.; w. acc., 217.
Contrārius, 356, R. 1.
Convenio, 347.
 Convicting, verbs of, 377.
 Coördinate conjunctions. See conjunctions.
 Copula, 196; omitted, 200; agreement with predicate, 202, R. 1.
 Copulative conjunctions, 477–484; inserted, 483; omitted, 475–483.
 Copulative verbs, 1.
Coram, with abl., 418.
 Correlatives of *sī*, 595. Correlatives of *quī*, 620. Correlatives, list of, 645.
Cum prep., abl., with and without, 391–401; postpositive, 414, R. 1; with abl., 418.
Cum (quum) primum, 563; *cum* (constr.), 581; temporal, 582; coincident action, 583; lapse of time, 582, R. 3; conditional, 584; iterative, 585; historical, 586; causal, 587; concessive, adversative, 588; *cumtum*, 587.
Cumque, compounds with, 246, R. 4.
Cupidus, w. gen., 373.
Cupio, 532.
Cūrā ut, 264.

D.

Dative, 343-356; w. transitive verbs, 344; w. intrans. verbs, 345; w. compd. verbs, 346; differs from accus., 347; with verbs of giving and putting, 348; with *esse*, 349; of the object for which, 350; ethical dat., 351; of agent, 352; with gerund, 353; of participles, 354; with derivative nouns, 355; with adjectives, 356. Dative of gerund, 430.

Dē, with abl., 418; for gen., 371, R. 4, 377, R. 2; of time, 393, R.; of origin, 395; with abl. of measure, 398.

Dēbēbam, 246, R.

Decēre, 355, R. 1.

Declarative mood, 246.

Dēcerno, 446, R. 2.

Dēficere, 355, R. 1.

Dēfigere in, abl., 384, R.

Definite price, 404.

Delay, verbs of, 551.

Demanding, verbs of, 546.

Demonstratives, use of, 290-292.

Deponent verbs, 211.

Depriving, verbs of, 389.

Derivative nouns with dat., 355.

Design, sentences of, 544, foll.; represented, 544, R.

Dēsino, 424.

Desire, adj. of, w. gen., 373; verbs of, w. inf., 542; w. partic., 547.

Dēsitus sum, 424, R. 1.

Dēspēro, w. acc., 329.

Destination, 377, R. 3.

Determinative pronouns, 293-298.

Dēterreo, constr., 548, R. 1.

Difference, abl. of, 400.

Dī, dis, compounds with, 388, R. 1.

Dignor, 398, R. 2.

Dignus, 373, R. 3; 398, R. 2. *Dignus qui*, 556, R. 2.

Direct discourse, 509.

Direct object, 327.

Direct question, 454.

Disadvantage, dat. of, 345.

Disgust, adj. of, 373.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 494-497.

Dispār, 356, R. 1.

Disproportion, 313.

Distance, abl. of, 400, R. 2.

Distāre, w. dat., 388, R. 1; with abl., 400, R. 1, 2; with acc., 335.

Distributives, 310.

Dō, with two datives, 350.

Doceo, 333, 424, R. 3.

Doctus, constr., 403, R. 2.

Doleo, w. acc., 329, R. 1, w. *quod*, 542.

Dolō, 401, R. 1.

Domī, 412, R. 2.

Domō, 411, R. 2.

Domōs, domum, 410.

Dōnec. See *Dum*.

Doubt, verbs of, 551.

Dūco, with two dat., 350, with gen., 378.

Dubito an, 469, R.

Dubito, other constr. 550, R.

Dum, with pres., 217, R. 1, 572; w. ind., 571, 573; with subj., 574.

Dum, Dummodo, 575.

E.

Ē or *ex* with abl., 417; for gen., 571, R. 4; of origin, 395; *ex fugā* 388, R. 1.

Ecce, 340.

Egeo, 389, R. 1.

Ellipsis of substantive, 195, R. 1.

Ellipsis, 688.

Emo, 378.

Emotion, verbs of, 406, 542.

Ēn, 340.

End, verbs of, 424.

Endeavor, verbs of, 546.

Enim, 500.

Enumeration in abl., 384, R.

Eō, w. gen., 371, R. 3.

Ergā, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.

Ergō, w. gen., 372.

Ergō, conj., 504.

Est quī, 426.

Et, 534; *et ipse*, 297, R. 2; *et nēmo*, 482; *et nōn*, 534.

Etenim, 497.

Etiam, 477.

Ethical dative, 351.

Etiam sī, etsī, 605, 606.

Exclamations, 340 with acc. and inf. 534; with *ut*, 560.

Expers, w. gen., 373.

Expectāre, constr., 574.

Extent in space, 335, 336.
 External qualities, 402, R.
Extrā, as an adverb, 406, R.; with
 acc., 417.

F.

Fac, in circumlocutions, 264.
Facio, with gen., 365, R., 379; w.
 inf., 527, R. 1; w. part., 536; w.
 subj., 557.
 Feeling, dat. of, 351.
 Fearing, verbs of, 347, 552.
Fido, 345, R. 1, 402.
 Filling, verbs of, 374, R. 6, 389.
 Final sentences, 543, foll.
 Fine, abl. of, 377, R. 1.
Fio, with two nom., 197; with two
 dat., 349; with abl., 403, R. 2.
 Fitness, adjectives of, 356.
Flāgito, 333 and R. 2.
 Forbidding, verbs of, 355.
 Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 375.
Frequens, 324, R. 5.
 Frequentative. *See* Iterative.
Frētus, with abl., 373, R. 1.
 Friendliness, adj. of, 356.
Fruō, 413; *fruentus*, 428, R. 3.
Fuī, perf. partic. pass. with, 240.
 Fullness, adjectives of, 382.
Fungor, 405; *fungendus*, 428, R. 3.
 Future, 237; periphrastic, 237; in
 subjunctive, 514; inf., 529.
 Future participle, 279.
 Future perfect, 233, foll.; iterative
 use, 659.
Futūrum esse, fore ut, 237, 531, R.
Futūrum fuisse ut, 240, R. 2, 659.

G.

Gaudeo, w. abl., 406; w. inf., 533;
 w. *quod*, 528.
 Generic relative with ind., 246, R. 4.
 Genitive, 357-382; appositive gen.,
 or gen. of specification, 359; pos-
 sess. gen., 360; active and passive,
 361-363; gen. of quality, 364; as
 a predicate, 365; partitive gen.,
 366, foll. g. *generis*, 367, R.; gen.
 with prepositional substantives,
 372; with adj., 373; with verbals
 and participles, 374; with verbs

of memory, 375; with verbs of
 emotion, 376; w. judicial verbs,
 377; with verbs of rating and
 buying, 376, 377; gen. with *in-*
terest and *rēfert*, 381, 382; appa-
 rent gen., 412; gen. of gerund
 and gerundive, 429; cases of, 427.
 Gerund and gerundive, 426-432;
 gerundive for gerund, 428; after
 prepositions, 428, R. 1; gerundive
 formation restricted, 428, R. 2;
 428, R. 3; genitive of, 429; da-
 tive of, 430; accus. of, 431; ablat.
 of, 432.
Glōrior, with abl., 407.
Gratiā, with gen., 372, 407.

H.

Habeo, w. perf. part. pass., 227; with
 two dat., 350; with gen., 378;
 with inf., 424, R.; *nihil habeo*
quod and *nōn habeo quid*, 634.
 Habit, verbs of, 424.
 Happening, verbs of, 525, 558.
Haud, 442. *Haud scio an*, 457, R.
 Hendiadys, 695.
Hei, 340, R. 2.
Heu, 540.
Hic, 290; of time, 383, R. 2.
 Historical tenses, 213. Historical
 present, 227. Historical *cum*, 586.
Hodiernus, 324, R. 6.
 Hope, verbs of, 424, R. 3.
Horrēre, w. accus., 529, R.

I.

Ideal second person, 250, 267. Ideal
 conditional sentence, 598.
Īdem, 296; predicative use of, 324,
 R. 2; with dat., 356, R. 6.
Idōneus, with dat., 356; *qui*, 556,
 R. 2.
Igitur, 563.
Ignārus, w. gen. 373.
 Ignorance, adjectives of, w. gen.
 373.
 Illative conjunctions, 502-504.
Ille, 292; of time, 393, R. 2.
Immemor, w. gen., 373.
Impedio, constr., 540, 549.

Imperative, 259-269; tenses, 259-262; negative, 263; periphrases for, 264; representatives of positive imperative, 265; of negative, 266; of positive and negative, 267, 268; time of, 272: imperative in *oratio obliqua*, 655; used modally, 246, R.

Imperfect tense, indicative, 222, foll.; subjunctive, 250; in sequence of tenses, 517; in unreal conditional sentences, 599, R. 2.

Impero, w. inf., 532, R. 1.

Impersonal verbs, 96.

Impertio, 348.

Imprimere in, abl., 384, R.

In, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346. *In*, with abl. of place, 384, R.; with acc., 413, R.; with acc. and abl., 419. *In*, with abl. of time, 393.

Inclination, verbs of, 324.

Incorporation of antecedents, 618; antecedent, 623.

Indefinite perfect, 212; pronouns, 302-304.

Indicative mood, 246; for subjunctive, 399, R. 4. See the different classes of sentences.

Indigeo, constr., 388, R. 1.

Indignus, w. abl., 373, R. 3; 398, R.

2. *Indignus quā*, 556, R. 2.

Indirect discourse. See *oratio obliqua*.

Indirect object, 208, 343.

Indirect questions, 462.

Induo, constr., 348.

In eō esse ut, 237, 241.

Infinitive, tenses of, 273, foll. 314; subject of, 327, 525; as a noun, 420, 422; as a subject, 223; as an object, 224; as a predicate, 425; accus. and inf., 526; ambiguity of accus. and inf., 527, R. 4; accus. and inf., with verbs of will and desire, 532; with verbs of emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; accus. and inf., as a subject, 535; in relative sentences, 538.

Infrā, as an adverb, 416 R.; with accus., 417.

Inquam, 439.

Inquiry, verbs of, 333.

Inscribere in, abl., 384, R.

Instar, with gen., 370.

Instrument, abl. of, 205, 103.

Inter, in compound with dat., 346.

Inter, with accus., 417; with accus. for gen., 371, R. 4. *Inter sē*, 212. *Inter* of time, 393, R.

Intercalary period, 686.

Interest, constr., 373-381.

Interjections, 194, R. 2; with divers cases, 340.

Interrogative sentences, 449, 473.

Intrā, with accus., 417; of time, 393, R.

Intransitive verbs, 204, 345.

Inverted attraction, 618, R. 2.

Invitus, 324, R. 6.

Ipsē, use of, 297, foll.

Irē, with supine, 437.

Islands, names of smaller, constr., 410, 411, 412.

Itaque, 499.

Ita—ut, restrictive, 556, R. 5.

Item, iidem, 645.

Iterative tenses, 568-9.

J.

Jubeo, constr., 532, R.; 546, R. 1.

Jūre, 398.

Jussū, 407.

Juvo, w. accus., 315, R. 1.

K.

Knowledge, adjectives of, 373.

L.

Lātus, constr., 336.

Lēge, 398.

Letters, tenses in, 244; date, 411, R. 3.

Lībēns, 324, R. 6.

Līber, 373, R.; *lībero*, w. abl., 388.

Lībrō, and *in lībrō*, 385, R.

Līcēre, constr., 378.

Līcet, constr., 535, R. 2.

Likeness, adjectives of, 356; with acc., 646.

Locāre, constr., 378.

Locative, 412.

Locō, 385, R.
Longē, with superl., 317.
Longus, w. accus., 336.

M.

Macte, 324, R. 1.
Magis quam, 314.
Magnī, 377; *magno*, 380.
 Making, verbs of, with two accus., 334; passive of, w. two nom., 196.
Male, emere, vēndere, 380, R. 3.
Mālo, constr., 532, R. 4; 546, R. 3.
 Manner, abl. of, 401.
 Material, abl. of, 396.
Mātūtīnus, 324, R. 6.
 Measure, abl. of, 398-400; of difference, 398.
Medeor, w. dat., 345, R. 2; *medendus*, 428, R. 3.
Melius, w. indic., 246, R. 1.
Memini, w. pres. inf., 27, R.; w. gen. 375.
Memor, w. gen., 373.
Memoria teneo, 277, R.
 Memory, verbs of constr., 375.
Metuo, w. dat. and acc., 347.
Militiae, 412, R. 2.
Mille, 308.
Minōris, 380.
Minor, minus, without *quam*, 311, R. 4.
Mirārī, with accus., 329, R. 1.
Mirum quantum, 469, R. 2.
Misereor, miserēscō, miseret, w. gen., 376.
Mittere, w. two dat., 350.
Moderor, with dat. and accus., 347.
Modo, with subjunc., 575.
Modo-modo, 481.
Moneo, w. gen., 375 and R. 1; with *ut*, 546; with inf., 546, R. 2.
 Mood, attraction of, 506.
 Moods, 244; indic., 246, foll.; subjunctive, 247, foll.; imperfect, 259; infinitive, 245, R.
Mōris est, 365.
 Moving cause, 407, R.
 Multiplication of subjects, 282, foll.
 Multitude, noun of, 202, R.
Multō, with superlat., 317.
Multus, with *et*, 468.
Mūto, constr., 404, R.

N.

Nam, namque, 500.
 Name, dat. of, 322: gen. of, 359.
 Names of cities and small islands, constr., 410, 411, 412.
 Naming, verbs of, with two accus., 334.
Nātus, w. accus., 338; w. abl., 395.
 —*Ne*, 456, 462.
Nē, with optative subj., 253; with imper. subj., 256, 266; with imperat., 263, 264; with sentences of design, 543; of result, 566, R. 4; *nē*, provided that, 610.
 Nearness, adjectives of, 256.
Necessē est, 344, R.
 Necessity, expressed how, 246, R. 1.
Necne, 461.
Nec nōn, 448, R. 3.
 Nedum, 484, R. 2.
 Negative, of optative subjunctive, 253; of imperative, 263; negatives, 442, foll.; subdivision of, 444; position of, 447; two negatives, 448.
Nego, 446.
Nēmo, 304.
Nempe, 500, R.
Neque, 482. *Nē-quidem*, 484.
Nescio an, 404.
Nescio quis quōmodo, with indic., 469, R. 2.
 Neuter adjective as substantive, 199, R. 4; as cognate accus., 331, R. 2; as adverb, R. 3; with partitive gen., 371.
Nī, 592, R. 5.
Nihil, 301; *nihili*, 379.
Nisi and *sī nōn*, 592; *nisi* and *nisi sī* = only, 592, R. 2; *nisi quod*, R. 3; *nisi forte*, R. 3.
Nitor, with abl., 403, R. 3.
 No, 473.
Nōlī, with inf. for imperat., 264.
Nōlo, 532.
Nōmen est, 322. *Nōmen* w. gen. 359.
 Nominative, 194; double, 196; nom. for accus., 528; with inf., 525.
Nōn, 442; position of, 447; *nōn quod, quō*, 541, R. 1.
Nōn aliū quam, 646, R. 2.
Nōn modo-solum tantum, 484.
Nōnne, 457.

Nōn possum nōn, 448, R. 1.
Nōs = ego, 195, R. 7.
Nōstrī, nōstrum, 362 and R.
 Nouns. See Substantive and Adjective.
Nūbo, with dat., 345, R. 2.
Nūlius, 300, 304; for *nōn*, R. 2.
Num, 458.
 Number, singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8; agreement in, 199.
 Nunc-nunc, 484.

O.

Ō, with voc., 194, R. 2; w. accus., 340.
Ō sī, 254, 388.
Ob, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. *Ob*, w. accus., 417.
 Object, direct, 204; indirect, 205; infin. as object, 424; object sentences, 523-537; with *quod*, 525; with acc. and inf., 326, foll.
 Object, for which, 350.
 Obligation expressed, 246, R. 1.
 Oblique cases, 327-408.
 Obliquity, partial, 502.
Obliviscor, constr., 375, R. 1.
Olēre and *redolēre*, w. accus., 329, R.
 Omitting, verbs of, 551.
Omnēs, 369, R. 1.
Opīniōne, 399, R. 1.
Oportet, 535, R. 1; 559, R. 1.
 Optative, subjunctive, 256.
Opto, 424, R. 2; 546.
Opus, 390.
Ōrātiō oblīqua, 509, 651-655; moods in, 509, 653, 654; tenses in, 655, foll.; condit. sentences in, 659; pronouns in, 663; involved, 655-6.
 Ordinals for cardinals, 309.
Ordine, 401.
 Origin, abl. of, 395.
Ortus, 395.

P.

Paenitet, 376; *paenitendus*, 428, R. 3.
Pār and *dispār*, constr., 356, R. 1.
 Part, accus. of, 332.
Particeps, w. gen., 373.

Participial clauses, interrogative in, 470.
 Participial sentences, 667, foll.
 Participles, tenses, 278-9; w. genitive, 374; subordination, by means of, 409, R. 2; 667, R. 1; participle as substant., 438; as adjunct, 439; after verbs of Perception and Representation, 524, R. 1, 533; verbs of Causation and Desire, 534.
 Participation, adjectives of, 373.
 Partition in English, none in Latin, 369, R. 1.
 Partitive genitive, 366-371.
 Partitive, use of attribute, 287, R.; apposition, 321.
Parum, w. gen., 371.
Parvi, 380.
 Passionate Question, 258.
 Passive voice, 205; passive of intransitive verbs, 199, R.; 204, 208; passive genitive, 361.
Peculiāris, constr., 356, R. 1.
Pedibus, 401, R. 1.
Penes, w. accus., 415.
Per, in compds. with acc., 330; *per* with acc., 417; position, 416, R.
Per, of space, 335; of time, 337; of manner, 401, R.
 Perceiving, verbs of, constr., 527, 536.
 Perfect, pure, 227; historical, 231; passive, 242; perfect in letters, 244; perfect subjunctive potential, 250; optative, 254; imperative, 256, R. 1, 266; time of, 271; in sequence, 511; in sentences of result, 513; perfect infin., 275; as representative of indic., 277, and perf. part., 278; after verbs of causation and desire, 537; concessive, 670.
 Period of action, 213.
 Periphrastic conjugation, 240-243; subj., 514-516; infin. 531; in *ōrātiō oblīqua*, 659.
Perītus, w. gen., 373.
Permitto ut, 532, R. 1.
 Person, concord of, 202, 283.
 Personal pronoun omitted, 195; gen. of, 362; personal pronoun w. gerundive, 429, R. 1.
 Person interested, 206.

- Persuādeo*, 345, R. 1; w. inf., 546, R. 2.
- Pertaesum est*, 376.
- Peto*, 333, R. 2.
- Piget*, 376.
- Placing, verbs of, 384, R. 1.
- Place, whither, 332, 410; where, 384-387, 412; whence, 388; place, as cause, manner, or instrument, 387.
- Plēnus*, 373 and R. 2.
- Pluperfect, 233; indic. for subj., 246, R. 3; 599, R. 3; iterative, 569; pluperf. subj. as imperat. of *passi*, 266, R. 2; in sequence, 511; iterative, 569, R. 2; in conditional, 599.
- Plural of abstracts, 195, R. 5, 6; for sing., R. 7.
- Plūrimī*, 380.
- Plūris*, 380.
- Plus*, without *quam*, 311, R. 4.
- Pōne*, w. accus., 417.
- Pōnere in*, abl., 384, R.
- Posco*, constr., 333 and R.
- Position of attribute, 287, 288; of preposition, 404, foll.; of adverb, 441; of negative, 447, foll.: position, in interrogative sentences, 470; of relative, 614.
- Posse*, for future, 240, R. 3; 662, R. 2.
- Possessive genitive, 360.
- Possessive pronouns, use of, 299; apposition with gen., 319, R. 2; for genitive, 363; with *rēfert* and *interest*, 381; reflexive, 295, R. 1, 521.
- Possessor, dative of, 349.
- Possibility expressed, 246, R. 1.
- Post*, in compounds with dat., 346; in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.
- Post*, w. accus., 417.
- Post quam*, 563-567.
- Postulo*, constr., 333, R. 2.
- Potential subjunctive, 250, foll., 519, 543.
- Poteram*, 246, R.
- Potior*, constr., 405, and R. 3.
- Potius quam*, 362, R.
- Potuisse*, for *futūrum fuisse ut*, 659, R. 2.
- Power expressed, 246, R. 1; adjectives of, 373.
- Prae*, in compounds w. dat., 346; with abl., 407, R.; 418.
- Praeditus*, w. abl., 373, R. 1.
- Praestōlor*, constr., 347.
- Praeter*, in compds., w. accus., 329.
- Praeter*, w. accus., 417.
- Predicate, 192; predicative apposition and attribution, 324.
- Prepositions, 413-419; origin of word, 413, R. 3; position of, 214, 215; repetition and omission of, 216; adverbial, 416, R.; prepositions w. acc., 417; with abl., 418; with accus. and abl., 419; with gerundive, 428, R. 1; with abl. gerund., 432.
- Present indicat., 215-218; of endeavor, 215, R. 2; for future, 219; for past, 220; with *jam*, *jamdiū*, *jampridem*, 221; present subjunctive, time of, 271; in sequence of tenses, 511; for future, 514; in conditional sentences, 381; present infinitive, 273; of contemporaneous action, 529; present participle, 278.
- Preventing cause, 407, R. 2; verbs of, 548, 549.
- Price, gen. of, 378; abl. of, 404.
- Primo*, *primum*, 324, R. 7.
- Principal clauses, 474.
- Prior*, *primus*, as predicates, 324, R. 6, 7; w. gen., 370.
- Prisus quam*, constr., 576-9.
- Prō*, interjection, 340.
- Prō*, in compounds, w. dat., 346.
- Prō*, with abl., 418. *Prō eō*, *ut*, 465, R. 4.
- Prohibeo*, constr., 547.
- Prolēpsus, 470.
- Promise, verbs of, 424, R. 2.
- Pronouns, 290-304; demonstrative, 290-293; reflexive, 294, 520-522; determinative, 296-298; possessive, 299; indefinite, 300-304; in *oratio obliqua*, 663.
- Prope*, w. accus., 417.
- Propius*, constr., 356, R. 4.
- Proprius*, 356, R. 1.
- Propter*, w. accus., 417.
- Protasis, 590; omitted, 252, R. 1, 602.
- Proximē*, w. accus., 356, R. 4.
- Prūdens*, as adv., 324, R. 5.

Pudet, 376.
 Pure perfect, 212.
Puto, w. gen., 378.
 Putting, verbs of, constr., 348, 384,
 R.

Q.

Quā prūdentīā es, 618, R. 1.
 Qualification of subject, 284.
Quālis, 433.
 Quality, gen. of, 364; ablative of,
 402.
 Qualities, two compared, 314.
Quam, w. comparatives, 311, 647;
 w. superlatives, 317; *quam pro ut*
quī, 313; *quam quod*, 525; *quam*
sī, 604; *quam* omitted, 311, R. 4.
Quamdiū, 570, 645.
Quanquam, 607.
Quamvis, 608.
Quando. *Quandōquidem*, 538.
Quantū, 400 and R.; *Quantus*, 645.
Quasi, 604.
 —*Que*, 478.
 Questions. See Interrogative Sen-
 tences.
Quī, indef., 302.
Quī, 612, foll. See relative.
Quia, 538; *nōn quia*, 541, R. 1.
Quicumque, 266, R. 1.
Quīdam, 300.
Quidem, 298, R.
Quid mē vis, 331, R. 3.
Quīn, in questions, 268; *quīn*, 550;
 after verbs of omitting, etc., 551;
 for *quī nōn*, 556; *nōn quīn*, 541,
 R. 1.
Quis, indef., 302
Quispiam, 303.
Quisquam, 304.
Quisque, 305; *ut quisque*, 645, R. 2.
Quisquis, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quō, measure of difference, 400 =
 that thereby, 545; *quō quisque*,
 645, R. 2.
Quoad, with gen., 371, R. 3; constr.,
 573.
Quod, in object sentences, 525; in
 causal sentences, 538–541; w.
 verbs of emotion, 542, foll.; *nisi*
quod, 592, R. 3; *quodsi ubi*, 612,
 R. 1.
Quōminus, 549.

Quoniam, 538, foll.
Quoque, 481.
Quot, w. gen., 368, R.; correlat.,
 645.
Quoties, 569; correl., 645.
Quotquot, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quum. See *cum*.

R.

Rating, verbs of, constr., 378.
 Reciprocal relations, 212.
Recordor, 277, R.
Recūsō, constr., 548.
Reddō, 334, R.
Rēfert, constr., 381, 382.
Rēfertus, constr., 374, R. 1.
 Reflexive pronoun, 294; in subordi-
 nate sentences, 520–522.
 Refraining, verbs of, 551.
 Refusing, verbs of, 548.
 Relative sentences, 506, 612, foll.;
 relative, position of, 614; con-
 cord of, 616; attraction of, 619;
 correlatives of, 620; relative
 clause, position of, 622; tenses in,
 624, 625; moods in, 626, foll.;
 ind., 626, foll.; subj., 629, foll.; in
oratio obliqua, 630; by attraction,
 631; when *quī ut = is*, 632, 634;
 when *quī = cum is*, 635; accus.,
 rel. and inf., 638; combination of
 relative sentences, 639; relative
 in *oratio obliqua*, 658, R. 1 and 2;
 relative represented by participle,
 640, 671.
Relinquo, with two datives, 350.
 Remaining, verbs of, 197.
 Remembering, verbs of, 375.
 Reminding, verbs of, 375.
Reminiscor, 375 and R. 2.
 Repeated action. See Iterative.
 Representatives of imperative, 265–
 268.
 Representation, verbs of, with par-
 ticiple, 536.
 Requiring, verbs of, 333.
Rēs, use of, 195.
 Resisting, verbs of, 345.
 Restriction to the comparative,
 315.
 Restrictive apposition, 320.
 Result, subjunctive of, 340, foll.;

- exceptional sequence in sentences of result, 513.
 Resolve, verbs of, 424, and R. 2.
 Rhetorical questions, 452, R. 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 654, R.
Rideo, w. accus., 329.
Rogātū, 407.
Rūre, 410, 411; *rūs*, 410.
Rūrī, 412.
- S.**
- Sacer*, 356, R. 1.
 Sacrifice, 403, R. 2.
Satis, w. gen., 371.
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 523-529.
Sciens, 324, R. 5.
 Seat of feeling, 374, R. 3.
Sed, 487.
 Seeming, verbs of, 196.
 Sentences, simple, 129; expanded, 281; compound, coördinate and subordinate, 474; copulative, 477, foll.; adversative, 486, foll.; disjunctive, 495, foll.; causal, 500; illative, 502; object, 503, foll.; causal, 538, foll.; final, 543, foll.; consecutive, 553, foll.; temporal, 567, foll.; conditional, 590, foll.; concessive, 605, foll.; relative, 612, foll.; comparative, 641, foll.; abridged, 649, foll.
 Separation, abl. of, 388.
 Sequence of tenses, 511, foll.
Seu. See *Sive*.
 Showing, verbs of, with two nom., 197; with two accus., 334; with accus. and infin., 526-529.
Sī, whether, 462; if, 591.
 Sign of conditional omitted, 600.
Silentio, 401, R. 1.
Similis, constr., 356, R. 1.
 Simple sentences, 195; expanded, 280, foll.
Simul—simul, 484.
Simulac, 563.
Sin (*minus, secus, aliter*), 593.
Sī nōn, 592.
Sine, with abl., 418; not used with gerund, 432.
 Singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8.
Sino, w. accus. and inf., 424, R. 3; with *ut*, 546, R. 3; without *ut*, 546, R. 3.
Sitio, with accus., 329, R.
Sive—sive, 498, 499.
 Space, extent in, 335, 336.
Spē, comparative with, 399, R. 1.
 Specification, genitive of, 354.
 Specific characteristic, 357.
 Stage of action, 213.
 Standard of comparison omitted, 312.
Statuo in, abl., 384, R.
Sto, constr., 378; with abl., 403, R. 3.
Stultitiæ est, 365, R.
Sub, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; with acc. and abl., 488; comp., 413, R.
 Subject, the forms of, 195; object for, 470; accus. subj. of infin., 525, R.; subject omitted, 526, R. 2; 532, R. 4; nom. subj. for accus., 528.
 Subjective genitive, 361.
 Subjunctive, 247; ideal and unreal, 248; potential, 250; optative, 253; in asseverations, 255; as imperative, 256; as concessive, 257.
 Subjunctive, future, how represented, 511. See different classes of sentences.
Sublimis, 324, R. 6.
 Subordinate clauses, 474.
 Subordination by means of participle, 409, R. 2.
Substantiva mobilia, 199.
 Substantive, agreement of attribute with, 285, foll.; substantive sentences, 307.
Subter, in compounds with accus., 330; with acc. and abl., 219.
Sui. See Reflexive.
Sum, with dat., 349, 350; w. dative of gerund, 430; with predicative genitive, 365.
Sunt quī, 426.
Super, in compounds with acc., 330; with dat., 346; *super*, with acc., and abl., 419.
 Superlative, 316; strengthened, 317; with gen., 371.
 Supine, 435-437; accus. 436; ablat., 437.
Supplico, w. dat., 345, R. 2.
Suprā, as adv., 416, R.; with accus., 417.

Suus, use of, 294, 299, R.
Synesis, 202.
 Syntax, defined, 193.

T.

Table of temporal relations, 217.
Taedet, 376.
 Taking, verbs of, 334.
Talis, 645.
Tamdiū, 645.
Tamen, 492.
Tametsī, 606.
Tam quam, tam quam sī, 604.
Tanti, 380; *tantum abest ut*, 556, R. 1; *tantus*, 645.
 Teaching, verbs of, 333.
Temporo, constr., 347.
 Temporal conjunctions for copulative, 484; conjunctions, 561; temporal relations, table of, 214.
Tempus est, 429, R. 3.
 Tendency, sentences of, 340, foll.
Tenes, w. perf., part., pass., 237.
 Tenses, 213, foll.; number of, 214; present, 218-221; perfect pure, 227-230; historical, 231; imperfect, 221, foll.; pluperfect, 232-3; future, 234; future perfect, 235; periphrastic, 235; active, 236; passive, 240-243; in letters, 244; tenses of indicative, 270; subjunctive, 270; imperative, 272; infinitive, 273, foll.; participle, 278; sequence of tenses, 510, foll.; dependent infinitive, 529, foll.; iterative, 568, 569; in *oratio obliqua*, 656, foll.
Tenus, position, 414, R.; with abl. and gen., 419.
 Thinking, verbs of, 197; with accus. and inf., 526-529.
 Time, accus. of, 337-8; abl. of, 392, 393; with *in*, 393; with *ante*, *post*, *abhinc*, 400, R. 3; participle, 552.
Timeo, w. dat., 347.
Tot, 645.
Toties, 645.
Totus, of space, 386; of time, 392, R. 1.
 Towns, names of, 410-412.
Trāns, in compounds, w. accus., 330; with two accus., 330, R. 1, 2; w. accus., 417.

Transient qualities, 402, R. 1.
 Transitive verbs, 204, 317.
Tum—cum, 364.
Tum—tum, 484.
Tuus, 299, R.

U.

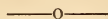
Ubi, w. gen., 371, R. 3; of time, 563.
Ullus, 304.
Ultimus, 324, R. 5.
Ultrā, as adv., 416; with accus., 417.
 Unreal conditional sentence, 599.
Ūnus, ūnus omnium, with superlat., 317.
Ūnus, how translated, 324, R. 5; *ūnus quī*, 633.
 Urging, verbs of, 546.
Usus, 390, 322, R.
Ut—ita, concessive, 484.
Ut uti, design, 545; tendency, 554; *ut* omitted, 545, R. 3; 579, R.
Ut quī, 627, R., 636; *ut*, of cause, 645, R. 4.
Ut, in explanatory questions, 560.
Ut nōn, 543; 556, R. 6.
Ut sī, 604.
Ut quisque—ita, 645, R. 2.
Uter, 315.
Uterque, 370, R. 2.
Utinam, 253.
Ūtor, 405; *ūtendus*, 428, R. 3.
Ut primum, 563.
Utrum, 460, 461, R.

V.

Vacāre, 347.
Vacuus, constr., 388.
Vae, 340, R. 2.
 Value, gen. of, 379.
 — *Ve*, 497.
Vel, with superl., 317; *vel*, 496.
Vel—vel, 496.
Velle, for future, 240, R. 3; *velle sibi*, 351.
Velut velutisī, 604.
Vendo, 378.
Vēneo, 378.
Venio, with two dat., 350.
Venit in mentem, 375, R. 3.

- Verb, voices, active, 204; passive, 205; reflexive, 209; deponent, 201; tenses, 213, foll.; moods, 244, foll. See Voice, Mood, Tense.
 Verbal nouns, sequence after, 518.
Verbum, w. gen., 359.
Vereor, 424. 552; w. dat., 347.
Vērō, 489.
Versus, position, 414; w. accus., 417.
Verum, 488.
Verto, w. two dat., 350.
Vescor, 405; *vescendus*, 428, R. 3.
Vespertīnus, 324, R. 5.
Vestrī vestrum, 362, R.
Veto, w. acc., 345, R. 1; with inf., 424, R. 3.
Viā et ratiōne, 401, R.
Vidēre nē, 552, R. 2.
Vi et armis, 401, R.
Vivo, w. abl., 405, R. 3.
 Vocative, 194, R. 3.
 Voice, active, 204; passive, 205.
- Volens*, 324, R. 6; *volentī*, 354.
Volo, 532, and R. 4; 526, and R. 3.
Voti damnārī, 377, R. 3.
Vox, with gen., 359.
- W.**
- Want, verbs of, 389; adj. of, 373 R. 1; 389, R. 2.
 Warning, verbs of, 546.
 Whither? 313, 410.
 Wishing, verbs of, 532, 546, mood.
- Y.**
- Yes, 473.
 Yielding, verbs of, w. dat., 345.
- Z.**
- Zeugma, 690.

COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.



The numbers in the first column of each division below indicate sections in former editions of the Grammar; those in the second refer to corresponding sections in the Revised Latin Grammar.

O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.
1	192-3	54	250-2	113	313	168	371	227	439
2	194	55-6	253-4	114	314	169	372	228	440
3	195	57	255	115	3 5	170	373	229	441
4	196-7	58	256	116	316	171	374	230	442
5	198	59	257	117	317	172	375	231	444
6	199	60	259	118	319	173	376	232	447
7	200	61	260	119	320	174	377	233	445
8	202	62	261	120	321	175	378	234	446
9	202 R.4	63	262	121	322	176	379-80	235-9	448
10	202 R.5	64	263	122	323	177-8	381	240	449
11	204	65	264	123	324	179	382	241	450
12	205	66	265	R. 1-7	R. 2-8	180	412	242	453
13	206	67	266	124-5	325-6	181	383	243	454
14	207	68	267	126	327	182	384	244	455
15	208	69	268	127	329	183	412	245	456-9
16-17	209	70	269	128	330	184	385	246	460
18	210	71	270	129	331	185-6	386-7	247	461
19	211	72-3	271	130	332	187	388	248	462
20	212	74	272	131	333	188	411	249	463
21	213	75	274	132	334	189	389	250	465-6
22	214	76	275	133	342	190	390	251	467-8
23	216	77	277	134	410	191	391	252	469
24	217	78	278	135	335	192 a	392	253	470-1
25	218	79	279	136	336	192 b	393	254	473
26	218 R.2	80	281	137	337	193	395	255	474
27	219	81	282	138	338	194	398	256	477
28	220	82	281 R.2	139	340	195	399	257	478
29	221	83	283	140		196	400	258	479
30	227-8	84	284	141	343	199	403	259	645
30 R.2	229	85	285	142	314	200	404	260	480
30 R.3	230	86	286	143	345	201	405	261	481
31 a	222-3	87	287	144	346	202	406-7	262	482
31 b	224	88	288	145	347	203	408-9	263	448 R.3
31 c	225	89	289	146	348	204	413	264	444
32-33	223		290	147	349	205	414	265-7	483
34	231-2	90	291	148	350	206	415	268-9	484
		91-3	292	149	351	207	416	270	
35	234	94	293	150	352	208	417	271	486
36	234 R.1	95	294	151	353	209	418	272	487
37	235	96	295	152	354	210	419	273	488
38-41	236	97	296	153	355	211	420	274	489
42	238	98	297	154	356	212	422	275	490
43	239	99		155	357	213	423	276	491
44	240	100	298	156	359	214	424	277	492
		101	299	157	360	215	425	278	493
45	242	102	300	158	361	216-7	426	279	495
46	243	103	301	159	362	218	428	280	
47	244	104	302	160	363	219	429	281	496
48	245	105	303	161	364	220	430	282	
49	246	106-7	305	162	365	221	431	283	498
		108	306	163	366	222	432	284	499
51	247	109	304	164	367	223	435	285	497
52		110		165	368	224	436	286	500
53	248	111	311	166	369	225	437	287	502
		112	312	167	370	226	438	288	503

COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.	O. E.	N. E.
289	504	319	534	355	567	392-4	592 R.	426	634-5
290		320	535	356	568-9	395	597 R.4	427	636-7
291	505	321	536	357	570	396	575	428	638
292	506	322	537	358	573	397	605	429	639
293	507-S	323-5	539	359	574	398	606	430	641
294	510		540	360	575	399	607	431	642
295	511	326	541	361	576	400	608	432	644
296	512	327-9	542	362	579	401	609	433-4	645
297	514	330	543	363	581	402	610	435	646
298	514-6	331	546	364	582	403	611	436	647
299	515	332-4	545	365	583	404-5	612	437	649
300	511	335	547	366	584	406	613	438	650
301	512	335 R.3	552	367	585	407	614	439	651-2
302		336-7	550	368	586	408	616	440	653
303	518	338	549	369	587	409	616	441	654
304	513	339	544 R.2	370	588	410	617	442	655
305	519	340	553-5	371	589	411	618	443	656
306	520	341	557	372	590	412	619	444	657-8
307	521	342	558	373	591	413	620	445-7	659
308	522	343	556	374	594	414	621	448-51	660
309	523	344	559	375	592	415	623	452	661
310	524	345	560	376	593	416	622	453-6	662
311	525	346	554	377	595	417	624	457	663
312	526	347	556 R.4	378	596	418	625	458	665
312		348	632	379-80	597	419	626	459	666
313	528	349	561	381-2	598	420	627	460	667
314	529	350	562	382-5	599	421	628	461	668
315	531	351		387	601	422	629	462	669
316	527 R.4	352	563	388	602	423	630	463	670
317	532	353	564	389-90	604	424	631	464	671
318	533	354	565-6	391	600	425	632-3		

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

Preservation Technology

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
724-770-9111

